
st
PREP
SECOND TERM
AL ADWAA
Gem
2024
NEW
HELLO!

Contents

Module 3 Adventure

Module 4 Our future

توزيع منهج اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الأول الإعدادى للعام الدراسى 2023-2024
الفصل الدراسى الثانى

Month	New Hello! English for preparatory schools Year One (SB + WB)
February	Unit 7
March	Units 8 + Unit 9 + Review C + Unit 10
April	Units 10 Cont. + Unit 11 + Unit 12
May	Review D + General Revision



Unit 7

How was your weekend?

Objectives of the unit

Reading A diary entry; *Robinson Crusoe*

Writing A diary entry giving your opinion about a fantastic day

Listening An interview with a musician

Speaking Talking about your weekend; discussing types of music

Language Past simple time expressions; questions review; review of can and can't; responding to past events with although or because

Life Skills Making decisions

Tapescript

WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب




Lessons 1 & 2



SB pages 2 - 5 | WB pages 70 & 71



A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

aquarium (n)	معرض الأحياء المائية	football stadium (n)	استاد كرة القدم
(be) aged (adj)	بالغ من العمر	funfair (n)	الملاهى
big wheel (n)	العجلة الدوارة (فى الملاهى)	museum (n)	متحف
bowling alley (n)	صالة البولينج	nervous (adj)	عصبى/متوتر
canteen (n)	مقصف (كانتين)	planetarium (n)	مبنى القبة السماوية
diary (n)	مذكرة/يومية	sports centre (n)	مركز رياضى
dinosaur (n)	ديناصور	statue (n)	تمثال
dolphin (n)	دلفين	swimming pool (n)	حمام سباحة
exhibition (n)	معرض	uniform (n)	زى موحد

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

area (n)	منطقة	really (adv)	حقًا
beach ball (n)	كرة الشاطئ	shark (n)	سمكة القرش
hope (d) (v)	يأمل	smiley face	وجه مبتسم
quite (adv)	إلى حد ما	whale (n)	حوت

Check Point

Choose and complete: uniform - quiet - quite - statues

1. We went to the museum and saw many .... there.
2. My school .... is a blue T-shirt and black trousers.
3. My father is .... tall.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:
(n) = noun | (v) = verb | (adj) = adjective | (adv) = adverb | (prep) = preposition | (conj) = conjunction

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

do	> activities	يؤدى أنشطة	have	> a haircut	يقص شعره
go	> bowling	يذهب للعب البولينج	make	> a decision	يتخذ قرارًا
	shopping	يذهب للتسوق	take	> a bus	يأخذ أتوبيسًا

Prepositions

حروف الجر

frightened of	خائف من	on my birthday	فى عيد ميلادى
help with	يساعد فى	ride/go on the big wheel	يركب العجلة الدوارة
move to	ينتقل إلى	decide to	يقرر أن

Check Point

Choose and complete: makes - of - does - goes

1 Hani usually .... a lot of activities at the weekend.

2 My little sister is frightened .... mice.

3 She .... shopping on Fridays.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.
buy	يشترى	bought	bought
find out	يكتشف	found out	found out
have/ has	يملك/يتناول	had	had
learn	يتعلم	learned/learnt	learned/learnt
leave	يغادر/يترك	left	left
teach	يدرس/يعلم	taught	taught

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
exciting	مثير	boring	ممل
fantastic	رائع	terrible	فظيع
friendly	ودود	unfriendly	غير ودود

Language Notes

1 but
ولكن (تعبر عن التناقض)

- I wanted to go to the funfair, but my brother wanted to go to his favourite restaurant.

2 so
لذلك (تعبر عن النتيجة)

- I love my brother, so we went to his favourite restaurant.

3 was/were born
وُلِدَ

- My son was born in 2006.
- My cousins were born in 2009.

4 go + (inf. + ing)
يذهب من أجل

غالبًا ما نستخدم go مع الرياضات والأنشطة التى تنتهى بـ (ing)

go bowling/go shopping/go swimming

- I usually go bowling on Friday.
- My mother always goes shopping on Sunday.



Vocabulary Builder


جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

Words and Synonyms
الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
fantastic	رائع	amazing	مدهش
friendly	ودود	kind	عطوف/طيب

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
exhibit (v)	يعرض	-ion	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	exhibition (n)	معرض
friend (n)	صديق	-ly	تحويل الاسم إلى صفة	friendly (adj)	ودود


هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

Similar spelling - Different meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
diary	مفكرة/يوميات	dairy	منتجات الألبان
quite	إلى حد ما	quiet	هادئ

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 1

Pre-reading question:

- Where did you go last weekend?



Read the answers to Ziad's questions and answer these questions:

SB pages 2 & 3



What did you do last weekend (1)?



I watched a football match.

I rode on the big wheel (2).



I saw an exhibition (3) about dolphins (4).

I looked at the stars.



I went bowling (5).



I played tennis.



Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

wheel /wi:l/

exhibition /eksəbɪʃən/

(1) العطلة الأسبوعية (2) عجلة الملاهى

(3) معرض (4) الدلافين

(5) البولينج

Post-reading questions:

1 Ziad's friends did a lot of activities last weekend, which one would you like to try?

2 Do you think they enjoyed their weekend? Why?

Pre-listening question:

- How was your weekend?

Lesson 2

SB page 3



Listen to Dina talk about her birthday. Tick (✓) the correct diary.

Dina It was my birthday last Saturday, so I went to the museum(1) with my mum and sister, and we saw some old statues(2). We learned a lot.





In the evening, I wanted to go to the funfair(3), but my brother wanted to go to his favourite restaurant. I love my brother, so we went to the restaurant. We went there four months ago for his birthday, too! And two days ago, on Sunday, we went to the planetarium(4), but it was closed.



So, we took a bus to the aquarium(5) on the other side of town. It was fantastic, I saw a shark!



Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

statue	/stætʃu:/
planetarium	/plænɪteəriəm/
aquarium	/əkweəriəm/

Post-listening questions:

1 Where did Dina's brother want to go?

2 Why do you think they went to the aquarium?

(1) المتحف (2) تماثيل
(3) الملاهي (4) مبنى القبة السماوية
(5) معرض الأحياء المائية

Lesson 2

Pre-reading question:

- Would you like to move to a new house? Why/ Why not?

Read Adam's diary. What do you think the word "nervous" means, and why does Adam feel this?

SB page 4

(1) زى مدرسى موحد (2) عصبى/متوتر
(3) مقصف المدرسة (4) رائع
(5) حمام سباحة

Sunday 8th May

Yesterday, our family moved to our new house in Alexandria. It took three hours to drive from our old house in Cairo.



Monday 9th May

This morning, Mum and I went shopping to buy a new school uniform [1] for me. I hope students are friendly in my new school!



Tuesday 10th May

Today, I went to my new school. I was quite nervous[2], but I sat next to a boy called Sami and he was friendly. We had lunch together in the school canteen[3]. 🙂

3. Read another page from Adam's diary. What is great?

Monday 16th May

What a fantastic[4] weekend! I went to Sami's house on Saturday and we played football in the park. I don't usually like football, but all his brothers wanted to play. It was a lot of fun! On Sunday, Mum helped me with my homework. Then, Dad and I went to the sports centre. It is great, there is a really big swimming pool[5].





Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:

nervous /nɜːˈvəs/

Post-reading question:

- What would you feel if you went to a new school?

Language

Lesson 2

WB page 71

1. Complete Nahla's diary with the correct past tense form of the verbs in brackets.



I **had** a fantastic weekend! It **was** my friend Dalia's birthday and her family **took** us to some exciting places. In the morning, we **went** to the funfair. I **didn't go** on the big wheel, but I **enjoyed** my time there. In the afternoon, we **visited** a museum. We **saw** some very old statues. I **remembered** all the things that our teacher **taught** us in history! In the evening, I **ate** at Dalia's house and I **came** home very late!

Life Skills

1. Do all the people in your family always want to do the same things?

- هل كل الأشخاص بعائلتك يريدون فعل نفس الأشياء؟

2. What do you do when people want to do different things?

- ماذا تفعل عندما يريد أشخاص فعل أشياء مختلفة؟



a. Say you only want to do what you want to do.

b. Decide to do what most of you want to do.

c. Work with your group to add a third option.

3. Read about Sara's family. Where should they go and what activities should they do in the morning and the afternoon on Sara's birthday? Work in pairs and make a decision.

- Mum likes playing sports, but she does not like watching sports.
- Nadia, aged five, is frightened of the dark. She cannot swim. She loves animals.
- Dad likes science. He likes to eat out.
- Sara likes history, and she likes playing games.

 - They should go to the swimming pool.

* No, they can't go there because Nadia can't swim. 

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The balls are very heavy at the .... القاهرة/أزهر ٢٠٢٣
   a) funfair b) aquarium c) museum d) bowling alley
2. I saw an .... about dolphins. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) exit b) exhausted c) exhort d) exhibition
3. We decided to play basketball at the sports .... WB
   a) match b) wheel c) funfair d) centre
4. My sister, Habiba, always helps my mother .... the housework.
   a) at b) by c) of d) with
5. Don't be .... You will find good friends in your new school. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) nervous b) terrifying c) relaxed d) helpful
6. They decided to move .... a bigger house next year.
   a) at b) for c) in d) to
7. Let's go on the big wheel at the .... this weekend. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) funfair b) stadium c) aquarium d) bowling alley
8. We learnt a lot about the Earth and the moon at the .... الأقصر ٢٠٢٣
   a) funfair b) aquarium c) bowling alley d) planetarium
9. It was great at the .... My team won 2 - 0!
   a) football stadium b) bowling c) planetarium d) funfair
10. I write what happens to me every day in a .... الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
    a) dairy b) picture c) diary d) daily
11. We had lunch together in the school .... الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
    a) laboratory b) library c) station d) canteen
12. Some people are .... of dogs. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
    a) frighten b) scary c) frightened d) fears
13. I didn't enjoy the film because it was .... الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
    a) exciting b) amazing c) funny d) terrible
14. Our neighbours are .... We like them a lot. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
    a) worried b) sad c) friendly d) nervous
15. We visited the .... and saw colourful fish swimming there. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
    a) funfair b) stadium c) aquarium d) park
16. Nada, ... five, is frightened of the dark. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
    a) aging b) ages c) age d) aged



C Language

Remember

1 The past simple tense زمن الماضى البسيط

Usage الاستخدام

We use the past simple tense to talk about actions that started and ended in the past.

نستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن حدث بدأ وانتهى فى الماضى.

Affirmative الإثبات

Subject + التصريف الثانى للفعل

She visited her uncle **yesterday**.

I went to the museum **last** night.

Negative النفى

Subject + didn't + inf. .... .

She didn't visit her uncle **yesterday**.

Question السـؤال

Yes/No question

Did + subject + inf. ...?

Did you go to the museum **last** night?

Wh- question

Q. word (أداة استفهام) + did + subject + inf. ...?

When did you go to the museum?



Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

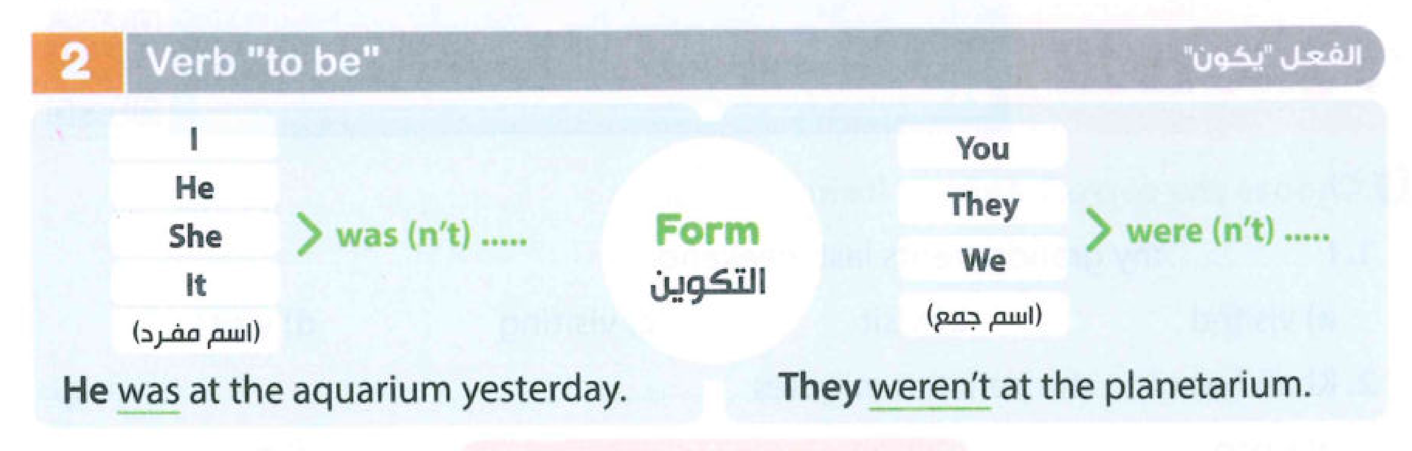
1. He didn't .... (wrote) the letter yesterday.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (write) لوجود didn't التى يأتى بعدها الفعل فى المصدر.

2. Sandy .... (studies) maths and science last Monday.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (studied) لوجود last الدالة على الماضى البسيط.

2 Verb "to be" الفعل "يكون"



I / He / She / It (اسم مفرد) > was (n't) .....

Form التكوين

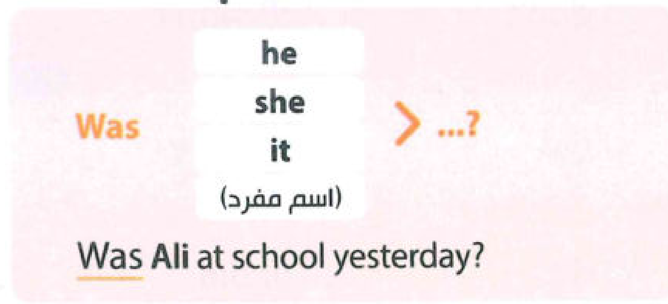
You / They / We (اسم جمع) > were (n't) .....

He was at the aquarium yesterday.

They weren't at the planetarium.

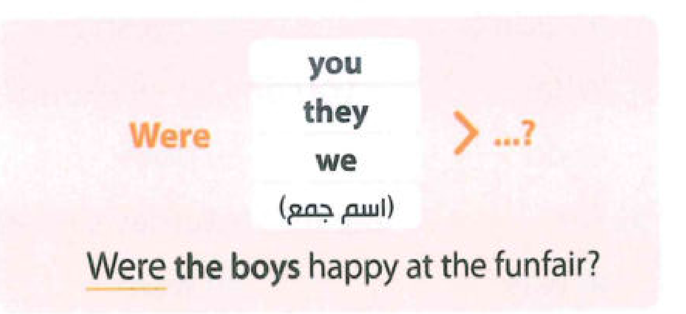
Question السـؤال

Yes/No question



Was he / she / it (اسم مفرد) > ...?

Was Ali at school yesterday?



Were you / they / we (اسم جمع) > ...?

Were the boys happy at the funfair?

Wh- question

Q. word + was/ were + subject + ...?

How was your weekend, Alaa? - It was fantastic.

Got it ?

Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- My father .... (were) at the exhibition last Friday.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (was) لوجود (last) الدالة على أن الجملة فى الماضى، ولأن الفاعل مفرد.

3 Past time expressions تعبيرات الوقت الدالة على الماضي

- **We use past time expressions to say when something happened:**

نستخدم تعبيرات الوقت الدالة على الماضى لنقول متى حدث شىء ما:

Time Expressions for the Past Tense:

last weekend	3 days **ago**	**yesterday** afternoon	**in** 2018
last month	a week **ago**	**yesterday** evening	**in** October
last year	a month **ago**	**yesterday** night	**in** April



- استخدام (this morning) مع زمن الماضى:

- I had breakfast this morning.



Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Where .... (does) your father go last night?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (did) لوجود last night الدالة على زمن الماضى البسيط.



Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I .... my grandparents last weekend.
   a) visited b) visit c) visiting d) visits
2. Khalid went to the park ten minutes .... الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) since b) then c) ago d) next
3. Dad .... go to work yesterday. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) didn't b) doesn't c) don't d) won't
4. What .... you do last weekend? WB
   a) do b) does c) did d) were
5. We .... late for yesterday's meeting.
   a) was b) were c) do d) did
6. When did we .... our last maths lesson? الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) have b) had c) has d) having
7. They .... the bus to the city last Sunday. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
   a) takes b) take c) took d) taking
8. Who did you .... last night? أسوان ٢٠٢٣
   a) see b) sees c) saw d) seeing
9. .... he move to a new city?
   a) Did b) Was c) Is d) Does
10. My uncle .... at the sports centre this afternoon. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) was b) were c) did d) does

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Did you .... (gave) your uncle his jacket? بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
2. I .... (be) at home last night. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
3. How .... (did) your last trip to Al Fayoum?
4. My father .... (lives) in a village when he was ten. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
5. He didn't play tennis .... (next) week.
6. My last English lesson was .... (ago an hour). WB

D Skills





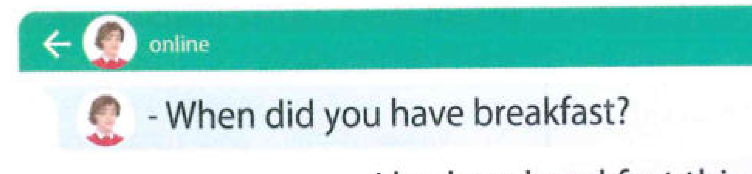
1. Speaking

Asking and answering questions about past events

السؤال والإجابة عن أحداث فى الماضى

Situation ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response جملة الرد

online



- When did you have breakfast? متى تناولت الإفطار؟

I had my breakfast this morning. - تناولته هذا الصباح.

- Where did you go last weekend? أين ذهبت فى العطلة الأسبوعية الماضية؟



I went to the museum. - ذهبت إلى المتحف.

- When did you meet your best friend? متى قابلت أفضل صديق لك؟



I met my best friend 2 hours ago. - قابلته منذ ساعتين.

- When was Dina's birthday? متى كان عيد ميلاد دينا؟



It was in October. - كان فى شهر أكتوبر.



Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

▶ **Tarek asks Nabil about his weekend in Aswan.** الغربية ٢٠٢٣

Tarek : Good morning. How was your weekend?

Nabil : Good morning. (1).. .

Tarek : (2)..?

Nabil : I spent it in Aswan.

Tarek : How was the weather there?

Nabil : (3).. .

Tarek : (4)..?

Nabil : I ate fish and rice.

Tarek : Did you enjoy your weekend?

Nabil : (5).. . Aswan is a very beautiful place.

2. Write it right



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب
من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about your weekend

كيفية الكتابة عن عطلتك الأسبوعية

- Last weekend, I went to (المكان).
- I went with (الأشخاص الذين ذهبت معهم).
- We went by (وسيلة المواصلات).
- I (الأفعال التى قمت بها).
- My father (الأفعال التى قام بها).
- We went back home (الوقت).
- We had a/an (صفة) time.

Writing tips

Use capital letters at the beginning of sentences, names, the pronoun "I" and famous places.

استخدم الحروف الكبيرة مع بداية الجمل
وأسماء الأشخاص والضمير "I" والأماكن الشهيرة.

Example

Last weekend

Last weekend, I went to the funfair. I went with my family. We went there by car. My father bought us tickets. There were a lot of interesting games. I rode on the big wheel. I felt afraid, but it was fun. My brother went on a ride. He was really happy. My little sister swam in a small swimming pool. My father and mother went for a walk. We all had a wonderful time. We decided to go there again very soon. We went back home late at night. It was fun.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"A place you visited last weekend"

Last weekend, I went to ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



TEST YOURSELF

Unit 7 Lessons (1 & 2)



19.5

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

أسوان ٢٠٢٣

1. Last weekend was Ali's ....
   a) wedding b) birthday c) holiday d) school
2. The weekend was ....
   a) fantastic b) boring c) tiring d) terrible
3. They visited a/an .... after visiting the funfair.
   a) cinema b) theatre c) aquarium d) museum
4. They came home in the ....
   a) morning b) evening c) afternoon d) night

2 Complete the following dialogue:

المنوفية ٢٠٢٣

Ayman and Soha are talking about the weekend.

Ayman : What did you do at the last weekend?
Soha : (1).. .
Ayman : (2)..?
Soha : I loved the big wheel most.
Ayman : How did you go there?
Soha : (3).. .
Ayman : (4)..?
Soha : The ticket is 20 pounds.
Ayman : Fantastic! What did you do there?
Soha : (5).. .
Ayman : That is wonderful.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The .... is a place where you can do sports indoors. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
   a) funfair b) aquarium c) sports centre d) museum
2. Basma saw the .... of Ramses II out of the museum. سوهاج ٢٠٢٢
   a) bed b) room c) statue d) entrance
3. I usually feel .... before taking a test. I'm usually worried.
   a) fantastic b) excited c) nervous d) quiet
4. She was .... tired after a long day at work.
   a) such b) to c) quiet d) quite

5. I decided to .... bowling next week. أسيوط ٢٠٢٢

a) have b) spend c) go d) see

6. Students like to .... activities together at school.

a) do b) make c) go d) play

7. Which sport would you like to ....?

a) go b) do c) make d) take

8. Adel .... his lessons yesterday. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣

a) study b) studied c) studies d) is studying

9. I .... a picnic in the public garden a week ago. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣

a) have b) has c) had d) having

10. .... you go to the park yesterday? سوهاج ٢٠٢٣

a) Are b) Did c) Have d) Does

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. .... (Was) she finish her book yesterday?
2. They .... (was) happy to see each other last weekend.
3. Where .... (were) you go last Friday? سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
4. My uncle bought a new car .... (tomorrow). الشرقية ٢٠٢٣

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your last weekend" بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣

....

....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1 I'm sorry; I don't know a neighbour .... Samir.

a) called b) is called c) calling d) is calling

2 He .... a difficult decision to make before travelling.

a) goes b) does c) makes d) has

3 He .... made his bed when he was young.

a) didn't b) doesn't c) don't d) never





Lessons 3 & 4



SB pages 6 - 8 | WB pages 72 & 73

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

adventure story (n)	قصة مغامرات	jungle (n)	غابة/أدغال
alone (adv)	بمفرده	musician (n)	موسيقار/عازف/موسيقى
band (n)	فرقة موسيقية	sailor (n)	بحَّار
cave (n)	كهف	storm (n)	عاصفة
coconut (n)	جوزة الهند	stressed (adj)	مضغوط
dead (adj)	ميت	trumpet (n)	بوق (آلة موسيقية)
interview (n)	مقابلة	island (n)	جزيرة
Types of music أنواع الموسيقى			
classical (adj)	كلاسيكى	pop (n)	موسيقى البوب
jazz (n)	موسيقى الجاز	rock (n)	موسيقى الروك
opera (n)	الأوبرا	traditional (adj)	تقليدى

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

although (conj)	بالرغم من	prefer (red) (v)	يفضل
discuss (ed) (v)	يناقش	shape (n)	شكل
interviewer (n)	محاور	sound (n)	صوت (شىء)
notebook (n)	كراسة/دفتر	voice (n)	صوت (إنسان)

Check Point

Choose and complete: happened - jazz - adventure - musician

1. I like reading .... stories. They are very interesting.
2. My friend's father is a .... He plays the piano.
3. Please, tell me what .... yesterday.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

write > a diary	يكتب يوميات	play > the piano	يعزف البيانو
make > sure	يتأكد	play > chess	يلعب شطرنج
all over the world	فى كل أنحاء العالم	It's difficult to + inf.	من الصعب أن

Prepositions

حروف الجر

at the weekend	فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	on a boat/ship	على قارب/سفينة
go down into	ينزل إلى	share with	يشارك مع
good for	مفيد لـ	start with	يبدأ بـ
look for	يبحث عن	walk along	يمشى بامتداد
move on to	ينتقل إلى	write down	يدون

Check Point

Choose and complete: make - after - for - play

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

1. I'm looking .... my watch. I can't find it.
2. Students should .... sure they come to school on time.
3. I want to learn to .... the piano.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.
fall	يسقط	fell	fallen
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
rise	يرتفع	rose	risen
sink	يغوص	sank	sunk

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
dead	ميت	alive	حى
sink	تغوص	float	تطفو
famous	مشهور	unknown	غير معروف
useful	مفيد/نافع	useless	غير مفيد
warm	دافئة	cool	بارد

Language Notes



ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 **sound** صوت (شىء) / **voice** صوت (كائن حى)

- The sound of the drums is very noisy.
- Sara is a good singer. I like her voice.

2 **by +** الكاتب/المؤلف بواسطة

- *Robinson Crusoe* is an adventure story by Daniel Defoe.





جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions التعريفات

alone	بمفرده	not with other people
coconut	ثمرة جوز الهند	a large brown nut
sailor	بحّار	someone who works on a boat or ship
terrible	فظيع	very bad
sink	يغوص	go down into water
sink	حوض	a place where you wash plates and cups in a kitchen

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
famous	مشهور	well-known	معروف
terrible	رهيب	horrible	فظيع

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
music (n)	موسيقى	-ian	تحويل الاسم لاسم فاعل	musician (n)	موسيقار
sail (v)	يبحر	-or	تحويل الفعل لاسم فاعل	sailor (n)	بحّار

Similar spelling - Different meaning

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
band	فرقة موسيقية	bend	يثنى/يطوى
sailor	بحّار	seller	بائع

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 3
SB page 6

Pre-listening question: - What type of music do you like?

Listen to an interview with the musician Marvin Allstar. Which four types of music do they talk about?



Interviewer Marvin Allstar is a famous musician(1). He writes songs and plays(2) in a band(3). Hello, Marvin, what type(4) of music do you like?

Marvin Hello. Well, I like jazz(5) music best. I play the trumpet(6) in a jazz band.

Interviewer The trumpet? When did you learn to play the trumpet?

Marvin Oh, when I was about 12. I learned the piano first when I was four, and I moved on to the trumpet at 12. I like the sound of the trumpet.

Interviewer Amazing! Do you like pop(7) music?

Marvin No, I don't, and I don't like rock(8) music. But I quite like traditional(9) music.

(1) موسيقار
(2) يعزف
(3) فرقة موسيقية
(4) نوع
(5) موسيقى الجاز
(6) بوق
(7) موسيقى البوب
(8) موسيقى الروك
(9) موسيقى تقليدية



Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

jazz /dʒæz/ trumpet /trʌmpɪt/ traditional /trədɪʃənəl/

Post-listening question: - When did Marvin learn to play the trumpet?

Lesson 4

Pre-reading question:

- What kind of stories do you like?

Read about Robinson Crusoe. What did Crusoe want to find?
SB page 8

Daniel Defoe

Robinson Crusoe is an adventure story[1] by Daniel Defoe.

Robinson Crusoe was a sailor[2]. One day, his ship sank because there was a really terrible storm[3]. Crusoe swam to a nearby island[4], but there were no other people there. Crusoe wrote a diary[5] of what happened to him on the island.



18th December

I arrived on the island four days ago. Today, I walked along the beach again, but I saw nobody and I think I am alone[6]. This afternoon, I found a dead fish and ate it, but it was not nice. Although I am hungry, I don't want to eat another dead fish!



19th December

I found a coconut[7] on the beach today. It was delicious. It rained last night and I was cold and wet, so today I went to look for a cave[8]. I want a warm place to sleep. I walked through a jungle[9] and there were some rocks, but no caves.



20th December

I found a cave!!

(1) قصة مغامرة	(2) بحّار
(3) عاصفة رهيبة	(4) جزيرة قريبة
(5) مذكرات	(6) بمفردى
(7) جوزة الهند	(8) كهف
(9) الأدغال	



Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

adventure	/ædventʃəʳ/
island	/aɪlənd/
jungle	/dʒʌŋgəl/

Post-reading question:

- Do you think Robinson Crusoe was happy on the island? Why? Why not?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Jazz is a type of .... الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
 a) music b) trees c) rocks d) food
2. Do you like working with other people, or do you prefer to work ....? الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
 a) lonely b) alone c) along d) alike
3. I like fruit because it's good .... me. الأقصر ٢٠٢٣
 a) from b) for c) under d) on
4. Crusoe found a .... fish and ate it, but it wasn't nice. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
 a) died b) did c) death d) dead
5. When you put a stone in water, it .... بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
 a) melts b) sinks c) thinks d) flies
6. There are many trees in the .... الغربية ٢٠٢٣
 a) cave b) jungle c) desert d) sea
7. Do you .... sweet or salty food? أسيوط/الأزهر ٢٠٢٣
 a) prefer b) do c) refer d) stay
8. To be .... is to be in a hot temperature, but not too hot. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
 a) cold b) cool c) hot d) warm
9. The ship sank because of a terrible .... بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
 a) ice b) storm c) island d) heat
10. A/An .... is a person who works on a boat or ship. SB
 a) sailor b) musician c) seller d) interviewer
11. The old computer was useless. It isn't ....
 a) lovely b) stressed c) useful d) famous
12. We like to walk .... the beach and watch the sunset.
 a) a long b) along c) on to d) about
13. I have lost my mobile phone. It is a .... day. السويس ٢٠٢٣
 a) funny b) nice c) terrible d) useful
14. Robinson Crusoe is an adventure story .... Daniel Defoe.
 a) with b) by c) on d) at
15. My older brother has a/an .... for a new job.
 a) view b) interview c) class d) review
16. My sister is learning to .... the piano.
 a) go b) do c) play d) take

C Language

Questions الأسئلة

A Yes/No questions: أولاً: الأسئلة بمعنى (هل):

(A) Yes/No questions
الأسئلة بمعنى (هل)

1 Helping verbs
الأفعال المساعدة

Am/ Is/ Are/ Was/ Were/
Do/ Does/ Did/
Have/ Has/ Had

2 Modal verbs
الأفعال الناقصة

Can/ Could/ Will/ Would/ Shall/
Should/ Must/ May/ Might

We form (Yes/No) questions by: نكون السؤال بمعنى (هل) عن طريق:

1. Moving the **helping/modal verb** to the **beginning** of the sentence:

١. تقديم الفعل المساعد على الفاعل:

1 Verb "to be":

Sentence الجملة	Question السؤال	Answer الإجابة
Ali **is** watching TV.	▸ **Is Ali** watching TV?	Yes, he is. / No, he isn't.
I**'m** okay.	▸ **Are you** okay?	Yes, I am. / No, I'm not.
They **are** teachers.	▸ **Are they** teachers?	Yes, they are. / No, they aren't.



(Am/ Is/ Are) يتبعها الفاعل ثم اسم أو صفة أو فعل مضاف إليه (ing).

2 Verb "to have":

Sentence الجملة	Question السؤال	Answer الإجابة
I **have** got a phone.	▸ **Have you** got a phone?	Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.
He **has** got a jacket.	▸ **Has he** got a jacket?	Yes, he has. / No, he hasn't.



(Have/ Has) يتبعها الفاعل ثم التصريف الثالث للفعل (P.P.).

3 Modal verbs:

Sentence الجملة	Question السؤال	Answer الإجابة
They will arrive tomorrow.	▶ Will they arrive tomorrow?	Yes, they will. No, they won't.
She would like juice.	▶ Would she like juice?	Yes, she would. No, she wouldn't.
I can swim.	▶ Can you swim?	Yes, I can. No, I can't.
Sami should study hard.	▶ Should Sami study hard?	Yes, he should. No, he shouldn't.




كل الأفعال الناقصة يتبعها الفاعل ثم مصدر الفعل.

2. The **present simple** and the **past simple** have **no** helping verb. We form questions by **adding** the helping verbs *Do/Does* for the present simple and *Did* for the past simple.

٢. الجمل فى زمن المضارع والماضى البسيط لا تحتوى على فعل مساعد، لذلك نستخدم (Do/Does) مع المضارع البسيط ونستخدم (Did) مع الماضى البسيط.

4 Verb "to do":

Sentence الجملة	Question السؤال	Answer الإجابة
They live in Cairo.	▶ Do they live in Cairo?	Yes, they do. / No, they don't.
Ahmed likes English.	▶ Does Ahmed like English?	Yes, he does. / No, he doesn't.
Aya made a cake.	▶ Did Aya make a cake?	Yes, she did. / No, she didn't.



(Do/ Does/ Did) يتبعها الفاعل ثم مصدر الفعل.





تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. .... (Does) your father working now?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Is) لوجود working والفاعل your father مفرد.

2. Will Sandy .... (travels) to England next summer?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (travel) لأن (Will) يتبعها فعل فى المصدر.

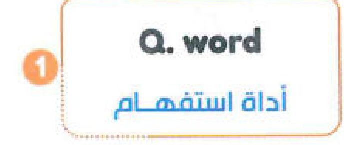
B Wh- questions: ثانيًا: الأسئلة بأداة استفهام

١) قم بدراسة أدوات الاستفهام التالية:

Question word		Usage	Question word		Usage
What	ما/ ماذا	للسؤال عن غير العاقل	How	كيف	للسؤال عن الوسيلة والطريقة أو الشعور
What time	ما الوقت	للسؤال عن الوقت	How many	كم عدد	للسؤال عن العدد
Which	أى/ أيهما	للتخيير	How much	كم كمية/ثمن	للسؤال عن الكمية/السعر
When	متى	للسؤال عن الزمن	How long	كم مدة	للسؤال عن المدة
Where	أين	للسؤال عن المكان	How often	كم مرة	للسؤال عن عدد المرات
Why	لماذا	للسؤال عن السبب	Who	من	للسؤال عن العاقل

We form Wh- questions by: نكون السؤال بأداة استفهام عن طريق:

٢) يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام كالتالى:



1. Q. word — أداة استفهام
2. helping/ modal verb — فعل مساعد / ناقص
3. subject — فاعل
4. complement? — تكملة السؤال ?

- هناك جمل يكون بها فعل مساعد أو ناقص فيتم تكوين السؤال كالتالى:

Sentences	Questions
Mona was at the cinema yesterday.	• When was Mona at the cinema?
They were playing football at the club.	• Where were they playing football?
◄ إذا كانت الجملة فى زمن المضارع البسيط نستخدم (do/does).	
I always play tennis on Mondays.	• How often do you play tennis?
Ola goes to school on foot.	• How does Ola go to school?
◄ أما إذا كانت الجملة فى زمن الماضى البسيط فنستخدم (did).	
Salma bought a new laptop last week.	• When did Salma buy a new laptop?


Got it ?


تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Where .... (does) your father go last night? (..............................)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (did) لوجود last night الدالة على الماضى البسيط والفعل go فى المصدر.

2. What time does Ali .... (gets) up every day? (..............................)

- الإجابة الصحيحة (get) لوجود (does) التى يتبعها فعل فى المصدر.



Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A: .... do you like fruit? B: I like fruit because it's good for me. WB
   a) Who b) Why c) What d) Where
2. A: .... you like jazz? B: No, I don't like jazz, but I like pop. WB
   a) Are b) Do c) Did d) Have
3. .... you watch the match yesterday? الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) Do b) Did c) Does d) Is
4. A: .... is the nearest shoe shop? B: It's next to the museum.
   a) What b) Where c) How d) When
5. A: .... do you go to school? B: By bus.
   a) How b) What c) When d) Why
6. Will there .... ordinary mobiles in the future? الأقصر ٢٠٢٣
   a) is b) are c) be d) were
7. .... time is the film?
   a) Who b) Where c) When d) What
8. How many sisters do you ....?
   a) has b) have c) had d) having
9. How did he .... when he started school? القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) felt b) feel c) feeling d) feels
10. A: .... is your birthday? B: It's in May. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
    a) Whose b) When c) Who d) Where

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. What .... (is) you going to wear tomorrow? دمياط ٢٠٢٣
2. A: How .... (much) do you go swimming? B: Twice a week. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
3. What will holidays .... (been) like in the future? سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
4. A: Is it cold outside? B: No, it .... (wasn't). أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
5. A: Have you got a new jacket? B: No, I .... (don't). SB
6. A: What time is it? B: It .... (was) quarter past ten. SB

D Skills



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب
من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.



1. Speaking

Asking and answering about favourite music

السؤال والإجابة عن الموسيقى المفضلة

Situation	ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response	جملة الرد

online

- What type of music do you like? ما نوع الموسيقى التى تحبها؟

I like jazz best. - الجاز هى أفضل موسيقى أحبها.

I like the sound of pop. - أحب نوع موسيقى البوب.

I quite like rock. - أحب موسيقى الروك إلى حد كبير.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣

▶ **Mr Marvin, a famous musician, is having an interview.**

Interviewer : Hello, Mr Marvin. What type of music do you like?

Mr Marvin : (1) ....

Interviewer : Which musical instrument do you play?

Mr Marvin : (2) ....

Interviewer : (3) .... ?

Mr Marvin : I learnt to play it when I was twelve.

Interviewer : (4) .... ?

Mr Marvin : I practise with my band twice a week.

Interviewer : Do you play another instrument?

Mr Marvin : (5) ....



2. Write it right



1. How to write about a bad/good story

كيفية الكتابة عن قصة سيئة/ جيدة

Example

To : kareem@yahoo.com
From : samy@student.com
Subject : The Story I like most

Dear Kareem,

I hope you are well. I want to talk to you about my favourite story. *Robinson Crusoe* is an adventure story by Daniel Defoe. Robinson Crusoe was born in York in 1632. One day, his ship sank because there was a really terrible storm. Crusoe swam to a nearby island, but there were no other people there. Crusoe found himself alone on an island. He ate dead fish and coconuts. He lived there for many years. He lived alone for twenty-eight years until he found some people. One day, an English ship arrived. He went back to England with a man called Friday. It's an amazing story.

Write soon

Yours,

Samy

2. How to write about a terrible day

كيفية الكتابة عن يوم فظيع/مرعب

Example

A terrible day

I had a terrible day last Sunday. I got up late at seven thirty in the morning. I got dressed and packed my school bag. I missed the school bus because I was late. I took a taxi to school. I arrived at school very late. My teacher was very angry with me. He asked me for my homework, but I forgot my notebook. I felt really sad. I went back home at three o'clock. My little brother had a fever. We took him to the hospital, and finally he got better. I was worried about him. When we went back home, it was night, and I couldn't do my homework. What a terrible day!

Take a test





1 **Read the following, then answer the questions:** دمياط ٢٠٢٢

Robinson Crusoe is an adventure story written by Daniel Defoe in 1719. It tells the story of a young man named Robinson Crusoe who leaves his life in England to go on an adventure at sea, but his ship **sinks,** and Crusoe is alone on an island for many years.

As time goes by, Crusoe learns to live on the island by building a place to live, finding food and water, and even keeping animals. At the end, he is able to build a small boat and leave the island, but not before he finds out that there are other people on the island, but they are bad.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage? ....
2. What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to? ....
3. What do you think Robinson Crusoe learned from his life on the island? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Robinson Crusoe leaves his .... behind when he goes on his adventure.
   a) family b) friends c) job d) all of these
5. Robinson Crusoe lives on the island by ....
   a) finding food b) waiting for a boat
   c) swimming to another island d) finding a hotel
6. The opposite of "**sink**" is "..........".
   a) float b) fall c) drop d) throw

2 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. .... music is very loud. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) Rock b) Classical c) Traditional d) Soft
2. A .... is a hole inside the mountain. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) road b) valley c) hill d) cave
3. My friend plays in a .... He plays the guitar.
   a) band b) club c) factory d) sound
4. I couldn't sleep because of the .... of the noisy wheels of the train.
   a) voice b) sound c) rock d) jazz

5. A: What .... is the sun? B: It's round.

a) shape b) ship c) sound d) voice

6. Chess is a game that needs good thinking to ....

a) make b) score c) play d) do

7. Ammar El Sherei was a famous .... I prefer his music. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣

a) musician b) carpenter c) plumber d) vet

8. .... did you feel at the end of the match? الشرقية ٢٠٢٣

a) When b) How c) Why d) Who

9. .... you got a phone? بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣

a) Can b) Have c) Do d) Are

10. A: .... you run fast when you were young? B: Yes, I could.

a) Were b) Do c) Have d) Could

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. What .... (does) your favourite hobby?
2. .... (Do) you visit your grandparents yesterday? القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
3. How .... (many) do you clean your teeth?
4. Are you going to come and .... (staying) with us next week? سوهاج ٢٠٢٣

4 Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words on a story you read. Your name is Aya and your email address is aya@gmail.com. Your friend's name is Sara and her email address is sara@yahoo.com.

To : .... From: ....

Subject : ....

....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions

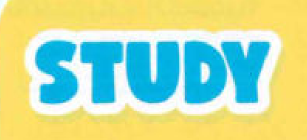
Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Do you think .... (is it) important to work hard?

2 Who .... (does go) with you to the zoo yesterday?

3 .... (Who) do you feel about that?





Lessons 5 & 6



SB pages 9-11 | WB pages 74 - 76

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

brave (adj)	شجاع	journey (n)	رحلة
concert (n)	حفلة موسيقية	musical instrument (n)	آلة موسيقية
fantastic (adj)	رائع	OK (adj)	لا بأس به
great (adj)	عظيم	olives (n)	زيتون
hotel (n)	فندق	theatre (n)	مسرح
interesting (adj)	شيق	whiteboard (n)	سبورة بيضاء

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

contrast (n)	تناقض	include (d) (v)	يتضمن/يشمل
diary entries (n)	مذكرات/يوميات	opinion (n)	رأى
doodles (n)	رسومات	pizza restaurant (n)	مطعم بيتزا
emotion (n)	شعور/عاطفة	surprising (adj)	مدهش
feelings (n)	مشاعر	thoughts (n)	أفكار
hopes (n)	آمال	tips (n)	نصائح

Check Point

Choose and complete: instrument - feelings - tips - concerts

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

1 He likes music, so he likes to go to ....

2 The piano is a musical ....

3 My teacher gave me many .... to revise for the exams.

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

drop	> the phone	يُسقِط الهاتف	have	> a barbecue	لديه حفل شواء
do/have	> homework	يؤدى/ لديه واجب	stop	> working	يتوقف عن العمل
go	> on holiday	يذهب فى إجازة	take	> a selfie	يلتقط صورة شخصية

Prepositions

حروف الجر

at the stadium	فى الاستاد	look around	يتجول
for breakfast	من أجل/على الإفطار	reason for	سبب/مبرر لـ
get in the car	يدخل السيارة	ticket for	تذكرة لـ

Check Point

Choose and complete: take - make - for

1 We usually eat cheese and eggs .... breakfast.

2 She likes to .... a selfie with her new mobile phone.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.
break	يكسر	broke	broken
get up	ينهض	got up	got up
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
wake up	يوقظ	woke up	woken up

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
brave	شجاع	coward	جبان
loud	صاخب	quiet	هادئ
patient	صبور	impatient	غير صبور
stay	يقيم/يبقى	leave	يغادر/يترك

Language Notes



ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 although — على الرغم من (تعبر عن التناقض)

- The pizza was really good although it was cheap.
- It was OK on Saturday although I had lots of homework.

2 because — لأن (توضح السبب)

- My weekend was terrible because my team lost 5–2.
- His ship sank because there was a terrible storm.

3 drive + شخص + to + مكان — يوصل شخصًا بالسيارة

- My father drove us to the park on Saturday.

4 ask + مفعول + to + inf. — يطلب

- Mum asked me to go to the shop.





جزء إثرائي للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
brave	شجاع	courageous	شجاع
loud	صاخب	noisy	صاخب

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
inform (v)	يبلغ	-ation	تحويل الفعل لاسم	information (n)	معلومات
wind (n)	رياح	-y	تحويل الاسم لصفة	windy (adj)	كثير الرياح

Similar spelling - Different meaning

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
great	عظيم	greet	يحيى
tips	نصائح	tapes	شرائط

B Reading & Listening Skills



Pre-listening question:

- Did you enjoy your last weekend? Why? Why not?

Listen to three people talk about their weekend. Match the person to the photos. SB page 9

(1) فظيع
(2) صالة البولينج
(3) زيتون
(4) فلفل
(5) المسرح

1)

Woman	Hi, Lina. How was your weekend?
Lina	Oh, it was terrible[1].
Woman	Oh dear, what happened?
Lina	I watched a football match at the stadium. It was terrible because my team lost 5–2. Then, I took a selfie, but I dropped my mobile phone and it broke.
Woman	Oh dear!


a

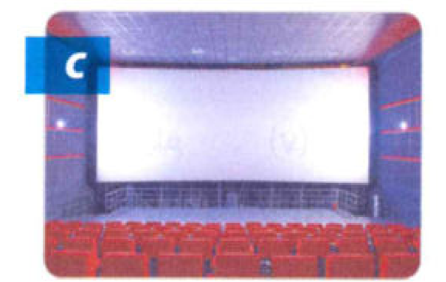
2)

Man	Hi, Hisham. How was your weekend?
Hisham	It was great because I went to the bowling alley[2] with my cousins. Then we went to a pizza restaurant. I had a pizza with olives[3] and pepper[4]. The pizza was really good, although it was expensive.


b

3)

Woman 2	Hi, Judy. How was your weekend?
Judy	It was OK on Saturday, although I had lots of homework. But I went to the theatre[5] in the evening.


c



تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

alley /æli/ theatre /θiːətəʳ/

Post-listening question:

- Why do you think Lina didn't enjoy her weekend?

Lesson 5

Pre-listening question:

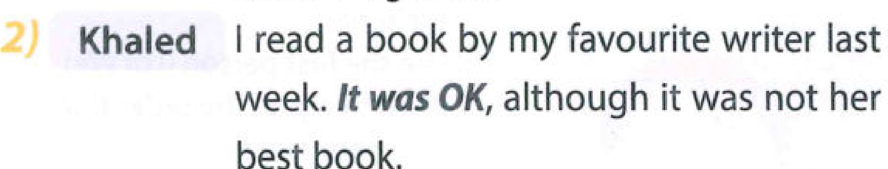
- What did you do last week?

What do you think the people said in the following situations? Use expressions from Exercise 2. Then listen and check your answers.

WB page 74



1) **Judy** I went to my cousin's house last weekend. ***It was fantastic*** because we played all my favourite games!



2) **Khaled** I read a book by my favourite writer last week. ***It was OK***, although it was not her best book.

3) **Marwa** My father drove us to the park on Saturday. It took an hour to go two kilometres! ***It was terrible*** because there were so many cars.

4) **Hany** We read an English book at school today. ***It was very good***, although I didn't understand every word!

Post-listening question:

- How long did it take to go to the park?

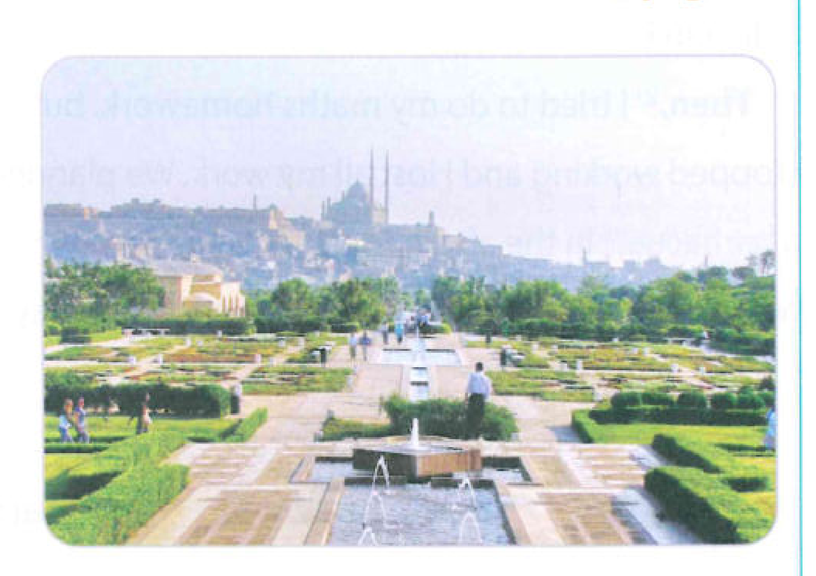
Lesson 6

Read Amir's diary and complete with capital letters, full stops or exclamation marks (!).

WB page 75

Saturday 13th July

Today was a fantastic day. First, I got up at 5 a.m. and had breakfast. Then, I got in the car with my family and we drove to Siwa. Although it was a very long journey, I enjoyed reading my favourite book in the car.



We arrived very late, but it is a beautiful place. We planned to look around, but we stayed in the hotel because we were all very tired. I think tomorrow will be very interesting.

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 6

- How was your day yesterday?

Read Dalia's diary and the writing tips. What was her opinion of the terrible day? Why?

SB page 10



Writing tips

a) Use the past tense (most of the time).
b) Use the first person (I or We).
c) Write things in the order that they happened.
d) Talk about your feelings, hopes, thoughts and opinions.
e) Include pictures and doodles.

Sunday 13th August

Today was a terrible(1) day! My baby brother(2) **woke**(a) me up at 5 a.m! **I**(b) was so tired(3) then. I went downstairs(4) for breakfast, but we had no milk or bread. So, Mum asked me to go to the shop, but it was closed(5) because it was only 6:30 a.m.!

Then,(c) I tried to do my maths homework, but my laptop stopped working and I lost all my work. We planned to have a barbecue(6) in the afternoon, but it was very windy(7). We could not have it! I **hope**(d) tomorrow will be a better day!

(1) فظيع
(2) أخ رضيع
(3) مُرهَق
(4) نزل للأسفل
(5) مغلق
(6) حفلة شواء
(7) كثير الرياح/عاصف



Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

downstairs /daʊnsteəʳz/ barbecue /bɑːʳbɪkjuː/

Post-reading question:

- Why couldn't Dalia do her homework?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The weather today is ....; it's sunny.
a) delicious **b)** fantastic **c)** excited **d)** bored

2. The food was .... We didn't like it. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
a) cheap **b)** delicious **c)** terrible **d)** good

3. The teacher used a/an .... to explain the lesson.
a) band **b)** concert **c)** instrument **d)** whiteboard

4. I enjoy writing .... entries to remember what happened on my day.
a) dairy **b)** diary **c)** journey **d)** opinion

5. The test results were ....; I thought I did worse, but I passed.
a) brave **b)** patient **c)** terrible **d)** surprising

6. The .... is a place where we can watch plays. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
a) theatre **b)** park **c)** hall **d)** museum

7. We are planning to have a .... in the afternoon. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
a) barber **b)** park **c)** barbecue **d)** brake

8. The piano is a musical .... بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
a) museum **b)** instrument **c)** machine **d)** whiteboard

9. A .... is a long trip from one place to another. بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣
a) garden **b)** journey **c)** picnic **d)** park

10. Children like to go .... holidays to have fun.
a) at **b)** in **c)** on **d)** to

11. Tourists stay in .... when they visit other countries.
a) caves **b)** hotels **c)** islands **d)** huts

12. She asked for my .... on the new restaurant in town.
a) opinion **b)** diary **c)** instrument **d)** selfie

13. The stars look so beautiful .... night.
a) of **b)** for **c)** on **d)** at

14. I couldn't do my homework because my laptop .... working.
a) started **b)** stopped **c)** began **d)** went

15. I don't .... the question; can you explain it again?
a) stay **b)** wake **c)** stand **d)** understand

16. My cousins aren't frightened of the dark. They are ....
a) coward **b)** useful **c)** brave **d)** noisy



C Skills





يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب
من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.



Speaking

Responding to past events

الرد على أحداث فى الماضى

Situation ما يقال فى هذا الموقف **Response** جملة الرد



online

- How was your weekend?	كيف كانت عطلتك الأسبوعية؟
It was great/fantastic!	- كانت عظيمة/ رائعة.
- What was the (food) like?	كيف كان يبدو الطعام؟
It was OK.	- كان لا بأس به.
- How was your birthday?	كيف كان عيد ميلادك؟
It was (really/ very) interesting.	- كان شيقا جدًا.
- How was your maths lesson?	كيف كانت حصة الرياضيات؟
It was (really/ very) good.	- كانت جيدة جدًا!
It was terrible!	- كانت فظيعة!
It was (really) bad.	- كانت سيئة للغاية.



Speaking Exercise



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

▶ **Amir is asking Omar about his last weekend.** الشرقية ٢٠٢٣

Amir : How was your last weekend?

Omar : (1).. . I enjoyed it very much.

Amir : Where did you spend it?

Omar : (2).. .

Amir : Giza! (3)..?

Omar : I went with my parents.

Amir : (4)..?

Omar : I visited the Pyramids and the zoo there.

Amir : Did you go to the funfair?

Omar : (5).. . There was no time to go there.





15.5

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Hala is asking Nora about her last holiday. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣

Hala: Where did you go on holiday last year?

Nora: (1) ....

Hala: (2) .... ?

Nora: I stayed in my uncle's flat.

Hala: How did you travel to Alexandria?

Nora: (3) ....

Hala: (4) ....?

Nora: Yes, I swam in the sea.

Hala : What did you do in the evening?

Nora: (5) ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I usually wake .... at 6 a.m. for work.

a) up b) for c) down d) in

2. The music is too ....; can you turn it down a little?

a) quiet b) loud c) surprising d) wonderful

3. I'm going to a .... tonight to enjoy my favourite band.

a) school b) cinema c) stadium d) concert

4. We should buy .... to go into the cinema.

a) tickets b) papers c) books d) tips

5. Good students follow their teacher's ....

a) tubs b) tabs c) types d) tips

6. What's your .... about the new hotel? القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

a) opinion b) sport c) hobby d) sight

7. Watching a match .... the stadium is a fantastic experience.

a) with b) on c) for d) at

8. .... don't we go kayaking? بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣

a) What b) Why c) When d) Where

9. What are you ....? الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

a) doing b) do c) did d) done

10. What .... your favourite type of music?

a) does b) is c) has d) had

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She .... (plays) a lot of tennis when she was younger.
2. .... (You are) going to have a party this weekend? بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
3. Where did you .... (went) for your holidays? الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
4. .... (What) do you think some people are not kind?

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A day in your life" الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1 I can't go out with you! I .... homework to do.

a) have b) do c) stay d) go

2 She's happy .... get a new job.

a) for b) with c) about d) to

3 Let's look .... and see what's in the store.

a) around b) at c) for d) up

Review on Unit 7

Vocabulary

adventure story	قصة مغامرة
nearby	مجاور/قريب
aquarium	معرض الأحياء المائية
nervous	عصبى/متوتر
bowling alley	صالة البولينج
planetarium	مبنى القبة السماوية
classical	كلاسيكى
pop	موسيقى البوب
dolphin	الدلفين
sailor	بحّار
exhibition	معرض
canteen	مقصف (كانتين)
football stadium	استاد كرة القدم
uniform	زى موحد
funfair	الملاهى
sports centre	مركز رياضى
interview	حوار/مقابلة
musician	موسيقار/عازف
swimming pool	حمام سباحة
wheel	عجلة
jazz	موسيقى الجاز
terrible	فظيع

Language

1. The Past Simple Tense

Affirmative:

- I visited my uncle yesterday.

Key words:

(yesterday أمس - last ... الماضى ... - ago منذ - in the past فى الماضى - from + سنة ماضية to + سنة ماضية - in + سنة فى الماضى (in 2010))

- My father **was born** in 1980.

Negative:

- I did not arrive late for school yesterday.

Questions:

- Did you watch TV last night?
- What time did you go to bed?

2. Questions

1. Yes/No questions:

Helping/Modal verb + subject + complement?

- **A:** Are you a teacher?
  B: Yes, I am.

2. Wh- questions:

Q. word + helping/modal verb + subject + complement?

- When did you go to school?

Skills

1. Asking and answering questions about past events:

- **A:** When did you have breakfast?
  B: I had my breakfast this morning.
- **A:** Where did you go last weekend?
  B: I went to the museum.
- **A:** When was Dina's birthday?
  B: It was in October.

2. Asking and answering about favourite music

- **A:** What type of music do you like?
  B: I like jazz best.
  C: I like the sound of pop.

3. Responding to past events:

- **A:** How was your weekend?
  B: It was great/ fantastic!/ terrible.
- **A:** What was the (food) like?
  B: It was OK.



Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 7





A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. Where did you go last weekend?
   a) To Tanta. b) To Giza.
   c) To Aswan. d) To Siwa.
2. How did you go?
   a) By car. b) By train.
   c) By taxi. d) By bus.
3. When did you get up that day?
   a) At 6 p.m. b) At 6 a.m.
   c) At 5 a.m. d) At 5 p.m.
4. How was the weekend?
   a) Terrible. b) Fantastic.
   c) Horrible. d) Bad.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

Anas and Mona are talking about stories.

Anas : What kind of stories do you like?

Mona: (1).. .

Anas : (2)..?

Mona: Because adventure stories are very exciting.

Anas : (3)..?

Mona: My favourite story is *Robinson Crusoe*.

Anas : What was Robinson Crusoe's job?

Mona: (4).. .

Anas : What happened to his ship?

Mona: (5).. .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

During my last visit to Cairo, I visited Al-Azhar Park. It is a beautiful green space that covers over 30 hectares in the heart of the city. The park has different views over Cairo, and it's a great place to relax and escape from the noise of the city.

I spent a few hours walking around the park, enjoying the fresh air and the beautiful view. There are many different types of trees and flowers, as well as many small lakes with fountains. I also bought a refreshing drink and some snacks. I had a **wonderful** time there. I advise anyone to visit it.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

....

2. What activities did the writer do at the park?

....

3. Would you like to visit Al-Azhar Park? Why/ Why not?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "there" refers to ....

a) lakes b) Al-Azhar Park c) a view d) a zoo

5. The writer bought .... at Al-Azhar Park.

a) a drink b) snacks c) flowers d) a and b

6. The word "**wonderful**" in the passage means ....

a) strong b) boring c) good d) bad

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Let's .... a selfie together to remember this moment.

a) do b) take c) give d) stay

2. My day was amazing, it wasn't ....

a) great b) terrible c) fantastic d) late

3. She was .... enough to stand up to the wild dog. She wasn't afraid.

a) impatient b) worried c) afraid d) brave

4. She bought a ticket .... the film online.

a) by b) in c) for d) at

5. He's a/an .... teacher. He explains the lesson many times with different ways.

a) patient b) impatient c) terrible d) bad

6. Did you go to the .... to watch the match? بني سويف ٢٠٢٣

a) stadium b) temple c) aquarium d) library

7. I like playing football, so I asked my father to join a/an ....

a) funfair b) aquarium c) sports centre d) planetarium

8. **A:** What .... you do last Friday? **B:** I studied maths. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣

a) are b) had c) were d) did

9. .... did you put my keys?

a) Which b) Whose c) Where d) Who

10. .... is your favourite sports star?

a) Who b) Whose c) How d) Why

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. What are you .... (go) to do at the weekend? أسوان ٢٠٢٣
2. .... (Do) you got a new school bag? WB
3. She went to school .... (because) she felt ill. WB
4. How .... (many) does the concert ticket cost?

E Writing

6 Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words on your last weekend. Your name is Aliaa and your email address is aliaa@hotmail.com. Your friend's name is Ziena and her email address is ziena@gmail.com.

To : .... From: ....

Subject : ....

....

....

....

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Solve more exams	Well done!

Unit 8

The amazing world around us

Objectives of the unit

Reading	A text about the Tahya Masr Bridge, the Grand Egyptian Museum
Writing	A paragraph on a museum about the twenty-first century, a fact file, a review of places giving your opinion
Listening	Facts and figures, a quiz
Speaking	Talking about measurements, making comparisons
Language	Comparative and superlative adjectives
Issues	Loyalty and belonging
Life Skills	Respecting different opinions



Tapescript

WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب





Lessons 1 & 2



SB pages 12-15 | WB pages 77 & 78

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

amazing (adj)	مذهل/مدهش	link (ed) (v)	يربط
bank (n)	ضفة النهر	population (n)	سكان
bridge (n)	جسر/كوبرى	tower (n)	برج
cross (ed) (v)	يعبر	tunnel (n)	نفق

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

correctly (adv)	بطريقة صحيحة	finally (adv)	أخيرًا/فى النهاية
countryside (n)	الريف	forest (n)	غابة
daily (adv)	يوميًا	guess (ed) (v)	يخمن
dictionary (n)	قاموس	measure (d) (v)	يقيس
facts (n)	حقائق	traffic (n)	حركة المرور

Check Point

Choose and complete: cross – population – guess – dictionary

1. The .... of Egypt is more than 100 million people.
2. You can use your .... to know the meaning of the new words.
3. You should be careful when you .... the road.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

do > a quiz	يؤدى اختبارًا قصيرًا	get > correct answers	يحصل على إجابات صحيحة

Prepositions — حروف الجر

away from	بعيد عن	easy for	سهل لـ
compare with	يقارن بـ	examples of	أمثلة لـ
crowded with	مزدحم بـ	the capital of	عاصمة

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية: (n) = noun | (v) = verb | (adj) = adjective | (adv) = adverb | (prep) = preposition | (conj) = conjunction

Check Point

Choose and complete: **with – Making – for – Doing**

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

1. All the class found the exam difficult, but it was easy .... my brother.
2. .... quizzes helps us to study all the lessons well.
3. The streets in Cairo are crowded .... cars.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.
build	يبني	built	built
think	يعتقد/يفكر	thought	thought

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
empty	فارغ	crowded	مزدحم
far	بعيد	near	قريب
high	عالٍ/مرتفع	low	منخفض
modern	حديث	old	قديم
narrow	ضيق	wide	واسع/عريض
noisy	صاخب	quiet	هادئ

Language Notes



ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 feel + adj يشعر بـ ...

- Adam felt nervous before starting his new school.

2 hundred - thousand - million لا تجمع هذه الكلمات إذا جاء قبلها رقم.

- I have five hundred pounds.

3 Measurements: القياسات:

How deep?	كم عمق؟	How many?	كم عدد؟
How heavy?	كم وزن؟	How much?	كم الكمية/الثمن؟
How high?	كم ارتفاع؟	How old?	كم عمر؟
How long?	كم طول/كم المدة؟	How wide?	كم عرض/اتساع؟

4 **the** تستخدم مع الأماكن الشهيرة.

- the Shanghai Tower
- the Red Pyramid

5 **Important places:** أماكن مهمة:

Mount Everest	جبل إيفرست	the Amazon	نهر الأمازون
Mount Kilimanjaro	جبل كليمنجارو	the Nile River	نهر النيل
the Qasr El Nil Bridge	كوبرى قصر النيل	the Pyramids of Giza	أهرامات الجيزة
the 6th October Bridge	كوبرى ٦ أكتوبر	the Red Pyramid	الهرم الأحمر
the Al Hamra Tower	برج الحمراء	the Shanghai Tower	برج شنغهاى

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **A:** How .... is the Great Pyramid? **B:** It's 146 metres high.
   a) long **b)** wide **c)** old **d)** high
2. This mobile phone costs six .... pounds.
   a) thousand **b)** thousands **c)** thousands' **d)** thousand's
3. We took .... Cairo-Alexandria desert road to travel to Alex.
   a) a **b)** the **c)** an **d)** no article



جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
crowded	مزدحم	busy	مزدحم
narrow	ضيق	tight	ضيق

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
measure (v)	يقيس	-ment	تحويل الفعل لاسم	measurement (n)	قياس
visit (v)	يزور	-or	تحويل الفعل لاسم فاعل	visitor (n)	زائر

Study these places

قم بدراسة هذه الأماكن:

Place المكـــان	Location الموقـــع	Measurements القياسـات
the Tahya Masr Bridge كوبرى تحيا مصر	Egypt مصر	- It's about 67.36 metres wide. - It's about 25,000 metres long.
the Great Pyramid الهرم الأكبر	Giza - Egypt الجيزة/مصر	- It's 146 metres high.
the Cairo-Alexandria desert road طريق القاهرة - الإسكندرية الصحراوى	Egypt مصر	- It's 220 kilometres long.
Lake Baikal بحيرة بايكال	Russia روسيا	- It's 1,642 metres deep.
Abraj Al-Bait Clock Tower برج ساعة أبراج البيت	Saudi Arabia السعودية	- It's 601 metres high.
the Luxor Temple معبد الأقصر	Egypt مصر	- It's just under 3,500 years old.
the Pyramid of El Castillo هرم الكاستيو	Chichén Itzá - Mexico تشيتشن إيتزا/المكسيك	- It's 30 metres high.
the Leaning Tower of Pisa برج بيزا المائل	Italy إيطاليا	- It's just under 850 years old.
the Gotthard Tunnel نفق جوتهارد	Switzerland سويسرا	- It's 2,300 metres under the ground.

Similar spelling - Different meaning

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
cross	يعبر	across	عَبْر
population	سكان	pollution	تلوث
tower	برج	tour	جولة

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 1

Pre-listening question:

- Can you guess the height of the Cairo Tower?

Listen and check your answers to Exercise 1.

SB page 13

a. The Pyramid of El Castillo in Chichén Itzá is 30 metres high.
b. The Tahya Masr Bridge is about 540 metres long.
c. More than 37,500,000 people live in Tokyo, Japan.
d. The Leaning Tower of Pisa is just under 850 years old.
e. The Gotthard Tunnel in Switzerland is 2.3 kilometres under the ground.

Listen and check your answers to Exercise 3.

SB page 13

(1) كم طول | (3) كم ارتفاع | (5) كم عدد
(2) كم عمق | (4) كم عمر



- How long(1) is the Cairo-Alexandria desert road?
  - It's 220 kilometres long.

2

- How deep(2) is Lake Baikal in Russia?
  - It's 1,642 metres deep.



- How high(3) is Abraj Al-Bait Clock Tower in Saudi Arabia?
  - It's 601 metres high.



- How old(4) is the Luxor Temple?
  - It's just under 3,500 years old.

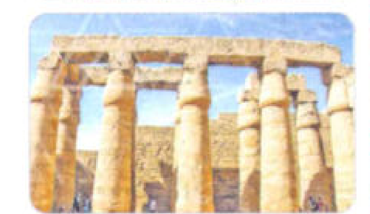


- How many(5) people live in Cairo?
  - More than 20 million people.











Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:

Saudi Arabia /saʊdi əˈreɪbiə/

Post-listening question:

- What do you know about Abraj Al-Bait Clock Tower?

Pre-listening question:

Lesson 2

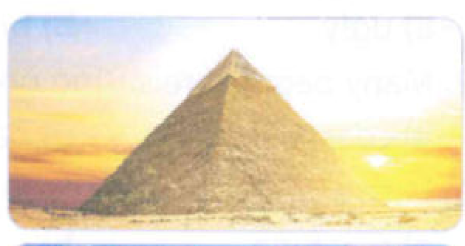
- Which pyramid is taller, the Great Pyramid of Giza or the Red Pyramid?



Listen and check your answers to Exercise 2. *SB page 15*

How much do you know about pyramids? Let's compare[1] two pyramids in Egypt. The Great Pyramid[2] of Giza is 146 metres tall. It's taller than the Red Pyramid[3], which is 105 metres tall. But the Red Pyramid is farther away from the centre of Cairo, so it's less crowded[4] with visitors. Because it's less crowded, it's also quieter.

(1) يقارن
(2) الهرم الأكبر
(3) الهرم الأحمر
(4) مزدحم
(5) برج شنغهاي
(6) برج الحمراء
(7) عواصم
(8) تعداد السكان



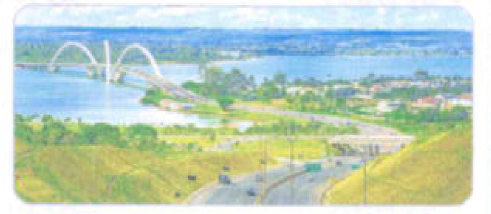


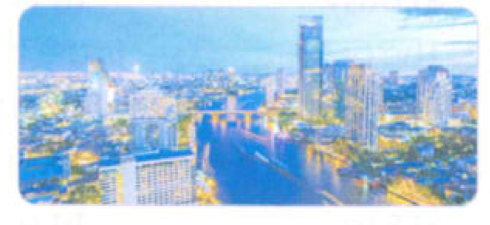
Now let's compare two very tall buildings. The Shanghai Tower[5] in China is 632 metres tall. The tower first opened in 2015. The Al Hamra Tower[6] in Kuwait is 412.6 metres tall. The building first opened in 2011. So, the Shanghai Tower is taller and more modern than the Al Hamra Tower in Kuwait.



Finally, we're going to compare two capital cities[7]. Bangkok became the capital of Thailand about 600 years ago, so it's much older than Brasilia. Brasilia is a modern city. The Brazilians built it in 1960. More people live in Bangkok than Brasilia. The population[8] of Bangkok is more than 10 million. The population of Brasilia is about four and a half million.

So, how did you do? Did you get the answers correct?







Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

Shanghai /ʃæŋhaɪ/

population /pɒpjʊleɪʃən/

Post-listening question:

- What's the capital city of Thailand?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. We enjoyed ourselves last holiday. It was .... الشرقية ٢٠٢٣

a) ugly **b)** boring **c)** amazing **d)** excited

2. Many people are sitting on the .... of the river to catch fish. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣

a) coast **b)** bank **c)** beach **d)** cave

3. I use a .... to look up new words.

a) machine **b)** pen **c)** dictionary **d)** notebook

4. The Cairo Metro goes through a long .... under the Nile. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣

a) tower **b)** tunnel **c)** cave **d)** bridge

5. I always go to school on foot because it isn't far .... my house. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣

a) of **b)** from **c)** in **d)** on

6. **A:** How .... is Abraj Al-Bait Clock Tower? **B:** It's about 601 m. السويس ٢٠٢٣

a) deep **b)** high **c)** old **d)** many

7. The Tahya Masr .... goes over the Nile in Cairo. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

a) Boat **b)** Tunnel **c)** Bridge **d)** Tower

8. The .... is very slow, we'll be late. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

a) traffic **b)** pollution **c)** population **d)** centre

9. Cairo's streets are always .... أسيوط ٢٠٢٣

a) busy **b)** far **c)** empty **d)** quiet

10. We need to buy some more water. This bottle is .... WB

a) empty **b)** crowded **c)** full **d)** old

11. Be careful you don't hit your head on the door. It is very .... WB

a) busy **b)** high **c)** low **d)** long

12. The Cairo .... is the tallest building in Egypt. أسوان ٢٠٢٣

a) Tower **b)** City **c)** Tunnel **d)** Bridge

13. "..................." is the opposite of empty. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣

a) Fast **b)** Happy **c)** Noisy **d)** Crowded

14. The street is quite .... The big truck can't cross it. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣

a) modern **b)** empty **c)** narrow **d)** big

15. We want to swim in the river, but how .... is it? بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣

a) high **b)** tall **c)** deep **d)** low

16. Cairo is the capital city .... Egypt.

a) to **b)** for **c)** of **d)** at

C Language

Comparative of adjectives مقارنة الصفات

- **We use comparative adjectives to compare two things, people or places.**

نستخدم مقارنة الصفات للمقارنة بين شيئين، شخصين أو مكانين. وتنقسم الصفات حسب النطق إلى:

- صفات قصيرة (Short adjectives) وهى تنطق على مقطع واحد (One syllable):

(high - big - tall - old - wide - nice - hot)

- صفات طويلة (Long adjectives) وهى تنطق على مقطعين أو أكثر (Two or more syllables):

(modern - crowded - amazing - wonderful - interesting)

How to use compartive adjectives: كيفية استخدام مقارنة الصفات:

لعمل مقارنة بين اثنين فى صفة

A: ... adj + er + than — إذا كانت الصفة ذات مقطع واحد

- Mount Everest is higher than Mount Kilimanjaro.

B: more أكثر / less أقل + adj + than — إذا كانت الصفة بها أكثر من مقطع ...

- Cairo is more crowded than Aswan.



١- الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ (e) نضيف لها (r) فقط للمقارنة بين اثنين: **(large - larger than)**

٢- الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ (y) وقبلها حرف ساكن نقلب (y) إلى (i) ثم نضيف (er): **(noisy - noisier than)**

٣- بعض الصفات القصيرة المنتهية بحرف ساكن وقبله حرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الأخير + (er): **(hot - hotter than)**

Common Exceptions استثناءات شائعة

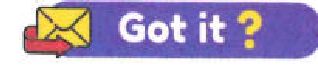
• good →	better	- I'm better than Ali at maths.
• bad →	worse	- Today's weather is worse than yesterday's.
• far →	farther	- Which pyramid is farther from the centre of Cairo?

Question

نستخدم (Which) بمعنى أى / أيهما للتخيير كالتالى:

Which is (adj + er) / (more / less + adj), ... or ...?

- Which is easier, English or maths?





تمكنك هذه الجزئية من التعرف على كيفية إجابة سؤال تصحيح الخطأ مدعمة بأسباب الإجابة لتعزيز فهمك للدرس.

Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- I'm .... (short) than my mother.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (shorter) لوجود than الدالة على المقارنة بين اثنين والصفة هنا قصيرة.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A lion is .... than a monkey. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) stronger b) strongest c) strong d) the strongest
2. This exercise is .... than that one.
   a) boring b) much boring c) more boring d) most boring
3. Tennis is less dangerous .... football. WB
   a) this b) that c) then d) than
4. Villages are usually .... than cities.
   a) polluted b) more polluted
   c) less polluted d) as polluted
5. Let's buy green apples because red apples are .... أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
   a) most expensive b) less expensive
   c) least expensive d) more expensive
6. The restaurant we went to yesterday was .... than the one we tried last week.
   a) much busy b) busiest c) as busy d) busier
7. Which bridge is ...., the 6th October Bridge or the Qasr El Nil Bridge? قنا ٢٠٢٣
   a) longest b) more long c) the longest d) longer
8. That footballer is .... than others. سوهاج ٢٠٢٢
   a) famous b) most famous c) as famous d) more famous
9. Mount Everest is higher .... Mount Kilimanjaro. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) and b) or c) from d) than
10. The piano is .... to play than the drum.
    a) difficult b) most difficult
    c) more difficult d) as difficult

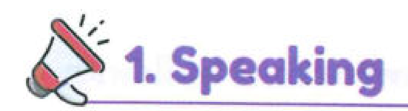
2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Cairo is .... (most) crowded than Aswan. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
2. Sugar is .... (bad) for you than fruit. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
3. The white bird is .... (beautiful) than the black one.
4. The new phone is more .... (expensive) the old one.
5. Who is .... (tall), Ali or his sister? الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
6. This book is .... (interesting) than the last one I read.

D Skills



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.



1. Speaking

Asking and answering about measurements

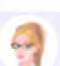
السؤال والإجابة عن القياسات

Situation	ما يقال في هذا الموقف	Response	جملة الرد



- How long is the Cairo-Alexandria desert road?

كم طول طريق القاهرة - الإسكندرية الصحراوى؟



It is 220 kilometres long. - إنه ٢٢٠ كيلو مترًا.

- How deep is Lake Baikal? - كم عمق بحيرة بايكال؟



It is 1,642 metres deep. - إنها ١٦٤٢ مترًا.

- How wide is the Tahya Masr Bridge?

كم عرض كوبرى تحيا مصر؟



It's about 67.36 metres wide. - حوالى ٦٧,٣٦ متر.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

Ahmed and Omar are talking about the measurements of some places.

Ahmed : Can I ask you some questions?

Omar : (1).. .

Ahmed : (2)..?

Omar : The Great Pyramid is 146 metres tall.

Ahmed : Did you visit it?

Omar : (3).. .

Ahmed : Great! (4)..?

Omar : Lake Baikal in Russia is 1,642 metres deep.

Ahmed : How old is the Luxor Temple?

Omar : (5).. .



2. Write it right



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about an important building: تعلم كيفية الكتابة عن مبنى مهم:

- (البلد) has a lot of important places.
- The (المبنى) is one of the most important buildings.
- It took (عدد السنوات) years to be built.
- It opened in (السنة).
- It's (الرقم) metres high/tall.
- It has (وصف المبنى).
- It's a wonderful building.

Writing tips

Use a heading to tell people what your paragraph is about.

استخدم عنوانًا لتخبر الناس عن موضوع فقرتك.

Example

The Cairo Tower

Egypt has many amazing places. You can visit some of these places in Cairo, like the Cairo Tower and the Egyptian Museum. The Cairo Tower is one of the most famous buildings in Egypt. It took five years to be built. It opened in 1961. It is 187 metres tall and stands next to the Nile. There is a restaurant at the top. It moves, so you can see all of the city below. There are 24 windows on each floor of the building. If you want to climb to the top, there are 2,500 stairs! At night, the colours on the tower change. It is a wonderful building!

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"The Great Pyramid"

Egypt has many interesting places. ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

TEST YOURSELF

Take a test



Unit 8 Lessons (1 & 2)



19.5

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. How tall is the Great Pyramid of Giza?
   a) 64 metres. b) 46 metres. c) 164 metres. d) 146 metres.
2. How tall is the Red Pyramid?
   a) 105 metres. b) 150 metres. c) 5 metres. d) 50 metres.
3. Which is more crowded with visitors?
   a) The Great Pyramid. b) The Red Pyramid.
   c) Both of them. d) None.
4. Which is quieter?
   a) The Great Pyramid. b) The Red Pyramid.
   c) Both of them. d) None.

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Farah is asking Jana about the Great Pyramid in Giza. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣

Farah: Did you visit the Great Pyramid?

Jana : (1).. .

Farah: (2)..?

Jana : It's in Giza.

Farah: (3)..?

Jana : It's 146 m high.

Farah: When did you visit it?

Jana : (4).. .

Farah: What do you think of it?

Jana : (5).. .

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A .... is a place with lots of trees. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) river b) desert c) forest d) lake
2. The bridge is about 25,000 metres .... WB
   a) tall b) high c) deep d) long
3. We .... things by using the metre or the kilometre. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) measure b) count c) guess d) weigh
4. **A:** Should I take a taxi to the funfair? **B:** No, it's .... القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
   a) far b) high c) near d) local

5. The train station was crowded .... people.
a) to b) for c) by d) with

6. **A:** How .... is the car park? **B:** It's 10 metres under the ground. SB
a) old b) many c) deep d) fast

7. Only people and bikes can go down that road because it's very .... سوهاج ٢٠٢٢
a) narrow b) wide c) easy d) big

8. Ahmed is .... than Samir at English. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
a) as good b) best c) better d) the best

9. My English test was .... than my sister's. الغربية ٢٠٢٣
a) as difficult b) so difficult
c) more difficult d) the most difficult

10. Tennis is less dangerous .... football. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
a) this b) that c) then d) than

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Physics is .... (bad) than chemistry. WB
2. An elephant is .... (big) than a camel. السويس ٢٠٢٣
3. Travelling by planes is .... (expensive) than travelling by buses. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
4. The Nile is .... (longest) than the Amazon. الغربية ٢٠٢٣

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"The most beautiful place you visited" أسوان ٢٠٢٣

....

....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1. The metro crosses the river through a ....
a) tunnel b) bridge c) bank d) ferry

2. Your car is expensive, but mine is ....
a) more expensive than b) most expensive
c) as expensive d) more expensive

3. Who is ...., your father or your mother?
a) old b) older c) older than d) as old




Watch a video

Lessons 3 & 4



SB pages 16 - 18 | WB pages 79 & 80

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

achieve (d) (v)	ينجز/يحقق	insect (n)	حشرة
achievement (n)	إنجاز	protect (ed) (v)	يحمى
across (prep)	عبر	sunset (n)	غروب الشمس
cross (ed) (v)	يعبر/يمر على	suspension (n)	مُعلق
glass floor (n)	أرضية من الزجاج	TV show (n)	برنامج تلفزيونى

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

afraid (adj)	خائف	price (n)	ثمن/سعر
describe (d) (v)	يصف	probably (adv)	من المحتمل
ice skating (n)	التزحلق على الجليد بلوح	size (n)	حجم
land animal (n)	حيوان برى	skiing (n)	التزحلق على الجليد
look (ed) like	يشبه	sports club (n)	النادى الرياضى
mountain climbing (n)	تسلق الجبل	No way!	مستحيل!

Check Point

Choose and complete: sports – floor – cross – protect

1. You should wear sunglasses to .... your eyes from the sun.
2. He went to the .... club to play basketball.
3. That bridge has a glass ....

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

do > a sport	يمارس رياضة	give > an opinion	يعطى رأيًا

Prepositions — حروف الجر

a view of	منظر لـ	in my opinion	فى رأيى
at sunset	فى وقت الغروب	opinion of/about	رأى فى
disagree with	لا يتفق مع	proud of	فخور بـ
fly at ... km/h	يطير بسرعة ... كم/ساعة	think about/of	يعتقد/يفكر فى

Check Point

Choose and complete: at – about – do – make

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

1. What's your opinion .... this film?
2. He went to the club to .... a sport.
3. I love drawing pictures .... sunset.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs
تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
hear	يسمع	heard	heard

Words and Opposites
الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
funny	مضحك/مرح	unfunny	غير مضحك
polite	مؤدب	impolite	غير مؤدب
popular	محبوب/شعبى	unpopular	غير محبوب
healthy	صحى	unhealthy	غير صحى

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 help + (inf. / to + inf.) يساعد فى
- More than 4,000 people helped **to build** (**build**) the Tahya Masr Bridge.

2 start + (v + ing / to + inf.) يبدأ
- I started **doing (to do)** my homework two hours ago.

3 enjoy + (v + ing/ n.) يستمتع بـ
- Many people enjoy **walking** across the bridge. They enjoy **fresh air**.

4 The best time to + inf. أفضل وقت ...
- The best time **to cross** the bridge is at sunset.

5 The superlatives عند وجود ملكية ('s) نحذف (the) من صيغة التفضيل العليا.
- The world**'s** widest suspension bridge opened in Cairo in May 2019.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1) I enjoy .... in my free time.

a) read b) reads c) reading d) to reading

2) You should start .... early enough before the exams.

a) revise b) to revise c) revising d) b & c

3) My mother is the person who helps me a lot .... my homework.

a) do b) doing c) to doing d) a & b

4) The best country .... is Egypt.

a) to visit b) visiting c) visit d) visits



جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
protect	يحمى	save/keep	يحفظ

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
achieve (v)	ينجز/يحقق	-ment	تحويل الفعل لاسم	achievement (n)	إنجاز
health (n)	صحة	-y	تحويل الاسم لصفة	healthy (adj)	صحى

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
im-	تعطى عكس الصفة	polite (adj)	مؤدب	impolite (adj)	غير مؤدب
un-		popular (adj)	محبوب	unpopular (adj)	غير محبوب

Similar spelling - Different meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
floor	أرضية	flour	دقيق/طحين
glass	زجاج	grass	عشب

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 3

Pre-reading question:

- Where is the Tahya Masr Bridge?

Read about the Tahya Masr Bridge and answer the questions. *SB page 16*



The world's widest suspension(1) bridge opened in Cairo in May 2019. It is 67.36 m wide and 540 m long.

More than 4,000 people helped to build it. They started building it in 2016. They finished it in 32 months.

The bridge crosses the Nile's Warraq Island(2). More than 100,000 people live on the island.

Many people enjoy walking across(3) the bridge. It has a glass floor(4), so you can see the river under your feet! The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset(5), for a beautiful view(6) of the city.

(1) مُعلق
(2) جزيرة الوراق
(3) عبر
(4) أرضية زجاجية
(5) غروب الشمس
(6) منظر جميل



Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

suspension /səspenʃən/

island /aɪlənd/

Post-reading question:

- Why do you think sunset is the best time to walk across the Tahya Masr Bridge?

Complete the text with the superlative form of the words in brackets.

WB page 79



You probably know that whales are the **biggest** animals in the world, but did you know that they are also the **noisiest**?

A whale can hear another whale 160 km away. Did you know that the **fastest** animal in the world is a bird? It can fly at more than 300 km/h.

Insects are the **most dangerous** animals in the world. They make more people ill than any other animal.

Finally, the **smallest** land animal[1] is the Etruscan shrew[2]. It looks like a mouse and is the same size as a bee!

(1) حيوان برى

(2) حيوان صغير يشبه الفأر

Lesson 4

SB page 18

Pre-listening question: - What do you think of Dahab?

Listen and complete the sentences.

Girl 1: Which **subject** do you think is more **difficult**, English or **science**?

Girl 2: In my opinion, **science** is the **most** difficult of all.

Boy 1: I think **Dahab** has the most **beautiful beach** in Egypt. Do you agree?

Boy 2: I agree. It's also the **least crowded**.

Girl 3: What's your opinion of ice skating[1]? Do you agree that it's more **dangerous** than mountain climbing[2]?

Girl 4: I'm afraid[3], I **don't agree**.

Boy 3: What do you **think** about the new TV show?

Boy 4: I think it's **the funniest** show on TV right now.

(1) التزلج على الجليد

(2) تسلق الجبال

(3) أخشى أننى







Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

skating /skeɪtɪŋ/ climbing /klaɪmɪŋ/

Post-listening question:

- Which subject do you think is easier, English or maths?

Practise more

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. My grandfather made lots of great .... during his life, I'm proud of him. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) environments b) achievements
   c) advertisements d) measurements
2. It's important to be polite when you .... your opinion. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
   a) do b) take c) give d) ask
3. The Tahya Masr Bridge is the world's widest .... bridge. أزهر/القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) suspension b) suspicion c) expression d) invention
4. The fastest bird in the world can fly .... more than 300 km/h.
   a) in b) at c) by d) on
5. The Tahya Misr Bridge has a glass .... بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) floor b) flour c) flower d) four
6. We wear coats in winter to .... ourselves from the cold. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) sleep b) protect c) dry d) check
7. We walked .... the park to get to the museum.
   a) cross b) across c) way d) away
8. Many people enjoy the beautiful .... of the Nile. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) opinion b) view c) show d) cave
9. Mountain .... is the most dangerous sport at all. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) delivery b) climbing c) skating d) weighing
10. He likes to .... sports to stay healthy and fit. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
    a) do b) make c) get d) achieve
11. I like watching TV .... in the evening on holidays.
    a) shows b) floors c) insects d) prizes
12. She was .... of the dark. She shouted for help.
    a) popular b) polite c) afraid d) interested
13. The opposite of the word "healthy" is .... القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
    a) well b) wealthy c) strong d) unhealthy
14. What's your .... of doing a sport every week? بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
    a) opinion b) agree c) think d) best
15. Football is very .... all over the world. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
    a) juicy b) popular c) spicy d) dairy
16. She learnt ice .... when she was a child.
    a) skating b) climbing c) swimming d) running

C Language

The superlative of adjectives

صيغة التفضيل العليا

- We use superlative adjectives to compare more than two things.

- نستخدم صيغة التفضيل العليا لمقارنة أكثر من شيئين.

How to use superlative adjectives:

كيفية استخدام صيغة التفضيل العليا:

لعمل مقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين فى صفة

- إذا كانت الصفة ذات مقطع واحد

the + adj + est

- He is the fastest of all.

إذا كانت الصفة بها أكثر من مقطع

the most / the least + adj

- Salah is the most popular Arab footballer.



١- الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ (e) نضيف لها (st) فقط: (large - the largest)

٢- الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ (y) وقبلها حرف ساكن نقلب (y) إلى (i) ثم نضيف (est): (noisy - the noisiest)

٣- بعض الصفات القصيرة المنتهية بحرف ساكن وقبله حرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الأخير + (est): (hot - the hottest)

Common Exceptions

استثناءات شائعة

• good →	**the best**	- Sami is the best student in class.
• bad →	**the worst**	- Today's weather is the worst.
• far →	**the farthest**	- The Red Pyramid is the farthest from the centre of Cairo.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. January is .... (cold) month of the year.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (the coldest) لأنها مقارنة بين أكثر من شيئين والصفة هنا قصيرة.

2. I am the .... (bad) cook ever!

- الإجابة الصحيحة (worst) لأنها مقارنة بين أكثر من شيئين والصفة هنا غير منتظمة.

3. In my opinion, history is the .... (interesting) subject.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (most interesting) لأنها مقارنة بين أكثر من شيئين والصفة هنا بها أكثر من مقطع.



Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You probably know that whales are .... animals in the world. WB
   a) the biggest b) biggest c) the bigger d) bigger
2. The Nile is the .... river in the world. المنيا ٢٠٢٣
   a) longest b) long c) longer d) most long
3. In my opinion, my mum is .... cook in the world. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) good b) better c) best d) the best
4. This is the .... game in the sports centre; it's my favourite.
   a) amazing b) more amazing c) less amazing d) most amazing
5. This is the .... popular book in the library. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) least b) less c) more d) less than
6. Everest is .... mountain in the world. الأقصر ٢٠٢٣
   a) high b) higher c) highest d) the highest
7. The Egyptian Museum is the .... important museum in Egypt.
   a) less b) much c) most d) more
8. The Great Pyramid is .... pyramid in the world.
   a) famous b) more famous c) least famous d) the most famous
9. This is the .... park in the city. Many people like visiting it.
   a) beautiful b) more beautiful c) most beautiful d) less beautiful
10. Do you know .... fastest animal in the world? بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) the b) the most c) the more d) the least

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. What's the .... (better) time to walk across the bridge? بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
2. I think the Tahya Masr Bridge is the .... (great) project in Egypt.
3. Fatma is .... (more) beautiful girl in our group. أسوان ٢٠٢٣
4. I like English. It's the .... (interesting) subject.
5. The Nile is the world's .... (long) river.
6. Dalia is the .... (older) in her family. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

D Skills





1. Speaking

Asking about and giving opinion السؤال عن وإبداء الرأى

Situation ما يقال فى هذا الموقف **Response** جملة الرد



Which subject do you think is more difficult, English or Arabic?
أى مادة هى أصعب فى رأيك: اللغة العربية أم اللغة الإنجليزية؟



In my opinion, English is the most difficult of all.
- فى رأيى اللغة الإنجليزية هى الأصعب على الإطلاق.

What's your opinion of the Tahya Masr Bridge?
ما رأيك فى كوبرى تحيا مصر؟



I think the Tahya Masr Bridge is the greatest project in Egypt.
- أعتقد أن كوبرى تحيا مصر هو أعظم مشروع فى مصر.

Do you agree that science is easier than maths?
هل تتفق أن العلوم أسهل من الرياضيات؟



I don't agree with you. - أنا لا أتفق معك فى الرأى.

What do you think about the new TV show?
ما رأيك فى العرض التلفزيونى الجديد؟

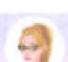


I think it's the most popular show on TV now!
- أعتقد أنه العرض الأكثر شعبية على التلفزيون الآن.

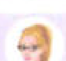
عدم الاتفاق فى الرأى مع شخص آخر

Situation ما يقال فى هذا الموقف

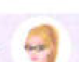




I don't feel the same as you about that. - أنا لا أشعر بنفس ما تشعر به.



I'm sorry, but I don't have the same opinion. - أنا أسف ولكن ليس لدى نفس الرأى.



I'm not sure about that. - أنا غير متأكد بخصوص ذلك.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

▶ Complete the following dialogue:

أسوان ٢٠٢٣

Adel and Mohsen are talking about an important achievement.

Adel : What do you think of the Tahya Masr Bridge?

Mohsen : (1).. .

Adel : (2)..?

Mohsen : Yes, it's very long.

Adel : (3)..?

Mohsen : They started building it in 2016.

Adel : Do people walk across it?

Mohsen : (4).. .

Adel : Let's go and see it.

Mohsen : (5).. .

Life Skills

Remember that it is important to be polite when you give your opinion.

تذكر أنه يجب أن تكون مهذبًا عند التعبير عن رأيك.

Tick (✓) the polite ways of disagreeing with someone.

ضع علامة (✓) أمام الطرق المهذبة للاختلاف فى الرأى مع شخص ما.

1. ✓ I don't feel the same as you about that.
2. ☐ You are WRONG!
3. ☐ In my opinion, …
4. ☐ I'm sorry, but I don't have the same opinion.
5. ☐ What? No way!
6. ☐ I'm not sure about that.

Work in pairs. Give your opinion about something. Disagree politely.



What's the best book you can think of?

In my opinion, it's *Gulliver's Travels.*





2. Write it right



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب
من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about "The Tahya Masr Bridge" **كيفية الكتابة عن "كوبرى تحيا مصر"**

- Egypt is a great country.
- It has lots of great achievements. We should be proud of that.
- The Tahya Masr Bridge is the world's widest suspension bridge.
- More than (عدد الأشخاص) people helped to build it.
- They started building it in (سنة البدء).
- It opened in Cairo in (وقت الافتتاح).
- It is (العرض) metres wide. It's (الطول) metres long.
- It is one of the greatest projects in Egypt.

Writing tips

Use vocabulary that's relevant to the topic. You can brainstorm the vocabulary you will use before starting writing.

- استخدم المفردات التى تلائم الموضوع.
- يمكنك التفكير فى المفردات المناسبة قبل بدء الكتابة.

Example

To : jack@gmail.com
From : omar@student.com
Subject : The Tahya Masr Bridge

Dear Jack,

How are you? Egypt is a great country. It has lots of great achievements. We should be proud of that. One of the newest and greatest achievements is the Tahya Masr Bridge. It's the world's widest suspension bridge. More than 4,000 people helped to build it. They started building it in 2016. It opened in May 2019. It is 67.36 metres wide. It's 540 metres long. It crosses the Nile's Warraq Island. Many people enjoy walking across the glass floor of the bridge. The Tahya Masr Bridge is one of the greatest projects in Egypt.

Please, write soon.

Yours,

Omar

Check Point

Write an email on a famous bridge:

To : .... From: ....

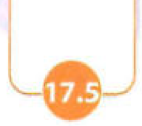
Subject : ....

....

....

....

....



17.5

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣

The world's widest suspension bridge (Tahya Masr Bridge) opened in Cairo in May 2019. It is 67.36 m wide and 540 m long. It's a great project. More than 4,000 people helped to build it. They **started** building it in 2016. They finished it in 32 months. The bridge crosses the Nile's Warraq Island. More than 100,000 people live on the island. Many people enjoy walking across the bridge. It has a glass floor, so you can see the river under your feet. The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage? ....
2. When did the bridge open? ....
3. Why do you think sunset is the best time to cross the bridge?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....

a) Cairo b) the Nile c) Tahya Masr Bridge d) Warraq Island

5. The bridge has a .... floor.

a) glass b) metal c) paper d) wool

6. The word "**started**" means ....

a) stopped b) began c) ended d) finished

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She is .... with her homework. She can't go out with us.

a) popular b) busy c) polite d) famous

2. It's .... to say "please" and "thank you".

a) wrong b) funny c) famous d) polite

3. The hotel room has a beautiful .... of the sea.

a) size b) view c) health d) price

4. When Sara got the full marks in English, she was .... of herself. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣

a) disappointed b) unhappy c) careless d) proud

5. I hope to .... my dreams. I want to be a famous doctor.

a) arrive b) achieve c) fail d) pass

6. Egypt is a great .... in Africa. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

a) town b) city c) capital d) country

7. I .... with your opinion. I have another one. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

a) dislike b) agree c) disagree d) think

8. The .... day at the market is Friday. WB

a) busy b) busiest c) busier d) as busy

9. I think Alexandria is the .... beautiful city in Egypt. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

a) most b) more c) much d) many

10. Some of the .... buildings in the world are also the most beautiful. WB

a) older than b) most old c) oldest d) older

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The Cairo Tower is the .... (tall) building in Egypt. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
2. The Red Sea is .... (deeper) sea in the world.
3. Al Ahly is .... (most) famous football team in Africa.
4. I think English is the .... (easier) language to learn.

4 Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words on a famous building in Egypt. Your name is Kamal and your email address is kamal@hotmail.com. Your friend's name is Ziad and his email address is ziad@student.com.

To : .... From: ....

Subject : ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. I think bikes are the .... (expensive) means of transport.
2. The Tahya Masr Bridge is the world's .... (the widest) suspension bridge.
3. He is .... (fastest), but his friends are faster than him.





Lessons 5 & 6



SB pages 19-21 | WB pages 81-83

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

car park (n)	موقف السيارات	display (ed) (v/n)	يعرض/عرض
century (n)	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	entrance (n)	مدخل
city centre (n)	وسط المدينة	guide book (n)	كتاب إرشادى
collection (n)	مجموعة	object (n)	شىء
column (n)	عمود	treasure (n)	كنز
competition (n)	منافسة/مسابقة	valuable (adj)	قيّم/ذو قيمة
design (ed) (v/n)	يصمم/تصميم	website review (n)	مقالة نقدية على موقع إنترنت

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

article (n)	مقال	main (adj)	رئيسى
covered (adj)	مُغَطى	motorbike (n)	دراجة نارية
fountain (n)	نافورة	space (n)	فضاء/مساحة فارغة
hard work (n)	عمل شاق	square (n)	ميدان/مربع
hieroglyphics (n)	اللغة الهيروغليفية	public (adj)	عام (للجميع)

Check Point

Choose and complete: main – competition – side – objects

1. There are many ancient .... in the museum.
2. Can you tell me the .... idea of the text?
3. He was the first in the writing ....

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

get	> busier	تصبح أكثر ازدحامًا	make	> notes	يدون ملاحظات
have	> a picnic	يقوم بنزهة	welcome	> visitors	يرحب بالزوار

Prepositions — حروف الجر

for the first time	لأول مرة	look after	يعتنى بـ
go into	يدخل	on display	معروض/فى العرض
later on	لاحقًا/فى وقت لاحق	similar to	مشابه لـ

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
ancient	قديم جدًا/أثرى	new/modern	جديد/حديث

Check Point

Choose and complete: welcome – after – on

1. We should .... our visitors warmly.
2. We should look .... the objects in the museum.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.



جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ

Definitions — التعريفات

deep	عميق	measuring water from the top to the bottom

Study these Places — قم بدراسة هذه الأماكن

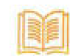
Al Azhar Park	حديقة الأزهر	the Karnak Temple	معبد الكرنك
the British Museum	المتحف البريطانى	the Rosetta Stone	حجر رشيد
the Great Court	القاعة الكبرى	the Valley of the Kings	وادى الملوك
the Hypostyle Hall	قاعة الأعمدة		

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
ancient	قديم جدًا/أثرى	very old	قديم جدًا

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
value (n) قيمة	-able	تحويل الاسم لصفة	valuable (adj) قيِّم/ذو قيمة



B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 5

Pre-reading question:

- Have you visited the Grand Egyptian Museum?

Read the text. What is the main idea of the article?

SB page 19

The Grand Egyptian Museum(1)

1) The oldest museum in Cairo opened in 1835. There were more than 160,000 of Egypt's most valuable treasures(2) on display(3). However, the museum did not have space(4) for 100,000 other objects. In 2002, there was a competition(5) to design a bigger and more modern museum. The competition had 1,557 designs from more than 80 different countries.

(1) المتحف المصرى الكبير
(2) كنوز قيمة
(3) العرض
(4) فراغ/مساحة
(5) منافسة/مسابقة
(6) زائرون
(7) أشياء قيمة
(8) مدخل
(9) تماثيل

2) The Grand Egyptian Museum **(GEM)** welcomed its first visitors(6) in 2019. It is farther from the city centre than the old museum, but only two kilometres from the Pyramids at Giza. It has more space for valuable objects(7), more people can see them and it is able to look after the objects really well.



3) One of the most beautiful parts of the museum is the entrance(8), with its big plants and statues(9). The biggest is that of Ramses II, which is 12-metres high.



4) Moving these objects from the old museum in Tahrir to complete the Grand Egyptian Museum is not easy.

It is expected to take many years of hard work.



Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

treasure /treʒəʳ/ competition /kɒmpətɪʃən/

Post-reading question:

- What is special about the Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM)?

Pre-reading question:

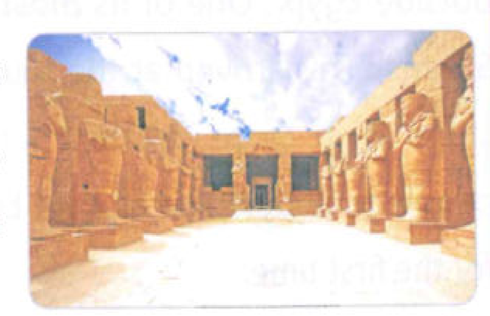
- In your opinion, what's the most interesting place in Egypt?

Read the text again and answer the questions. SB page 20

We had a wonderful holiday in Egypt. These are my opinions about three of the most interesting places.

وادى الملوك (1)	قاعة الأعمدة (4)
رائع (2)	متر مربع (5)
معبد الكرنك (3)	معبد هابو (6)

The Valley of the Kings(1) in Luxor is one of the most popular places for tourists to visit. We went early because that is the quietest time. My brother said, "This is fantastic(2)!" I am sure it gets busier later on during the day.



The biggest place we went to was the Karnak Temple(3). My favourite part was the Hypostyle Hall(4), a 5,000-square-metre(5) room with 134 stone columns. I think it was more crowded than the Valley of the Kings.



In my opinion, the best and quietest place we visited was Habu Temple(6). It has columns similar to those at Karnak, but because it is less crowded, you can study them for longer.





تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:

column /kɒləm/

Post-reading question:

- What do you think of Habu Temple?

Lesson 5

Complete the text with the superlative form of these adjectives. *WB page 81*

The British Museum

The British Museum[1] in London is the ***oldest*** public[2] museum in the world. It opened in 1759 and now has more than 13 million objects. About six million visitors go there every year.

The museum has the ***biggest*** collection[3] of Egyptian objects outside Egypt. One of its ***most important*** objects is the Rosetta Stone[4]. This arrived at the museum in 1802. The writing on the stone is in three different languages. This allowed people to understand ancient Egyptian hieroglyphics[5] for the first time.



In my opinion, the ***most beautiful*** part of the museum is the Great Court[6]. Its big glass room makes it the ***largest*** covered square in Europe. It opened in 2000, so it is also the ***most modern*** part of the museum.

(1) المتحف البريطانى
(2) عام
(3) مجموعة
(4) حجر رشيد
(5) اللغة الهيروغليفية
(6) القاعة الكبرى

Lesson 6

Circle the correct words and add any missing punctuation. *WB page 82*

Al Azhar Park is the largest and **most beautiful** park in Cairo. It is much **larger** than the small park near my house.



That park has a few trees and plants **and** I enjoy going there after school. You can spend an hour or two in that park, but you can spend a lot of time at Al Azhar Park. The trees there are **taller** and it has more plants. It also has fountains, a lake and cafés, too. I like going there **because** there is space for all our family to have a big picnic at the weekends! My sister always says, "I love it here".

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There is a science .... at school. I think Magdy will win. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
   a) competition b) expression c) collection d) invitation
2. The most beautiful part of the museum is the ...., with its plants and statues. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
   a) space b) entrance c) tunnel d) treasure
3. Let's read the .... about air pollution.
   a) video b) article c) film d) movie
4. The .... in the park is beautiful, but be careful of water falling off it.
   a) floor b) desert c) fountain d) playground
5. There are valuable .... in the Egyptian Museum. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
   a) treasures b) pupils c) mountains d) fountains
6. The .... character in the story is Robinson Crusoe.
   a) similar b) public c) covered d) main
7. A .... is a period of one hundred years. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) decade b) month c) week d) century
8. .... notes helps us remember important information.
   a) Staying b) Listening c) Doing d) Making
9. An architect is a person who .... buildings. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) designs b) flies c) writes d) builds
10. When tourists visit a country, they should have a .... of important places in it.
    a) novel b) story c) book d) guide book
11. My father bought me a wonderful .... of short stories.
    a) collection b) team c) column d) class
12. Let's .... our visitors with a smile.
    a) welcome b) hope c) show d) get
13. We can .... a picnic on the beach.
    a) do b) have c) give d) make
14. .... work is the way to achieve your goals.
    a) Easy b) Hard c) Busy d) Bad
15. "Modern" is the opposite of ....
    a) ancient b) new c) quiet d) noisy
16. The Valley of the Kings is one of the most .... places for tourists to visit.
    a) popular b) modern c) public d) weak

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Farida meets an English tourist in Cairo. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣

Farida : Welcome to Egypt. Where are you from?

Tourist : (1).. .

Farida : (2)..?

Tourist : No, I visited Egypt before.

Farida : (3)..?

Tourist : I visited the Pyramids and the Grand Egyptian Museum.

Farida : Great. How long will you stay in Egypt?

Tourist : (4).. .

Farida : (5).. .

Tourist : Great idea! I will visit Luxor, too.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There are many .... objects in the museum. الأقصر ٢٠٢٣
   a) excited b) valuable c) cheap d) ugly
2. Let's go for a ride on the ....
   a) sea b) car c) motorbike d) plan
3. Can you tell me where the car .... is?
   a) garden b) club c) zoo d) park
4. Do you know what year the 21st .... started?
   a) century b) country c) side d) space
5. I won the first prize in the science ....
   a) treasure b) article c) competition d) notes
6. Museums have usually ancient ....
   a) websites b) objects c) subjects d) posts
7. There are many beautiful clothes on .... at this shop.
   a) reply b) replay c) display d) play

8. Old cars are .... than modern cars. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣

a) noisier b) noisy c) noisiest d) as noisy

9. This is .... crowded time of the day.

a) the more b) more c) most d) the most

10. Cairo is .... city in Egypt. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣

a) big b) bigger c) biggest d) the biggest

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Aswan is .... (hottest) than Cairo. الجيزة ٢٠٢٢
2. .... (What) wide is the Tahya Masr Bridge? القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
3. In my opinion, the .... (better) and quietest place we visited was the Habu Temple. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢
4. .... (Who) animal is faster, the lion or the tiger?

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"The Grand Egyptian Museum"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1. The competition had 1,557 .... from more than 80 different countries.

a) designed b) design c) designs d) designing

2. The .... stadium is good in rainy weather.

a) covered b) large c) busy d) uncovered

3. He is .... man among us.

a) brave b) bravest c) braver d) the bravest

Review on Unit 8

Vocabulary

achievement	إنجاز
across	عبر
amazing	مذهل/مدهش
bridge	جسر/كوبرى
kilometre (km)	كيلومتر
car park	موقف السيارات
century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)
motorbike	دراجة نارية
city	مدينة كبيرة
city centre	وسط المدينة
protect (ed)	يحمى
suspension	معلق
the Grand Egyptian Museum entrance	مدخل المتحف المصرى الكبير
glass floor	أرضية زجاجية
tower	برج
valuable	قيِّم/ذو قيمة
statue	تمثال
competition	منافسة/مسابقة
treasure	كنز
tunnel	نفق

Language

1. Comparative of adjectives:

A: Short adjectives:

صفة قصيرة + er + than

- Planes are faster than trains.

B: Long adjectives:

more/less + صفة طويلة + than

- The lion is more dangerous than the dog.

C: Which is (adj. + er) / (more/less + adj.), ... or ...?

- Which is more dangerous, a lion or a fox?

2. Superlative of adjectives:

A: Short adjectives:

the + صفة قصيرة + est

- Ali is the tallest boy in our class.

B: Long adjectives:

the most/the least + صفة طويلة

- This is the least popular book in the library.

3. Common Exceptions استثناءات شائعة

- good – better than – the best
- bad – worse than – the worst
- far – farther than – the farthest

Skills

1. Asking and answering about measurements:

- How long is the Cairo-Alexandria desert road?
  - It is 220 kilometres long.
- How deep is Lake Baikal in Russia?
  - It is 1,642 metres deep.
- How high is Abraj Al-Bait Clock Tower in Saudi Arabia?
  - It's 601 metres high.
- How old is the Luxor Temple?
  - It's just under 3,500 years old.

2. Asking about and giving opinion:

- What's your opinion of the Tahya Masr Bridge?
- I think the Tahya Masr Bridge is one of the greatest projects in Egypt.





Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 8



A Listening



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: الغربية ٢٠٢٢

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. The oldest museum in Cairo opened in ....
   a) 1835 b) 1853
   c) 1385 d) 1583
2. There were a lot of .... there.
   a) trees b) treasures
   c) trucks d) entrances
3. It didn't have .... for more objects.
   a) science b) skies
   c) rooms d) space
4. It was a .... museum.
   a) bad b) terrible
   c) wonderful d) careless

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue: دمياط ٢٠٢٢

Omar asks Ali some questions for his school project.

Omar : Can I ask you some questions for my school project?
Ali : (1).. .
Omar : (2)..?
Ali : The Great Pyramid is 146 m high.
Omar : What is the longest river in the world?
Ali : (3).. .
Omar : (4)..?
Ali : Lake Baikal is in Russia.
Omar : Good! I think you are very clever.
Ali : (5).. .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: دمياط ٢٠٢٣

Cairo is a big city. It is the capital of Egypt. More than ten million people live here. There are a lot of gardens where families can go and spend a nice time. There are also a lot of restaurants where you can have delicious meals and **different** dishes. It is always visited by tourists from all over the world. They enjoy visiting ancient places. They visit the Egyptian Museum to see the ancient treasures and statues. They also visit the Cairo Tower, where they can have a look on the whole city.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

....

2. Why do you think Cairo is a crowded city?

....

3. Where can tourists have a look on the city of Cairo?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. "**Different**" is opposite in meaning to ....
   a) variety b) same c) crowded d) busy
5. Tourists visit the Egyptian Museum to see the ancient ....
   a) schools b) hospitals
   c) treasures and statues d) restaurants
6. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to ....
   a) places b) tourists c) gardens d) meals

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. " ...." means measuring water from the top to the bottom. بني سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) High b) Deep c) Wide d) Long
2. We will take lots of time because the .... is very slow.
   a) column b) traffic lights c) space d) traffic
3. Can you give me some examples .... famous sports stars?
   a) of b) at c) in d) off
4. The .... looked beautiful over the river. It's nice to see the sun sink in water.
   a) sunrise b) sunset c) moon d) cloud

5. The football player became .... after scoring an amazing goal.
   a) unknown   b) funny   c) polite   d) famous
6. The building has many .... on the front.
   a) columns   b) bridges   c) lakes   d) seas
7. The .... of Bangkok is more than 10 million.
   a) presentation   b) production   c) population   d) pollution
8. Ice skating is .... skiing.
   a) safest   b) the safest   c) safer than   d) safer
9. What do you think is .... dangerous animal in the world?
   a) the most   b) the more   c) most   d) more
10. Adel is tall, but Rami is ....   بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) taller than   b) tallest   c) more tall   d) taller

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Where is the .... (near) pharmacy?
2. Sorry, 8 o'clock is very late. Can we meet a bit .... (early)?
3. Who is .... (the powerful) person in your country?
4. Cairo is .... (most) crowded than Giza.   بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A famous place you visited in Egypt"   المنوفية ٢٠٢٣

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Solve more exams	Well done!

Monthly Models on Units 7&8





هذه النماذج ستساعدك فى التدرب على الاختبارات الشهرية.

February Model 1 on Unit 7

1 Complete the following dialogue: (5)

Basmala wants to visit the Egyptian Museum.

Basmala : Hello, Habiba! How are you?

Habiba : (1).. . What about you?

Basmala : Fine! I decided to visit the Egyptian Museum. Did you visit it?

Habiba : (2).. . I went there on a school trip.

Basmala : (3)..?

Habiba : I visited it because I like historical places.

Basmala : (4)..?

Habiba : I saw there many statues.

Basmala : Great! Did you enjoy your visit?

Habiba : (5).. . It was a wonderful visit.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (6)

1. I like playing football, so I asked my father to join a/an ....
   a) funfair b) aquarium c) sports centre d) planetarium
2. Yesterday, my family .... to our new house in Alexandria.
   a) had b) stayed c) visited d) moved
3. Most students are usually .... just before exams.
   a) scary b) nervous c) tiring d) ugly
4. What did you do .... Sara's birthday?
   a) at b) on c) in d) of
5. It was terrible .... my team lost 5–2. SB
   a) although b) because c) so d) but
6. When did Dina's family .... the restaurant?
   a) visiting b) visits c) visited d) visit

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: (4)

1. .... (Do) you got a new school bag?
2. She went to school .... (because) she felt ill.
3. **A:** When did you visit the museum? **B:** Two days .... (last).
4. How .... (did) your last weekend?

February Model 2 on Unit 8

15

1 Complete the following dialogue:

5

Tassneem and Marwa are taking about using mobiles in the school.

Tassneem : Did you hear about our school's plan to stop using mobiles in the school?

Marwa : (1).. . The teacher told us.

Tassneem : (2)..?

Marwa : Well, I think that's better for us.

Tassneem : (3)..?

Marwa : I think so because mobiles cause so much trouble in the class.

Tassneem : (4).. . They're also bad for our health.

Marwa : Sure. I think they cause serious diseases.

Tassneem : (5)... . I think they don't cause serious diseases.

Marwa : In my opinion, we shouldn't use mobiles at school.

2 Read Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

6

1. How .... is the car park? It's two metres under the ground.
   a) deep b) long c) old d) wide
2. Mona's school is .... However, she goes on foot.
   a) near b) far c) old d) high
3. We should look .... our historical places.
   a) out b) at c) after d) like
4. Many people enjoy the beautiful .... of the Nile.
   a) opinion b) view c) show d) cave
5. February is .... month of the year.
   a) shortest b) short c) most short d) the shortest
6. **A:** What's .... river in the world? **B:** The Nile.
   a) the longest b) the longer c) longest d) longer

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

4

1. My room is .... (nice) than your room.
2. The weather this summer is even .... (bad) than last summer.
3. We bought .... (most expensive) house in the city.
4. Dina is the .... (clever) girl in class.



Unit 9

Adventure!

Objectives of the unit

Reading Holiday plans; a postcard; Around the World in 80 Days

Writing A paragraph about an adventure sport; an email planning a trip

Listening Discussing adventure sports; a game; a presentation about a trip to the desert; a conversation about choosing activities

Speaking Discussing activities and travel plans; describing the weather

Language *going* to for plans; reflexive pronouns

Life Skills Negotiating; communication; self-management; respect the opinions of others

Tapescript

WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب

STUDY  Lessons 1 & 2

Watch a video



SB pages 22-25 | WB pages 84 & 85



A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Adventure Sports رياضات المغامرة			
Water sports رياضات مائية		**Mountain sports** رياضات الجبال	
diving (n)	الغطس/الغوص	rock climbing (n)	تسلق الصخور
kayaking (n)	التجديف	mountain climbing (n)	تسلق الجبال
sailing (n)	الإبحار	trekking (n)	الارتحال/التجوال
windsurfing (n)	ركوب الأمواج	mountain biking (n)	ركوب الدراجات فى الجبل
		zip lining (n)	الانزلاق بالحبل

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

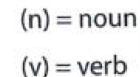
a bit	قليلًا	future (n)	مستقبل
Bedouin (n/adj)	بدوى/بدو	guide (n)	مرشد/دليل
carefully (adv)	بحرص	scary (adj)	مخيف
carry (y-ied) (v)	يحمل	skill (n)	مهارة
date (n)	تاريخ (اليوم)	tent (n)	خيمة
equipment (n)	معدات	try (y-ied) (v)	يجرب/يحاول
experience (n)	خبرة/تجربة حياتية	turn (n)	دور
fun (n)	مرح/متعة	webpage (n)	صفحة على الإنترنت

Check Point

Choose and complete: equipment - plan - diving - windsurfing

1. You can't try .... when there is no wind.
2. You should have the right .... before you go mountain climbing.
3. You can see what's in the deep sea when you go ....

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.



(n) = noun | (adj) = adjective | (prep) = preposition
(v) = verb | (adv) = adverb | (conj) = conjunction

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

Language Expressions

التعبيرات اللغوية

do	> something	يفعل شيئًا ما	have	> a guide	يحصل على مرشد/دليل
find	> the way	يجد الطريق	take	> 43 days	يستغرق ٤٣ يومًا

Prepositions

حروف الجر

listen to	يستمع إلى	through mountains	عبر/خلال الجبال
down the Nile	فى/عبر النيل	arrive at	يصل إلى
go on a boat trip	يذهب فى رحلة بالقارب	need to	يحتاج أن
go on holiday	يذهب فى إجازة	stay with	يبقى/يقيم مع
a plan for	خطة لـ	try to + inf.	يحاول أن

Check Point

Choose and complete: for - on - take - find

1. I have some plans .... our weekend.
2. They took a map to help them .... their way through the desert.
3. We enjoyed our weekend. We went .... a boat trip.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.
ride	يركب	rode	ridden
sleep	ينام	slept	slept
win	يفوز/يكسب	won	won
find	يجد	found	found

Words and Opposites

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
usual	عادى	unusual	غيرعادى
quiet	هادئ	noisy	مزعج
fun	ممتع	boring	ممل

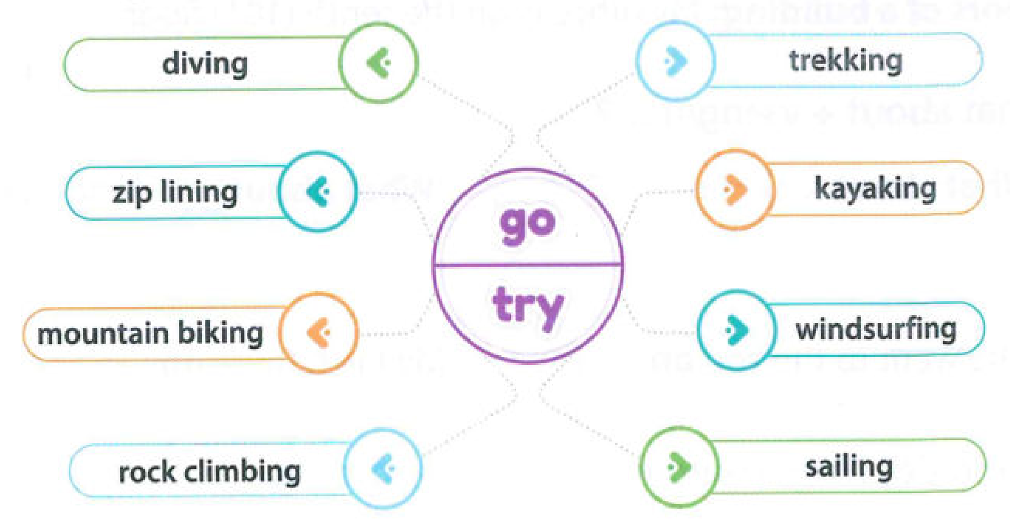
Language Notes



ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 go/try + (v + ing)

تُستخدم (go/try) مع الأنشطة الرياضية التى تنتهى بـ (ing).



- Hany went/tried **diving** last year.
- Imad would like to go/try **zip lining**.

2 arrive at + (مدرسة/بيت/مكتب/مطار)

يصل إلى مكان محدد تمامًا

arrive in + بلد/ مدينة

يصل إلى مكان غير محدد

- He arrives at school on time.
- He arrived in Cairo last night.

3 Ordinal numbers

الأعداد الترتيبية

- We add a (th) to the end of a cardinal number to make it an ordinal number except for the spelling exceptions:

عند تحويل رقم عادى لعدد ترتيبى يتم عادة إضافة (th) فى نهاية الرقم فيما عدا بعض الأرقام بسبب نهاياتها:

1st	first	11th	eleventh	21st	twenty-first
2nd	second	12th	twelfth	22nd	twenty-second
3rd	third	13th	thirteenth	23rd	twenty-third
4th	fourth	14th	fourteenth	24th	twenty-fourth
5th	fifth	15th	fifteenth	25th	twenty-fifth
6th	sixth	16th	sixteenth	26th	twenty-sixth
7th	seventh	17th	seventeenth	27th	twenty-seventh
8th	eighth	18th	eighteenth	28th	twenty-eighth
9th	ninth	19th	nineteenth	29th	twenty-ninth
10th	tenth	20th	twentieth	30th	thirtieth

Uses of ordinal numbers: استخدام الأعداد الترتيبية:

Dates: Her birthday is on the 29th. التواريخ

Centuries: We're in the 21st century. القرون

Sequence/Order: My team came second (2nd) in the Egyptian league. الترتيب

Floors of a building: My office is on the tenth (10th) floor. طوابق المبانى

4 What about + v+ing/n ...? وماذا عن ...؟

- **What about** rock climbing?
- **What about** watching TV?

5 on + يوم/تاريخ فى...

- She went to the zoo **on** Friday.
- My birthday is **on** October 11th.

6 would ('d) like/ would love / need + to + inf. يود أن/ يحب أن/ يحتاج أن

- **I'd like to** have my lunch now.
- He's tired. He **needs to** have a rest.

7 an experience / experiences موقف وتجربة (فى الحياة) (اسم يُعد)
experience خبرة (فى عمل) (اسم لا يُعد)

- My uncle has many experiences because he travels to many countries.
- My uncle has much experience. He works for about thirty years.

8 Important Places أماكن هامة

Dahab	مدينة دهب	Serabit el Khadem	سرابيط الخادم
Ein Kidd	واحة عين كيد	St Catherine	سانت كاترين
Mount Catherine	جبل سانت كاترين	the Red Sea	البحر الأحمر
Ras Shetan	رأس شيطان		

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I usually arrive .... my office before everyone.

a) in b) at c) to d) on

2 My birthday is on the .... of February.

a) twenty b) twentieth c) two d) twelve

3 What about .... a few days off?

a) to take b) take c) taking d) to taking






Definitions التعريفات

adventure	مغامرة	an exciting experience when something unusual or dangerous happens
guide	مرشد	a person who shows a place to tourists
journey	رحلة	a long trip from one place to another
tent	خيمة	something you sleep in when you go camping

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
scary	مخيف	frightening	مخيف
unusual	غير عادى	strange	غريب

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
careful (adj)	حريص	-ly	تحويل الصفة إلى حال	carefully (adv)	بحرص
equip (v)	يجهز	-ment	تحويل الفعل لاسم	equipment (n)	معدات

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
un-	تعطى عكس المعنى	usual (adj)	عادى	unusual (adj)	غير عادى



هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

Similar spelling - Different meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
diving	الغطس/الغوص	driving	القيادة
fun	مرح/متعة	fan	معجب/مشجع

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening question:

- What kind of adventure sports do you like?

Lesson 1

Listen to Hassan and Imad. Which of the quiz activities do they talk about?

SB page 23

Imad What are you looking at, Hassan?

Hassan Hi Imad. It's an article[1] about adventure[2] sports in Egypt.

Imad Oh yes! Last year, I went diving[3] in the Red Sea. It was amazing!

Hassan I'd love to do that. I'd like to try windsurfing[4], too.

Imad What about rock climbing[5]?

Hassan I don't know. I think rock climbing is a bit dangerous, but I like trekking[6] in the mountains.

Imad Me, too! I like the mountains. I'm going to visit Sinai with my family in the holidays.

Hassan Are you going to try mountain biking[7], Imad?

Imad No, I'm not going to do anything scary. It is very difficult to ride a bike in the mountains.

Hassan I think you're right. Zip lining[8] looks scary, too.

Imad I think it looks fun! I'm going to try it one day!

Hassan Really? No way!

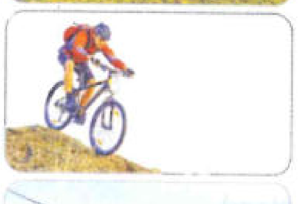


(1) مقال
(2) مغامرة
(3) الغوص
(4) ركوب الأمواج
(5) تسلق الصخور
(6) الترحال/التجوال
(7) ركوب الدراجات فى الجبال
(8) الانزلاق بالحبل











Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

adventure /ædventʃəʳ/
windsurfing /wɪndsɜːʳfɪŋ/

Post-listening question:

- What does Imad think about zip lining?

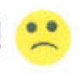
Pre-reading question: - What kind of sports can't you try? Why?

Lesson 1

Read the email and answer the questions.

SB page 23

Hi Eman!

I'm in Dahab with my family.  There's so much to do here! This afternoon, we're going to go trekking(1) in the mountains. I'm not going to try rock climbing(2). It's too scary(3)!

Tomorrow, we're going to try windsurfing(4) in the morning and in the afternoon, we're going to go diving!

We're not going to go kayaking(5). There is no time!

Love, Reem

(1) الارتحال/التجوال
(2) تسلق الصخور
(3) مخيف
(4) ركوب الأمواج
(5) التجديف

 **Note:**

kayaking /ˈkaɪækɪŋ/ تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:

Post-reading question: - Is Reem going to go kayaking? Why?

Pre-listening question: - Is rock climbing a dangerous sport?

Lesson 1

Listen to Mustafa and Hazem playing a game. Which bags do they choose?

SB page 23

Mustafa	I'm going to go to the mountains.
Hazem	OK. Are you going to go trekking?
Mustafa	No, I'm not.
Hazem	Are you going to go rock climbing?
Mustafa	Yes, I am!
Hazem	Your bag is … **D.**
Mustafa	That's right.
Hazem	My turn. I'm going to the beach.
Mustafa	Are you going to go kayaking?
Hazem	No, I'm not.
Mustafa	Are you going to go diving?
Hazem	Yes, I am.
Mustafa	Your bag is … **B.**

A  B 

C  D 

E  F 

Post-listening question: - What do you think you will need when you go kayaking?

Lesson 2

Pre-reading question: - What's Ras Shetan?

Read Ahmed's plans. When is he going to climb Mount Catherine and what do you think a tent is?

SB page 24

My Trekking Adventure[1]

By Ahmed

Next year, I'm going to go trekking across Sinai. It's going to be a big adventure! I'm going to travel nearly 500 kilometres through mountains from Ras Shetan[2] to Serabit el Khadem[3]. I'm going to sleep in a tent[4] and stay with Bedouin[5] families. I'm going to have a guide to help me find the way and a camel to carry food and water. The journey[6] is going to take me 43 days.

(1) مغامرة
(2) رأس شيطان
(3) سرابيط الخادم
(4) خيمة
(5) بدوية
(6) رحلة
(7) واحة عين كيد
(8) جبل سانت كاترين

Here's my plan:

- **3rd** March leave Ras Shetan
- **14th** March arrive at Ein Kidd[7]
- **30th** March arrive at St Catherine
- **1st** April climb Mount Catherine[8]
- **15th** April arrive at Serabit El Khadem



Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:

Bedouin /beduɪn/



Post-reading question:

- What is Ahmed going to do on 30th March?

Lesson 2



Listen to Mariam talking about her plan. Complete her notes.

SB page 25

Mariam Next year, I'm going to go sailing down the Nile with my family. We're going to travel from Aswan to Luxor. We're going to leave Aswan on 28th December. We're going to arrive in Luxor on 4th January.



الإبحار

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲Remembering ▲Understanding ▲Applying ▲Analysing ▲Evaluating ▲Creating

Practise more



▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

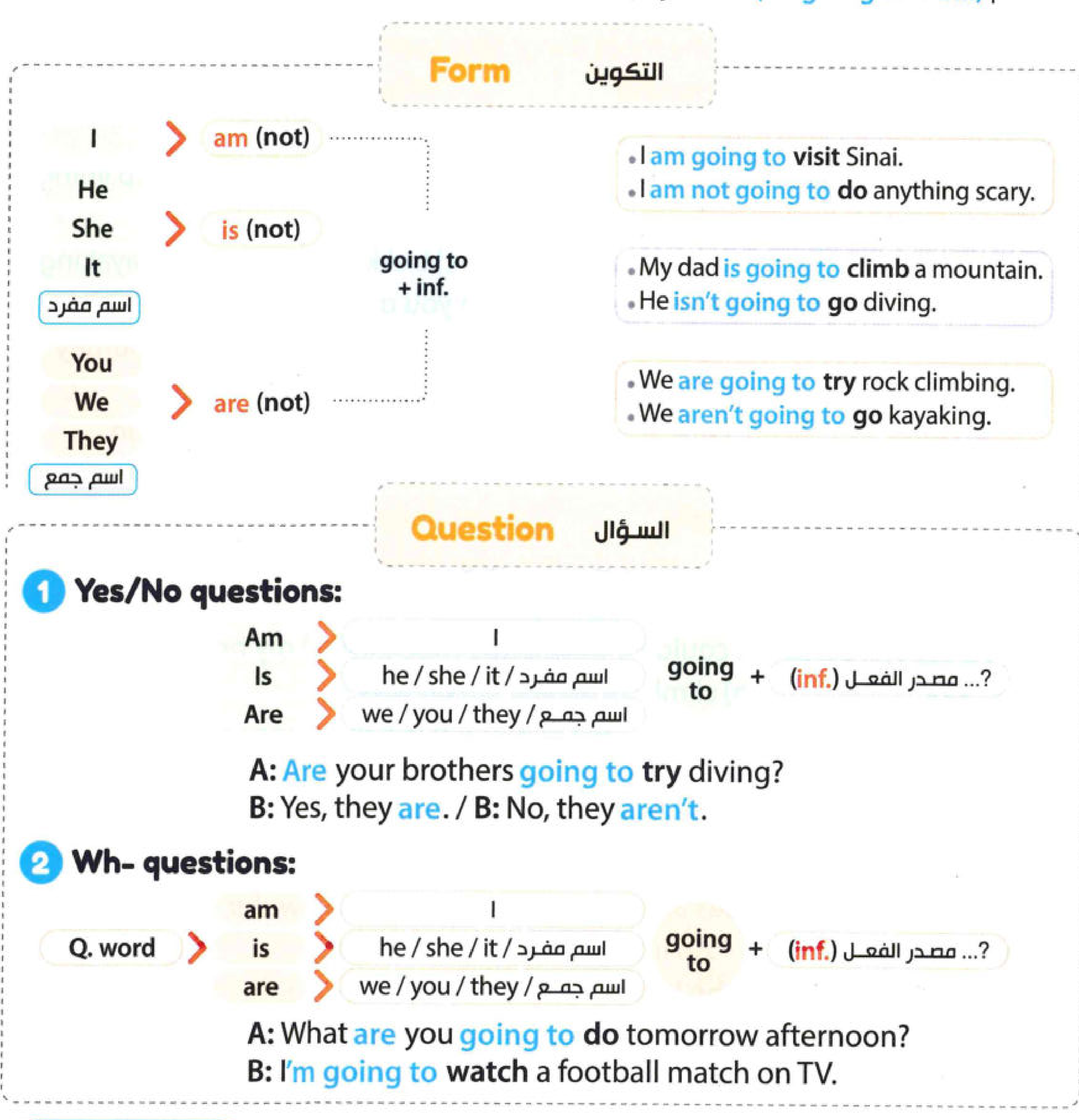
1. .... is a kind of water sports. الأقصر ٢٠٢٣
   a) Trekking b) Mountain biking c) Sailing d) Zip lining
2. Rock .... is one of the most dangerous sports. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
   a) climbing b) forming c) riding d) diving
3. Some people like to go .... in the mountains. قنا ٢٠٢٣
   a) sailing b) diving c) trekking d) zip lining
4. Players use boats when they go .... المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) running b) climbing c) trekking d) kayaking
5. A .... is something you sleep in when you go camping. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) camel b) guide c) tent d) journey
6. I'm not going to try wind surfing. It looks .... القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) exciting b) scary c) great d) fun
7. The journey is going to .... 43 days. SB
   a) try b) talk c) take d) go
8. You should plan .... your dreams to achieve them.
   a) for b) of c) at d) on
9. My bags were heavy. I couldn't .... them, so I asked my brother to help me.
   a) carry b) climb c) cross d) buy
10. Some tourists need a .... to show them the most important places.
    a) guide b) teacher c) waiter d) dentist
11. My son is good at using the internet. He can design ....
    a) books b) stories c) webpages d) nets
12. I love .... because I am good at swimming under water. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
    a) trekking b) zip lining c) running d) diving
13. .... are people who live in the desert.
    a) Guides b) Bedouins c) Skills d) Sailors
14. Using maps can help you to .... your way easily.
    a) lose b) find c) give d) do
15. .... new things can help you learn and grow.
    a) Trying b) Carrying c) Climbing d) Riding
16. My friend likes to go windsurfing, trekking and mountain climbing. He likes .... sports.
    a) water b) mountain c) safe d) lazy

C Language

"(be) going to" for future plans استخدام "(be) going to" للخطط المستقبلية

- We use *(be) going to* when we already know our plans for the future.

نستخدم (be going to + inf.) عندما نعرف بالفعل خططنا للمستقبل.



Form التكوين

Subject	be	
I	am (not)	going to + inf.
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	is (not)	going to + inf.
You / We / They / اسم جمع	are (not)	going to + inf.

- I am going to visit Sinai.
- I am not going to do anything scary.
- My dad is going to climb a mountain.
- He isn't going to go diving.
- We are going to try rock climbing.
- We aren't going to go kayaking.

Question السؤال

1 Yes/No questions:

Am	I	going to	+	(inf.) مصدر الفعل ...?
Is	he / she / it / اسم مفرد			
Are	we / you / they / اسم جمع			

A: Are your brothers going to try diving?
B: Yes, they are. / B: No, they aren't.

2 Wh- questions:

Q. word	am	I	going to	+	(inf.) مصدر الفعل ...?
	is	he / she / it / اسم مفرد			
	are	we / you / they / اسم جمع			

A: What are you going to do tomorrow afternoon?
B: I'm going to watch a football match on TV.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My uncle is going .... (buy) a birthday present for my sister.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (to buy) لوجود is going التى يأتى بعدها to ثم المصدر.

2. Where .... (you are) going to spend your weekend?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (are you) لأنها صيغة سؤال.

PRACTICE **Language Exercises**

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I .... to visit my mother in Aswan next month. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) can b) going to c) will d) 'm going
2. He is not going .... video games all day.
   a) to play b) to playing c) play d) playing
3. What is Noha .... to do tomorrow? الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) go b) to go c) going d) goes
4. .... going to travel home by bus after school? WB
   a) You are b) Are you c) Do you d) You do
5. What are you going to .... tomorrow? WB
   a) wearing b) worn c) wore d) wear
6. How long .... you going to stay in Egypt? الغربية ٢٠٢٣
   a) do b) are c) can d) have
7. I .... going to visit the Pyramids as I visited them before. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) am b) are c) is d) am not
8. He is not going to .... late for his meeting. It's important.
   a) am b) is c) are d) be
9. Look at those clouds, it .... الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) rain b) is raining
   c) is going to rain d) rains
10. I .... miss my next music lesson on Wednesday. It's very important.
    a) am going b) am not going
    c) am going to d) am not going to

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She is going to .... (buys) a new washing machine next week. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
2. Where .... (they are) going to go camping this summer?
3. I .... (do) not going to stay up late on a school night.
4. I'm going .... (visit) Sinai. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
5. My brothers are going to .... (staying) at home next Friday. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
6. .... (Will) Wael going to visit his relatives? القليوبية ٢٠٢٣



Write it right



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب
من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about an adventure sport

كيفية الكتابة عن رياضة مغامرات

- I like adventure sports.
- There are lots of adventure sports like (اسم الرياضات).
- My favourite adventure sport is (اسم الرياضة).
- In this sport, I (ما تقوم به).
- I practise it in (المكان).
- I usually practise it with (الشخص).
- It makes me feel happy.

Writing tips

You can use these linking words:
يمكنك استخدام الروابط التالية:
then, now, but, although

Example

An adventure sport

I like adventure sports. There are lots of adventure sports like, rock climbing, windsurfing and zip lining. I like mountain biking. I started practising it many years ago when my father bought me my first bike. Today, I am going to go mountain biking with my friend. So, I get dressed and phone my best friend. He is the person who I go mountain biking with. We go to a forest with mountains. After my friend arrives at my house, we make sure that all of the equipment is safe on the bike. With water bottles filled and bikes ready to go, we are off. Really, this kind of adventure makes us feel happy.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"Your favourite sport"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

TEST YOURSELF



Unit 9 Lessons (1 & 2)



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. I'm going to travel with my .... الأقصر ٢٠٢٣
   a) family b) teachers c) friends d) uncles
2. We are going to travel from .... to Luxor.
   a) Assuit b) Aswan c) Cairo d) Giza
3. We are going to .... in Luxor in January.
   a) leave b) live c) arrive d) stay
4. We are going to leave Aswan in ....
   a) November b) December c) September d) April

2 Complete the following dialogue: القليوبية ٢٠٢٣

Emad and Hassan are talking about sports.

Emad : Do you like sports, Hassan?
Hassan : (1).. .
Emad : (2)..?
Hassan : I like football and swimming.
Emad : Do you like adventure sports?
Hassan : (3).. .
Emad : (4)..?
Hassan : Yes, they are fun.
Emad : How about going kayaking next week?
Hassan : (5).. .

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... sports can be dangerous if you don't know how to swim.
   a) Air b) Team c) Mountain d) Water
2. Rock climbing is very .... I'm afraid to do it. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) scary b) bored c) interesting d) exciting
3. You start really high, but you finish on the ground very fast in .... سوهاج ٢٠٢٢
   a) zip lining b) trekking c) driving d) swimming
4. Most shops have a .... on the internet.
   a) tent b) webpage c) turn d) plan
5. It .... many years to learn a language well.
   a) takes b) gives c) has d) gets

6. Is she going to .... rock climbing this afternoon? قنا ٢٠٢٣

a) do b) play c) try d) build

7. You need special .... to go diving.

a) tents b) cars c) planes d) equipment

8. I'm .... to buy that phone. It's too expensive. الغربية ٢٠٢٢

a) going b) not going c) go d) not go

9. What are you .... do next Saturday? الشرقية ٢٠٢٣

a) going to b) going c) go d) go to

10. We are going .... a pizza for dinner tonight.

a) to make b) to making c) make d) making

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. He is going .... (build) a new house next year. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
2. .... (Maria is) going to join the school trip?
3. .... (Do) you going to travel home by bus? أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
4. They are going .... (tried) mountain biking tomorrow. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your favourite sport" بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب.

1 It's important to make time for .... in your life to feel happy.

a) fan b) fun c) funny d) fine

2 .... people live in a hard desert life.

a) Friendly b) Young c) Shy d) Bedouin

3 What do you think .... going to do next weekend?

a) he is b) is he c) he will d) will he




Watch a video

Lessons 3 & 4



SB pages 26-28 | WB pages 86 & 87

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

challenge (n)	تحدٍّ	railway line (n)	خط سكة حديد
character (n)	شخصية	return (ed) (v)	يعود/يرجع
dentist (n)	طبيب أسنان	support (ed) (v)	يساند/يدعم
dry (y ied) (v) (with)	يجف/يجفف (بـ)	towel (n)	فوطة/ منشفة
postcard (n)	بطاقة بريدية	transport (n)	مواصلات

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

above (adv/prep)	فوق	French (n)	اللغة الفرنسية
check (ed) (v)	يفحص/يراجع	mirror (n)	مرآة
eagle (n)	نسر	presentation (n)	عرض تقديمى
excited (adj)	متحمس	trek (ked) (v)	يترحل
foggy (adj)	ضبابى	weather (n)	طقس

Check Point

Choose and complete: mirror - dentist - transport - lines

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

1. There are many railway .... in our city.
2. Girls like to look in the .... for long when they get dressed.
3. His teeth hurt, so he should go to a ....

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

complete	a challenge	يكمل تحديًا	make	a mistake	يرتكب خطأ
get	dressed	يرتدى ملابسه		salad/ tea	يعد سلطة/ شاى
give	an idea for	يعطى فكرة لـ	take	a challenge	يأخذ تحديًا
keep	warm	يبقى دافئًا		a photo of	يلتقط صورة لـ

Prepositions

حروف الجر

at the start of	فى بداية	on time	فى الوقت المحدد
come out of	يأتى/يخرج من	protect from	يحمى من
go out	يخرج	ride on a camel	يركب جملًا
on the way down	فى الطريق لأسفل	sit by the fire	يجلس بجانب النار

Check Point

Choose and complete: from - on - get - keep

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

1. Students should come to school .... time.
2. We wear heavy clothes in winter to .... warm.
3. Sunglasses protect us .... the hot sun.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.
give	يعطى	gave	given
write	يكتب	wrote	written
put on	يرتدى	put on	put on
keep	يحْفظ	kept	kept

Language Notes



ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 sound + adj.

يبدو

- The maths homework sounds **easy** today.

2 Adjectives ending with "y".

بعض الكلمات الخاصة بالطقس نضيف إليها "y" لتحويلها إلى صفة.

storm	عاصفة	stormy	عاصف	cloud	سحابة	cloudy	غائم
wind	رياح	windy	كثير الرياح	fog	ضباب	foggy	ضبابى
sun	شمس	sunny	مشمس	rain	مطر	rainy	ممطر
				snow	ثلج	snowy	ثلجى

- There are a lot of clouds. It's cloudy.
- It's sunny. It's going to be very hot.

3 in + وقت — فى غضون

(in 80 days - in three years - in two days)

4 Important Places — أماكن هامة

Hong Kong	هونج كونج	New York	نيويورك
India	الهند	San Francisco	سان فرانسيسكو
Japan	اليابان	South Africa	جنوب إفريقيا
London	لندن	Suez	السويس
Mumbai	مومباى	the USA	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية





جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms — الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
frightened	خائف	afraid	خائف

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
frighten (v)	يخيف	-ed	تحويل الفعل إلى صفة	frightened (adj)	خائف
write (v)	يكتب	-er	تحويل الفعل لاسم فاعل	writer (n)	كاتب

Similar spelling - Different meaning

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
dry	يجف/يجفف	try	يجرب/يحاول
hurt	يصيب/يجرح/يؤذى	heart	قلب

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I can't drive because it's ....
a) sun b) rain c) foggy d) fog

2 It .... difficult to learn French.
a) sounds b) voices c) feels d) tastes

3 She feels frightened of dogs. She is .... of them.
a) brave b) afraid c) happy d) lazy

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 3

Pre-reading question: - Do you like adventures? Why?

Read the postcard[1]. Which activity are they going to do tomorrow? *SB page 26*

Dear Grandma,

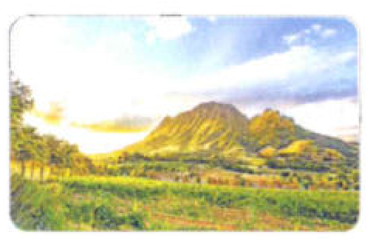
We're really enjoying ourselves on holiday in South Africa[2]! It's beautiful here and there's a lot to do.

Yesterday was an adventure. We went trekking[3] in the mountains. It was sunny when we started, but when we got to the top of the mountain, we saw dark clouds[4]. On the way down, the rain started! Then there was a storm[5].

The rocks[6] were wet and Tamer fell over and hurt himself. But it's OK — his leg is better today.

Tomorrow, the weather is going to be better, so we're going to try zip lining[7]! I'm a bit frightened, but I'm excited, too.

See you soon, Dalia



(1) بطاقة بريدية
(2) جنوب إفريقيا
(3) الترحال
(4) سحب
(5) عاصفة
(6) صخور
(7) الانزلاق بالحبل

Post-reading question: - What happened to Tamer?

Lesson 3

Pre-listening question: - What's the weather like today?

Listen to the descriptions a-d. Which one describes the photo in Exercise 1? *SB page 26*

A It's very sunny[1] and there aren't any clouds in the sky. I think it's a very hot day.

B There are lots of clouds and they're very dark. I think that there's going to be a storm.

C It's a sunny day, but there are some clouds in the sky above the mountain.
I think it's quite hot[2].

D It's very foggy[3]. I think it's raining.
It looks cold[4] and wet[5].



(1) مشمس
(2) حار
(3) ضبابى
(4) بارد
(5) مبلل



Note:
تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:
foggy /fɒgi/
mountain /maʊntɪn/

Post-listening question: - How's the weather in winter?

Pre-listening question:

- What activities can we do at the desert?

SB page 27

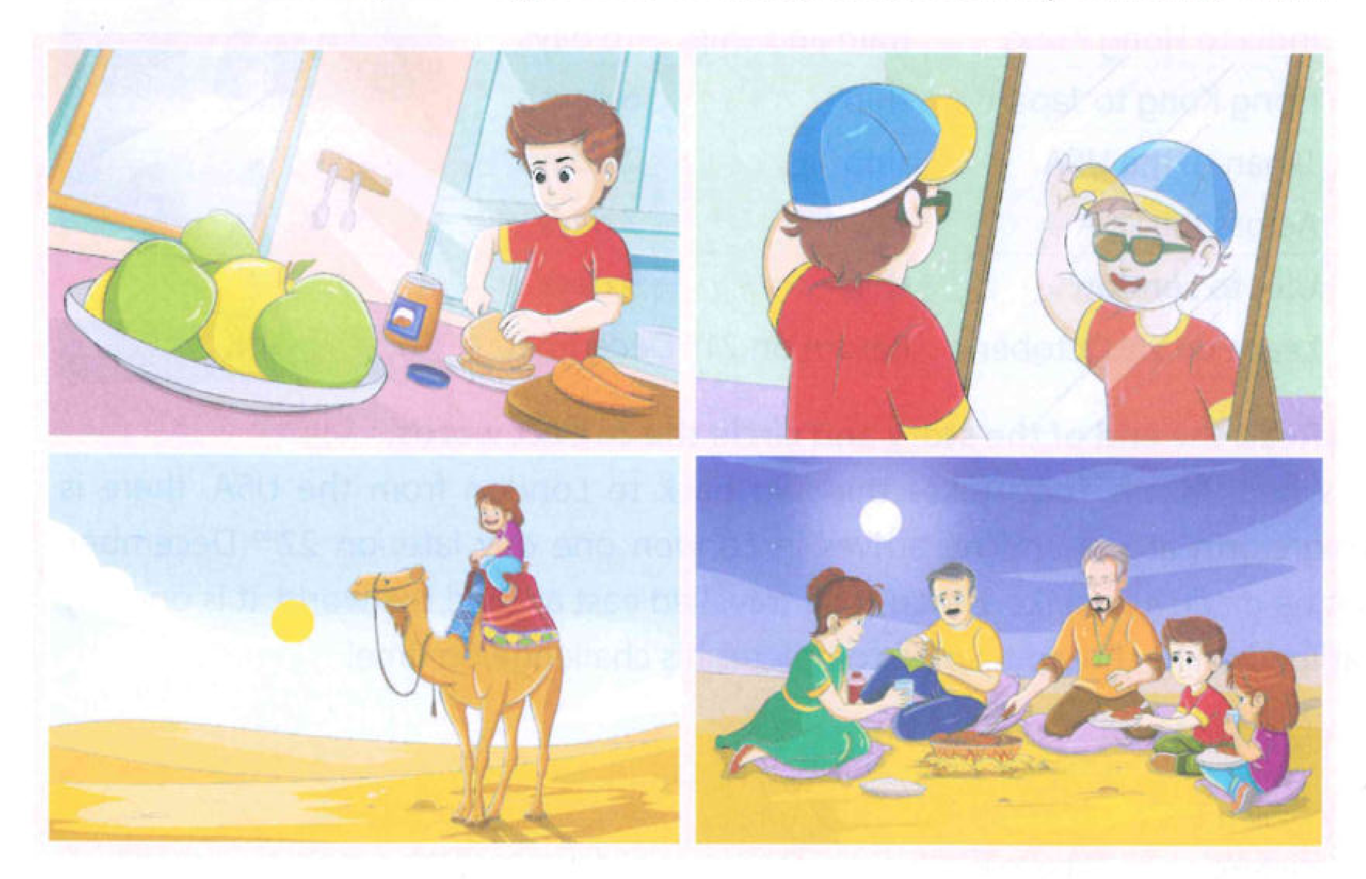
Put these pictures in the correct order to tell a story. Then listen to Nader's presentation and check your answers.

(1) يرتدى ملابسه
(2) مرآة
(3) يحمى
(4) مرشد

My trip to the desert

by Nader

Last weekend, we went on a trip to the desert. I woke up early and made myself breakfast. Then I got dressed[1]. I put on my clothes and looked at myself in the mirror[2]. I put on a hat and sunglasses to protect[3] myself from the sun. At the desert, we met our guide[4] and we rode with him on our camels. My sister took this photo of herself with her camel. That night, we cooked ourselves dinner on a fire. After dinner, when it got cold, we sat by the fire to keep ourselves warm.



Post-listening question:

- Do you think that Nader was happy on his trip to the desert? Why/Why not?

Pre-reading question: - What kind of stories do you like?

Look at the picture and read the introduction to *Around the World in 80 Days*. Which types of transport[1] did people use in 1872? SB page 27

Around the World in 80 Days

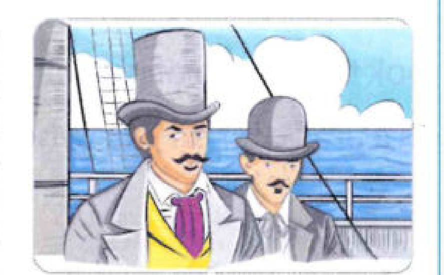
by Jules Verne

In 1872, the writer Jules Verne read a newspaper article[2] about a new railway line[3] across India. It gave him a great idea for a book. He wrote a story about a British man called Phileas Fogg. He takes a challenge[4] to travel around[5] the world in just 80 days. This sounds easy today, but at that time, there were no cars or planes.

(1) المواصلات
(2) مقال فى جريدة
(3) خط سكة حديد
(4) تحدى
(5) يتجول

Look at Phileas Fogg's plan and answer the questions.

London to Suez, Egypt	train and ship	7 days
Suez to India	ship	13 days
India to Hong Kong	train and ship	16 days
Hong Kong to Japan	ship	6 days
Japan to the USA	ship	22 days
Across the USA	train	7 days
USA to London	ship	9 days
Leave on 2nd October	Return on 21st December	





Read the end of the story and circle the correct words.

When Phileas Fogg takes the ship back to London from the USA, there is a big storm at sea and he arrives in London one day late, on 22nd December. But he made a mistake: because he travelled east around the world, it is one day earlier than he thought. So he completes his challenge on time!



Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

challenge /tʃælɪndʒ/
mistake /mɪsteɪk/

Post-reading question:

- Do you think travelling around the world in just 80 days is easy nowadays? Why?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I .... the book, which I took last week, to the library.
   a) completed b) borrowed c) protected d) returned
2. I used a .... to dry myself after the shower.
   a) towel b) tower c) trousers d) sheet
3. The bus is a common type of public ....
   a) road b) transport c) export d) change
4. He .... through the forest to see different kinds of animals and plants.
   a) completed b) kept c) trekked d) took
5. The roads are dangerous when it is .... because you can't see. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) windy b) foggy c) sunny d) cloudy
6. A .... looks after people's teeth. الأقصر ٢٠٢٣
   a) vet b) teacher c) scientist d) dentist
7. They sit by the fire to .... warm.
   a) give b) do c) go d) keep
8. When I was in London, I bought a/an .... and sent it to my friend. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) presentation b) letter c) postcard d) adventure
9. The .... line goes through many towns.
   a) presentation b) mistake c) postcard d) railway
10. I .... my friend during her difficult time. She liked my help.
    a) dried b) supported c) checked d) returned
11. The teacher .... the students' homework for mistakes.
    a) charged b) protected c) checked d) trekked
12. It never .... in Egypt, but it often rains. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
    a) snows b) blows c) pours d) drops
13. My teacher was angry as I .... a lot of mistakes. المنوفية ٢٠٢٢
    a) did b) made c) gave d) took
14. My friend takes a/an .... to travel around the world. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
    a) change b) challenge c) email d) chip
15. Can you .... me an idea for a birthday present?
    a) look b) give c) see d) get
16. I looked at myself in the .... أسوان ٢٠٢٣
    a) glasses b) mirror c) door d) picture



C Language

Reflexive pronouns الضمائر المنعكسة

- **We use reflexive pronouns when the subject and object of a sentence are the same.**

نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة عندما يكون فاعلًا الجملة ومفعولها متماثلين:

Subject pronouns	Reflexive pronouns	Examples
I	• myself بنفسى/ نفسى	- I usually go to school (by) ***myself***. - I hurt ***myself*** with a knife.
You (singular)	• yourself بنفسك/ نفسك	- You should do your homework (by) ***yourself***. - Give ***yourself*** enough time to think well, Sara.
You (plural)	• yourselves بأنفسكم/ أنفسكم	- Did you clean the house by ***yourselves***? - Come on children, get ***yourselves*** some sweets.
He	• himself بنفسه/ نفسه	- He did his homework (by) ***himself***. - My father ***himself*** made this cake.
She	• herself بنفسها/ نفسها	- Mona did the shopping (by) ***herself***. - She looked at ***herself*** in a mirror.
It	• itself بنفسه/ نفسها (لغير العاقل)	- The cat chased the mouse (by) ***itself***. - A bird can feed ***itself***.
We	• ourselves أنفسنا/ بأنفسنا	- We will clean the room (by) ***ourselves***. - Mazin and I bought ***ourselves*** some drinks.
They	• themselves بأنفسهم/ أنفسهم	- The boys did their homework (by) ***themselves***. - They enjoyed ***themselves*** in Hurghada.



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. He burnt .... (herself) with the matches.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (himself) لأنها تعود على الفاعل المذكر He.

2. Be careful! You will hurt .... (himself)!

- الإجابة الصحيحة (yourself) لأنها تعود على الفاعل المخاطب You.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



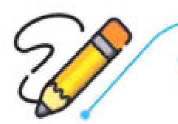
1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Noha made this cake .... when we went sailing. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
   a) himself b) themselves c) herself d) myself
2. Be careful! Don't cut .... الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) yourself b) myself c) himself d) ourselves
3. I hurt .... while playing football.
   a) itself b) himself c) myself d) herself
4. The dog moved its tail when it saw .... in the mirror.
   a) himself b) itself c) yourselves d) themselves
5. Amir can't go to school by .... أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
   a) himself b) herself c) myself d) itself
6. Cats can clean .... المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) herself b) himself c) itself d) themselves
7. Sara has a jacket to keep .... warm. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) herself b) myself c) yourself d) himself
8. Birds sleep in caves to protect .... from eagles. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) itself b) ourselves c) themselves d) yourselves
9. Why don't you clean the windows ....?
   a) herself b) myself c) yourself d) ourselves
10. Mona and Aly, I am not going to do the homework for you. You have to do it ....
   a) myself b) ourselves c) yourselves d) yourself

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Amal, clean the room .... (herself). الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
2. Lara, make .... (herself) at home. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
3. I didn't buy this cake. I made it .... (yourself). سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
4. Marwa made this cup of tea by .... (himself). الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
5. The boy repaired the broken toy .... (herself). بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
6. Can you understand this lesson .... (myself)? سوهاج ٢٠٢٢

D Skills



Write it right



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب
من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about planning your trip

كيفية الكتابة عن تخطيط رحلتك

- I'm going on a trip to ... (المكان)
- I'm going next ... (الوقت)
- We're going by ... (وسيلة المواصلات)
- We're going to (see ... / play ... / swim ...)
- We're going to come back ... . (وقت العودة)
- We're going to enjoy ourselves on our trip.
- I'm sure it will be a wonderful one.

Writing tips

- Use vocabulary that's relevant to the topic.
- You can brainstorm the vocabulary you will use before starting writing.

- استخدم المفردات التى تلائم الموضوع.
- يمكنك التفكير فى المفردات المناسبة قبل بدء الكتابة.

Example

To : refaat@student.com
From : ziko@gmail.com
Subject : My trip
Hello Refaat,

I hope you are OK. Next weekend, I'm going on a trip to the desert. I'm going to wake up early. Then, I'm going to get dressed. I'm going to put on a hat and sunglasses to protect myself from the sun. We are going there by bus. We are going to meet our guide and ride with him on camels. We are going to cook ourselves dinner on a fire. After dinner, we are going to sit by the fire to keep ourselves warm because it gets cold there at night.

Please, write back soon.

Yours,
Ziko

Check Point

Write an email on a trip to a famous place.

To : .... From: ....
Subject : ....

....
....
....
....
....

Take a test

TEST YOURSELF



Unit 9 Lessons (3 & 4)



17.5

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last summer, I travelled to South Africa with my friends. We were excited to see the country's natural beauty and planned to do outdoor activities like trekking and zip lining. However, our plans didn't work well because the weather was not very good. There were some storms during our trip, which made us stop some of our plans. Although there were many bad things, we could go trekking in the mountains. It was sunny when we started, but when we got to the top of the mountain, we saw dark clouds but enjoyed the beautiful **scenery.** We also visited other places in Cape Town and learned about the country's history.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

....

2. What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to?

....

3. What activities do you think they stopped because of the bad weather?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. There are .... activities mentioned in the passage.
   a) two b) three c) four d) five
5. They learned about the .... in Cape Town.
   a) science b) music c) history d) art
6. The word "**scenery**" means a ....
   a) field b) natural place c) desert d) hill

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Phileas Fogg takes a .... to travel around the world in just 80 days. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) mirror b) challenge
   c) railway line d) presentation
2. There is .... at the top of that mountain. Look, it is all white! WB
   a) wind b) rain c) snow d) storm
3. We can't sail because there is no .... WB
   a) fog b) snow c) rain d) wind
4. They saw a beautiful view .... the way down the mountain.
   a) to b) at c) on d) in

5. We .... mistakes sometimes, but we learn from them.
a) do b) take c) make d) keep

6. "*Robinson Crusoe*" is a/an .... story by Daniel Defoe. It's exciting. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
a) comic b) adventure c) true d) horror

7. We .... on a camel to see the whole area around the Pyramids.
a) rode b) flew c) drove d) walked

8. Mona usually enjoys .... when they play on the beach. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
a) ourselves b) herself c) himself d) themselves

9. Sarah and John bought some ice-cream for ....
a) themselves b) ourselves c) himself d) yourself

10. Don't help us, Dad! Jim and I can paint the room by ....
a) yourselves b) myself c) themselves d) ourselves

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I usually do my homework by .... (yourself). القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
2. My brother and I like taking photos of .... (myself). بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
3. Did you draw this picture .... (myself)? أسوان ٢٠٢٣
4. The children made these toys .... (itself). المنيا ٢٠٢٣

4 Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words on a nice trip you went on. Your name is Heba and your email address is heba@school.com. Your friend's name is Basmala and her email address is boosy@student.com.

To : .... From: ....
Subject : ....
....
....
....
....
....

Challenging Questions

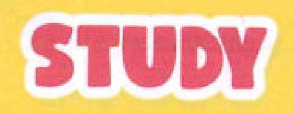
Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب.

1 Let's paint the house .... (myself).

2 Nobody likes to go on a holiday by .... (himself).

3 Adel, read the story by .... (herself).



Watch a video

Lessons 5 & 6



SB pages 29 - 31 | WB pages 88 - 90

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

email (n)	بريد إلكترونى	magazine (n)	مجلة
form (n)	شكل/نوع	photo album (n)	ألبوم صور
letter (n)	خطاب	respect (ed) (v)	يحترم

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

busy (adj)	مشغول	helicopter (n)	طائرة عمودية/هليكوبتر
station (n)	محطة	present (n)	هدية

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

have > tennis lessons	لديه حصص تنس	make > suggestions	يقدم اقتراحات

Prepositions — حروف الجر

advantages of	مميزات لـ	form of	نوع/شكل من
different to/from	مختلف عن	reply to	رد على
excited about	مسرور/متحمس بخصوص	respond to	يرد على

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
beautiful	جميل	ugly	قبيح
dangerous	خطير	safe	آمن
online	عبر الإنترنت	offline	غير متصل بالإنترنت

Check Point

Choose and complete: busy - letter - about - email

1. I sent a/an .... to my friend using my phone.
2. My father is always .... He has no time to spend with us.
3. She's excited .... the trip to the museum.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية والتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Language Notes



ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 would ('d) rather + inf. يفضل أن
- I'd rather **eat** fruit.

2 Let's + inf. هيا بنا (تستخدم للاقتراح)
- Let's **watch** TV tonight.

3 look forward to + (v + ing) يتطلع إلى
- I'm looking forward to **seeing** you again.

4 love (v + ing/n) يحب
- I love being by the sea.
- I love fresh air.



Vocabulary Builder

جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
dangerous	خطير	serious	خطير
exciting	مثير	interesting	شيق

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
suggest (v)	يقترح	-ion	تحويل الفعل لاسم	suggestion (n)	اقتراح

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
dis-	تعطى عكس المعنى	advantages (n)	مميزات	disadvantages (n)	عيوب

Similar spelling - Different meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
letter	خطاب	litter	قمامة
present	هدية	percent	فى المائة



هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

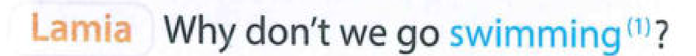


B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening question:

Lesson 5

- What kind of water sports do you like doing?



Listen to Ola and Lamia. Tick (✓) the activity they decide to do. *SB page 29*

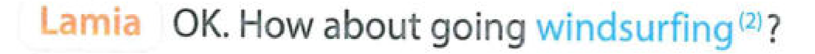


Ola I'm really enjoying myself on our holiday. I love being by the sea. What shall we do this afternoon?

Lamia Why don't we go swimming [1]?

Ola I'm not sure. Swimming is fun, but we can do that at home. I'd rather do something more exciting.





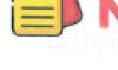
Lamia OK. How about going windsurfing [2]?

Ola I don't know. I'm not very good at windsurfing and it isn't very windy today.



Lamia OK, not swimming and not windsurfing … I know! Let's go kayaking [3].

Ola Good idea! I love kayaking.





Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:

windy /wɪndi/

(1) السباحة
(2) ركوب الأمواج
(3) التجديف

Post-listening question:

- Why didn't Ola go windsurfing?

Lesson 5

Pre-reading question: - What do you think of windsurfing?

Read the email. Who is Kareem? *SB page 30*



From : Maher
To : Karim
Subject : Your visit

Dear Karim,

I'm really excited [1] that you are going to come and stay with us next week. I'm looking forward to [2] seeing you again. What time is your train going to arrive? We can meet you at the station.

Our new home is by the beach. We can go swimming every day. There are lots of other things to do, too. How about going windsurfing [3] or diving [4]?

On Thursday, Grandad is going to visit us. Let's make him a special present [5]. Why don't we find photos of ourselves and our other cousins? We can make him a photo album [6].

See you on Saturday!

From
Maher

(1) مسرور/ متحمس
(2) يتطلع إلى
(3) ركوب الأمواج
(4) الغوص
(5) هدية
(6) ألبوم صور

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

excited	/ɪksaɪtɪd/
special	/speʃəl/

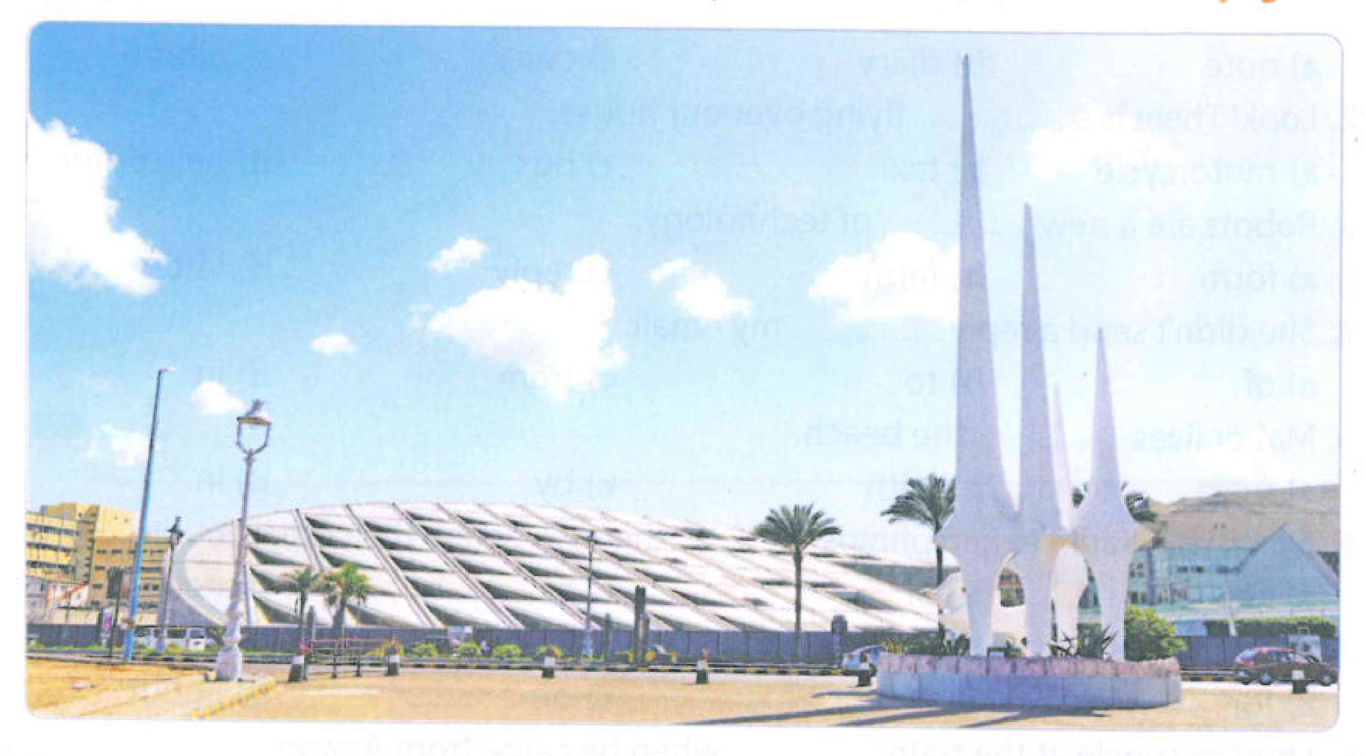
Post-reading question: - How do you think their grandfather will feel if they make him a photo album as a present?

Pre-reading question:

- What are you going to do next weekend?

Where do these sentences go in Judy's email to Manal?

WB page 89



Dear Manal,

I'm writing to tell you my plans for the summer. **It's going to be fun but busy.**

Then you can write to me about your plans!

First, I'm going to visit my cousins in Alexandria.

They're going to take me to the famous library. **I'm very excited about that.**

It's a beautiful building.

I'm going to go home on 22nd August. **I'm going to have tennis lessons!**

I can't play tennis now, but I'm going to be very good after the lessons!

Let's do some things together before we go back to school. **What about going to the beach?**

You always like swimming. **Write to me soon so I know your plans!**

From

Judy

Post-reading question:

- What do you think of Judy's plans for the summer?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Most people like to have a photo .... of the most important events in their life. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) note b) diary c) dairy d) album
2. Look! There is a .... flying over our house.
   a) motorcycle b) taxi c) bus d) helicopter
3. Robots are a new .... of technology.
   a) form b) farm c) reply d) letter
4. She didn't send a reply .... my email.
   a) of b) to c) from d) in
5. Maher lives .... the beach. SB
   a) from b) with c) by d) in
6. Maher asks Karim to find photos .... themselves and their other cousins. SB
   a) at b) of c) to d) near
7. I can't go out because I'm working .... the computer right now.
   a) for b) of c) on d) about
8. I met my uncle at the train .... when he came from Aswan.
   a) airport b) station c) wheel d) office
9. My grandmother is 65 and knows a lot! We all .... what she says. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
   a) respect b) hate c) cover d) think
10. The baby was excited .... the toy I gave him. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
    a) by b) about c) with d) to
11. I gave a special .... to my father on his birthday party. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
    a) present b) prize c) value d) scene
12. This .... has interesting articles.
    a) email b) magazine c) form d) present
13. Please, send me your .... address.
    a) present b) letter c) post d) email
14. I like to read books at the .... during the break.
    a) album b) library c) station d) email
15. Can you .... some suggestions for dinner?
    a) stay b) take c) do d) make
16. I like tennis very much, so I want to .... tennis lessons.
    a) have b) see c) do d) make

C Skills



Speaking

Making and responding to suggestions

عمل اقتراحات والرد عليها

Situation	ما يقال فى هذا الموقف	Response	جملة الرد



* Let's go diving. — هيا نذهب للغوص.

* Good idea! — فكرة جيدة! -

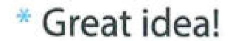


* I'd rather visit the park. — أفضل أن أزور الحديقة.

* Great idea! — فكرة عظيمة! -



* Shall we play tennis? — هل نلعب تنس؟



* OK. Why not? — حسنًا. ولم لا؟ -



* Why don't we go rock climbing? — لما لا نذهب لتسلق الصخور؟



* That sounds a bit scary. — يبدو هذا مخيفا قليلا. -



* How about playing football? — ماذا عن لعب كرة القدم؟



* I'm not sure. — أنا غير متأكدة. -



Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

Lamia is suggesting going out.

Ola : I feel bored! What shall we do this afternoon?

Lamia : (1)..?

Ola : Swimming! I'd rather do something more exciting.

Lamia : OK. (2)..?

Ola : I'm not very good at windsurfing.

Lamia : (3).. .

Ola : (4)..! I love kayaking.

Lamia : What time will we go?

Ola : (5).. .

Take a test

TEST YOURSELF  Unit 9 Lessons (5 & 6)



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Adel suggests playing football in the sports centre.

Adel : Hi, Amir! What shall we do this afternoon?

Amir : Hi, Adel! I don't know.

Adel : (1)..?

Amir : That's a great idea. But (2).. .

Adel : No problem. We can ask our friend Said to take his ball.

Amir : (3).. .

Adel : Wait, do you want to take snacks to eat during our break?

Amir : (4).. . What do you suggest?

Adel : (5)..?

Amir : That's a good idea. I like sandwiches.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What .... going windsurfing? WB
   a) out b) at c) of d) about
2. He looks .... to travelling to Paris.
   a) after b) at c) for d) forward
3. I'll meet my uncle at the .... He'll come by train.
   a) station b) stadium
   c) library d) magazine
4. I'll buy my sister a .... for her birthday.
   a) percent b) present c) letter d) photo
5. You should .... other people's opinions.
   a) disagree b) refuse c) respect d) dislike
6. I wrote a/an .... to my friend two days ago. It will arrive after two more days.
   a) letter b) email c) blog d) post
7. What are the advantages .... learning a new language?
   a) on b) by c) of d) at

8. .... play tennis?

a) How about
b) Let's
c) Shall
d) Why don't we

9. I'd .... play chess. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣

a) rather
b) prefer
c) refer
d) got

10. .... we try that new restaurant downtown and explore some new flavours?

a) Shall
b) Why
c) How about
d) Let's

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. How about .... (go) for a swim at the beach?
2. Why don't we clean the beach by .... (themselves)?
3. I'd rather .... (staying) at home.
4. I am going .... (meet) my friends for dinner after work tomorrow.

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"What you are going to do next weekend"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1 I'd rather .... to the party tonight; I'm feeling tired and would prefer to stay home.

a) not go
b) go
c) not to go
d) to go

2 She's really excited .... go to the concert.

a) with
b) about
c) by
d) to

3 Our new home is .... the beach. It's a two-minute walk.

a) to
b) far
c) by
d) next

Review on Unit 9

Vocabulary

adventure sport	رياضة مغامرة
article	مقال
Bedouin	بدوى/بدو
diving	الغطس/الغوص
email	بريد إلكترونى
kayaking	التجديف
mountain biking	ركوب الدراجات فى الجبل
mountain climbing	تسلق الجبال
mountain sports	رياضات الجبال
photo album	ألبوم صور
railway line	خط سكة حديد
rock climbing	تسلق الصخور
sailing	الإبحار
transport	مواصلات
trekking	الارتحال/التجوال
water sports	رياضات مائية
windsurfing	ركوب الأمواج
zip lining	الانزلاق بالحبل
character	شخصية

Language

1. "be going to" for future plans

استخدام "be going to" للخطط المستقبلية

Affirmative:

- I am going to **visit** Sinai.
- My dad is going to **climb** a mountain.
- We are going to **try** rock climbing.

Negative:

- I am not going to **do** anything scary.
- He isn't going to **go** diving.
- We aren't going to **go** kayaking.

Question:

A: Are your brothers going to **try** diving?
B: Yes, they are. / **B:** No, they aren't.
A: What are you going to **do** tomorrow afternoon?
B: I'm going to **watch** a football match on TV.

2. Reflexive pronouns

I.......myself
He.......himself
She.......herself
It.......itself
You.......yourself

You.......yourselves
We.......ourselves
They.......themselves

Skills

Making and responding to suggestions

- Let's go diving.
  - Great idea!
- I'd rather visit the park.
  - Good idea!
- Shall we play tennis?
  - OK. Why not?
- How about playing football?
  - I'm not sure.
- Why don't we go rock climbing?
  - That sounds a bit scary.

Question Bank



Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 9





24



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: بورسعيد ٢٠٢٢

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. When did Sameh go trekking in the mountains?
   a) Yesterday. b) Last week. c) Today. d) Last month.
2. What was the weather like when he started?
   a) Cloudy. b) Rainy. c) Sunny. d) Cold.
3. Did he go to the top?
   a) No, he didn't. b) Yes, he did. c) No, he can't. d) I don't know.
4. What did he see there?
   a) Snow. b) A plane. c) Birds. d) Dark clouds.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue: أسيوط ٢٠٢٣

Mostafa and Ziad are talking about their next weekend.

Mostafa : Where are you going next weekend?
Ziad : (1).. .
Mostafa : The desert! (2)..?
Ziad : To go trekking in the mountains.
Mostafa : (3)..?
Ziad : No, I don't think it is tiring.
Mostafa : Who is going to go with you?
Ziad : (4).. . What about you?
Mostafa : (5).. .
Ziad : That's great! I like diving, too.



C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

Every summer, Nada goes to the countryside for a month. She stays at her uncle's farm and helps him. She works very **hard** but she likes it. She loves to spend time with her cousins. Every morning, she wakes up at six o'clock. First, she collects the eggs and feeds the chickens, then she has breakfast at 6:30. After

breakfast, she helps her uncle's wife with the housework. Nada and her cousins always spend a great time together. They climb trees and pick fruits and flowers. They are always very tired at the end of the day. Nada and her cousins always watch TV before they go to bed.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think Nada likes to go to her uncle's farm?

....

2. What do Nada and her cousins do before they go to bed?

....

3. Give a suitable title for this passage.

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Nada stays at her uncle's farm for .... days.
   a) 15 b) 7 c) 60 d) 30
5. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to ....
   a) Nada and her father b) Nada and her cousins
   c) Nada and her friends d) Nada and her classmates
6. The opposite of the word "**hard**" is ....
   a) easy b) carefully c) carelessly d) locally

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I went .... across the desert. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
   a) sailing b) trekking c) diving d) swimming
2. Maher and Karim can .... windsurfing or diving. SB
   a) dry b) play c) try d) reply
3. What is the .... of your birthday?
   a) history b) date c) guide d) tent
4. My parents always .... me in my studies. They always help me and give me some advice.
   a) complete b) stop c) prevent d) support
5. What is the .... of buying this expensive mobile phone?
   a) plan b) respect c) advantage d) form

6. Diving looks a bit .... to me. I'm afraid of it. الأقصر ٢٠٢٣

a) amazing b) scary c) scared d) amazed

7. I put all my photos in a photo ....

a) book b) note c) album d) guide

8. What are you going to .... tomorrow? الأقصر ٢٠٢٣

a) doing b) did c) does d) do

9. Children usually enjoy .... when they play on the beach. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣

a) himself b) herself c) themselves d) ourselves

10. Wafaa usually cleans her room by .... أسيوط ٢٠٢٣

a) herself b) himself c) myself d) yourself

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You need to take care of .... (himself) if you want to stay healthy.
2. They are going to .... (having) a picnic on the beach tomorrow.
3. Why don't we .... (going) rock climbing?
4. What about .... (ride) a bicycle? سوهاج ٢٠٢٣

E Writing

6 Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words on your favourite adventure sport. Your name is Tarek and your email address is tiko@hotmail.com. Your friend's name is Mazin and his email address is mazin@gmail.com.

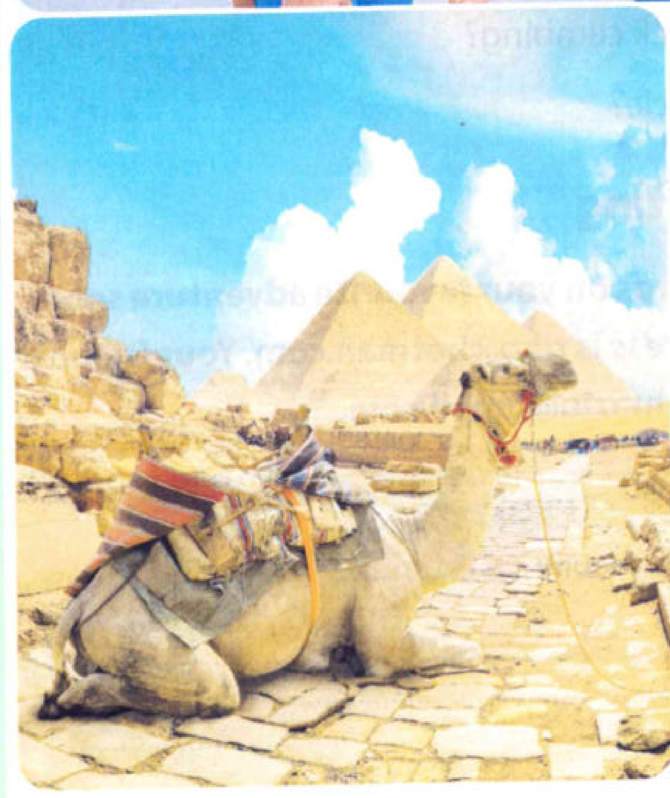
To : .... From: ....
Subject : ....
....
....
....
....
....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Solve more exams	Well done!

Review C







Units 7, 8 & 9

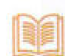


Review C

Lesson 1

Pre-reading question:

- Where's Sydney?

 **Read the emails. Did Amy and Dareen both climb Sydney Harbour Bridge?**

SB page 32

Hi Dareen,

How are you? I'm really enjoying myself in Sydney with my family. Sydney is about eight hours by car from our home in Melbourne. Yesterday I climbed Sydney Harbour Bridge. It was very high and scary. But the views from the top were fantastic! My sister and I took a great selfie of ourselves!



Tonight I am going to listen to music at the Sydney Opera House, but it is not opera, it is classical music! Tomorrow I am going to the Blue Mountains. I am going to swim in a lake and go rock climbing.

Here are some photos!

Love, Amy





Hi Amy,

Your holiday sounds fantastic. My family and I went to Sydney last year, but we did not climb the bridge! We went to Bondi Beach and went windsurfing and kayaking. I love water sports!

I hope you enjoy your holiday, send me an email when you are home.

Love, Dareen

Post-reading question:

- What is Amy going to do tomorrow?

Pre-reading question:

- Who wrote *Robinson Crusoe*?

 **Read the text and answer the questions.** *WB page 91*

Last weekend, I watched a TV programme about Robinson Crusoe Island. The author of *Robinson Crusoe*, Daniel Defoe, wrote about this island because a real sailor called Alexander Selkirk spent four years alone here. Defoe wrote *Robinson Crusoe* after hearing about this man. However, Crusoe's adventures were different to Mr Selkirk's. Crusoe spent a lot longer on the island (28 years) and the weather was a lot hotter than on the real island. Today, about 800 people live on Robinson Crusoe Island. Life is easier now, although people still have to look after themselves. The nearest land, Chile, is 24 hours away by boat. Soon, they are going to build a new school and hospital on the island. Those are things that Crusoe did not have!

Post-reading question:

- What do you think of the story?



Lesson 1

Pre-listening question:

- How was your weekend?

Listen and answer the questions. *WB page 91*

1

Girl Hi, Lara. How was your weekend?

Lara Oh, it was terrible.

Girl Oh dear, what happened?

Lara I went to the museum, but it was closed. Then I missed the bus, so I had to walk home.

Girl Oh dear!

2

Boy 1 I love tennis. Do you agree that it's more exciting than any other sport?

Boy 2 I'm afraid, I don't agree.

3

Girl 1 What shall we do this afternoon, Lama?

Girl 2 Why don't we go swimming?

Girl 1 I'm not sure. The swimming pool is not very near.

Girl 2 OK. How about going to the park?

Girl 1 Good idea! I love the trees and plants there.

4

Boy 3 What do you think about that book you're reading?

Boy 4 I think it's the worst book ever!

Post-listening question:

- What are your plans for the next weekend?

Pre-listening question:

- What is the sixth largest country in the world?

Look at the table comparing Australia and Egypt. Work in pairs. Can you guess the answers? *SB page 33*



Woman Egypt is just over one million square kilometres.

Man Australia is the sixth largest country in the world. It is just over seven million, six hundred thousand square kilometres.

Woman The highest mountain in Egypt is Mount Catherine. It is over two thousand six hundred metres high.

Man The highest mountain in Australia is Mount Kosciuszko. It is over two thousand, two hundred metres high.

Woman The River Nile is the longest river in the world. It flows through Egypt and other countries in Africa. It's over six thousand, six hundred kilometres long.

Man The longest river in Australia is the River Murray. It is over two thousand, five hundred kilometres long. Be careful of the crocodiles!

Woman In Egypt, one of the oldest buildings is the Khufu Pyramid. It is about 4,600 years old.

Man The oldest building in Australia is Elizabeth Farm, in Sydney. It is over 200 years old.

Post-listening question:

- What's the longest river in the world?

Unit 10

Welcome to my home!

Objectives of the unit

Reading	Homes in ancient Egypt; round houses around the world
Writing	- A paragraph describing your first school - A timeline of a famous person's life - A diagram of future houses
Listening	A podcast about homes of the future
Speaking	Saying what things are made of; predicting the future
Language	is/are made of; there was/were; there will/won't be for predictions with no evidence; saying years
Life Skills	Creativity; good listening and self-expression

Tapescript






Watch a video

Lessons 1 & 2





SB pages 34 - 37 | WB pages 93 & 94

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

bricks (n)	الطوب	rubbish (n)	قمامة
curtain (n)	ستارة	rug (n)	سجادة/مشاية
cushion (n)	وسادة/مسند	scarf (n)	طرحة/وشاح
jumper (n)	بلوفر	seat (n)	مقعد ثابت
knife/knives (n)	سكين/سكاكين	sofa (n)	كنبة/أريكة
lamp (n)	لمبة/مصباح	tap (n)	صنبور/حنفية
oven (n)	فرن	teaspoon (n)	ملعقة شاى
possessions (n)	ممتلكات	technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
roof (n)	سطح المنزل	wall (n)	جدار/حائط
round (adj)	مستدير	wallet (n)	محفظة نقود
Materials	**المواد الخام**		
cotton (n)	القطن	paper (n)	ورق
glass (n)	الزجاج	plastic (n)	البلاستيك
leather (n)	الجلد	stone (n)	الحجر
metal (n)	المعدن	wood (n)	الخشب

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

ancient Egyptians	المصريون القدماء	spoon (n)	ملعقة
fork (n)	شوكة	toy (n)	لعبة
living room (n)	غرفة المعيشة	trousers (n)	بنطلون
socks (n)	جوارب/شراب	paint (ed) (v)	يدهن/يلون/يطلى

Check Point

Choose and complete: leather – jumper – wallet – bricks

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

1. Builders use .... to build houses.
2. My bag is made of the best ....
3. This .... makes me warm because it's made of wool.

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n) = noun | (adj) = adjective | (prep) = preposition
(v) = verb | (adv) = adverb | (conj) = conjunction

Prepositions — حروف الجر

basket for	سلة لـ	find out	يكتشف
on the floor	على الأرضية	for example	على سبيل المثال

Check Point

Choose and complete: out – for – on

1. There is a basket .... plastic rubbish over there.
2. When I went home, I found .... that I lost my money.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك لحروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.
make	يصنع	made	made
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
sleep	ينام	slept	slept

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
difficult	صعب	easy	سهل
expensive	غالى الثمن	cheap	رخيص الثمن

Language Notes

ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



1 **(be) made (of/ from/ in/ by)**

made of — مصنوع من (المادة الخام لم تتغير وما زلنا نراها)

- This cushion was made of leather.

made from — مصنوع من (المادة الخام تغيرت ولم نعد نراها)

- Glass is made from sand.

made in — مصنوع فى (مكان الصنع)

- My mother's valuable furniture was made in Damietta.

made by — مصنوع بواسطة (الشخص/الشركة المصنعة)

- My mobile phone was made by Samsung.

2 **but** — ولكن (تعبر عن التناقض)

- The houses had a kitchen and a living room, but there were not any bedrooms.

3 **because** — لأن (لإعطاء سبب)

- People usually slept on the roof because it was very hot at night.





جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions التعريفات

bricks	الطوب	you use these to build a wall
oven	فرن	you use this to cook food or bread
roof	سطح	this is on top of a house
tap	صنبور/حنفية	you can turn this to get water

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
difficult	صعب	hard	صعب
expensive	غالى الثمن	costly	مكلف

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
possess (v)	يملك	-ion	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	possession (n)	حيازة/امتلاك

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
in-	تعطى عكس المعنى	expensive (adj)	غالى الثمن	inexpensive (adj)	رخيص الثمن

Similar spelling - Different meaning

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
lamp	لمبة/مصباح	lamb	حمل/ خروف صغير
metal	المعدن	medal	ميدالية
paper	ورق	pepper	فلفل



B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 1

Pre-listening question:

- What are car doors made of?

Listen and check your answers to Exercise 2.

WB page 93







Boy 1 What is a car made of?

Boy 2 That's a difficult question! It's made of a lot of things.

For example, a car door is made of metal[1] and the windows are made of glass[2].

Boy 1 What are the seats[3] made of, where you sit?

Boy 2 I think expensive car seats are made of leather[4]. My father's car is not expensive. The seats are made of plastic[5].

(1) معدن
(2) زجاج
(3) مقاعد ثابتة
(4) جلد
(5) بلاستيك



Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

question /kwestʃən/
leather /leðəʳ/

Post-listening question:

- Which material do you prefer for the car seats?

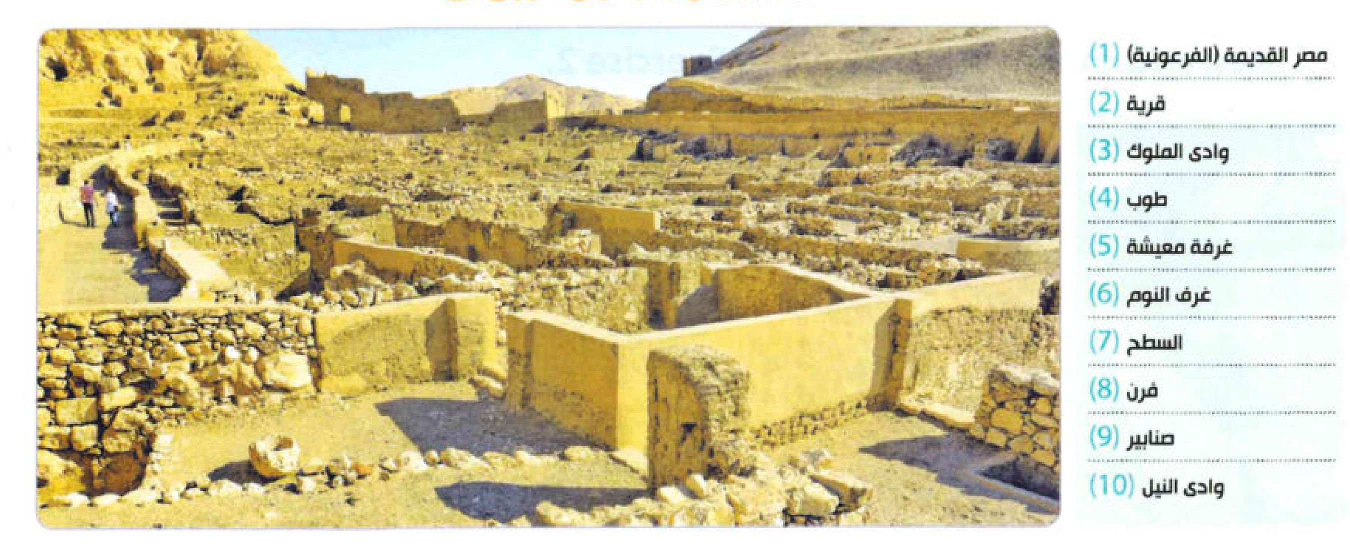
Pre-reading question: - What do you know about Deir el-Medina?

Lesson 2

Read the text quickly. What is the main idea of the article?

SB page 36

Deir el-Medina



مصر القديمة (الفرعونية) (1)
قرية (2)
وادى الملوك (3)
طوب (4)
غرفة معيشة (5)
غرف النوم (6)
السطح (7)
فرن (8)
صنابير (9)
وادى النيل (10)

In ancient Egypt[1], there was a village[2] called Deir el-Medina. The people from the village worked in the Valley of the Kings[3]. There were 68 houses.

The walls of the houses were made of bricks[4] and the doors were made of wood. The people painted their houses white, with red doors.

The houses had a kitchen and a living room[5], but there were not any bedrooms[6]. People usually slept on the roof[7] because it was very hot at night.

There was usually an oven[8] for bread in the kitchen, but there were not any taps[9]. People got their water from the Nile Valley[10], about two kilometres away.



تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

ancient /eɪnʃənt/ kilometre /kɪləmiːtəʳ/

Post-reading question:

- How would you feel if you didn't have a bedroom?

Describe this student's room in 1900.



There were beds. They were made of metal. There were cushions on the bed. They were made of cotton. There was a basket for clothes or rubbish. There were rugs on the floor. They were made of cotton or wool. There wasn't any technology. There weren't any pictures on the walls.



PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The .... is made of metal. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) dress b) knife c) book d) jacket
2. Car windows are made of .... WB
   a) plastic b) sand c) stone d) glass
3. We use .... on windows to keep sunlight out. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) curtains b) cushions c) scarfs d) teaspoons
4. The desk .... helps me study at night.
   a) lamb b) lamp c) oven d) tap
5. .... are used to cook food or make bread. الأقصر ٢٠٢٣
   a) Fridges b) Taps c) TVs d) Ovens
6. We should put .... in the bins. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) rockets b) money c) rubbish d) information
7. Men always keep their money in a ....
   a) roof b) wallet c) jumper d) toy
8. This sofa has very soft .... أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
   a) shirts b) cushions c) jumpers d) curtains
9. The .... is on top of a house. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) wall b) bedroom c) oven d) roof
10. My scarf is made of .... الأقصر ٢٠٢٣
    a) plastic b) wood c) metal d) cotton
11. We can find .... the way by using a map.
    a) up b) of c) out d) at
12. We watch TV in the .... room.
    a) living b) bath c) class d) kitchen
13. She is wearing a long .... on her head. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
    a) scarf b) jumper c) curtain d) cushion
14. You can turn on the .... to get water. الأقصر ٢٠٢٣
    a) tap b) tip c) tape d) tube
15. Expensive car seats are made of .... سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
    a) leather b) wood c) metal d) plastic
16. We use a .... to stir sugar and tea. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
    a) teaspoon b) wallet c) knife d) bag

C Language

1 is/are made of — يُصنع من

- We use (is/are made of) to describe the materials of an object:
- نستخدم (is/are made of) لوصف المواد الخام لشيء.

Form التكوين

The singular object الشيء المفرد + is made of + material المادة الخام

Singular المفرد

The **sofa** is made of leather.
The **book** is made of paper.

The plural object الشيء الجمع + are made of + material المادة الخام

Plural الجمع

Cushions are made of cotton.
Socks are made of wool.

Question السؤال

What + is + the singular object الشيء المفرد + made of?

Singular المفرد

What is the sofa made of? **What** is the bottle made of?

What + are + the plural object الشيء الجمع + made of?

Plural الجمع

What are the cushions made of? **What** are your socks made of?



للسؤال عن الأشياء التى صنعت من مادة خام نستخدم:

What is made of + المادة الخام?

- **What** is made of leather?
- **My bag** is made of leather.
- **Bags, shoes and wallets** are made of leather.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. What .... (are) your bag made of?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (is) لأن كلمة bag اسم مفرد.

2. These tables .... (is) made of plastic.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (are) لأن كلمة tables اسم جمع.



2 a/an

- **"A"** and **"an"** are used before a noun that is general or when its identity is not known. The difference depends on the sound at the beginning of the next word.

- نستخدم (a - an) قبل الاسم العام أو عندما تكون هويته غير معروفة. ويعتمد استخدامهما على الصوت الذى تبدأ به الكلمة التى تليهم.

When the next word starts with a CONSONANT SOUND, use



نستخدم (a) قبل الكلمة التى تبدأ بصوت ساكن.

 book  door

When the next word starts with a VOWEL SOUND, use



نستخدم (an) قبل الكلمة التى تبدأ بصوت متحرك.

 apple  orange



The **SOUND** of the letter is important.

انتبه جيدًا لصوت الحرف.

a house But **an** hour

The **H** at the beginning of **"hour"** is silent.

- تم استخدام (an) قبل هذه الكلمة لأن حرف (h) لا ينطق.

an uncle But **a** university

The **U** at the beginning of **"university"** sounds like **you**.

- تم استخدام (a) قبل هذه الكلمة لأن حرف (u) لم ينطق كصوت متحرك.

3 any أى

- **We use (any) with plural nouns and uncountable nouns.**
- **We use (any) with Negative sentences & Yes/ No questions.**

- تستخدم (any) مع الأسماء الجمع والأسماء غير المعدودة.
- تستخدم (any) بمعنى (أى) مع الجمل المنفية والسؤال بمعنى هل.

- There weren't any taps in ancient Egypt.
- Was there any money on the table?

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Do you want .... (a) egg for breakfast?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (an) لأن egg كلمة مفردة وتبدأ بصوت متحرك للحرف "e".

2. Every school has .... (an) uniform.

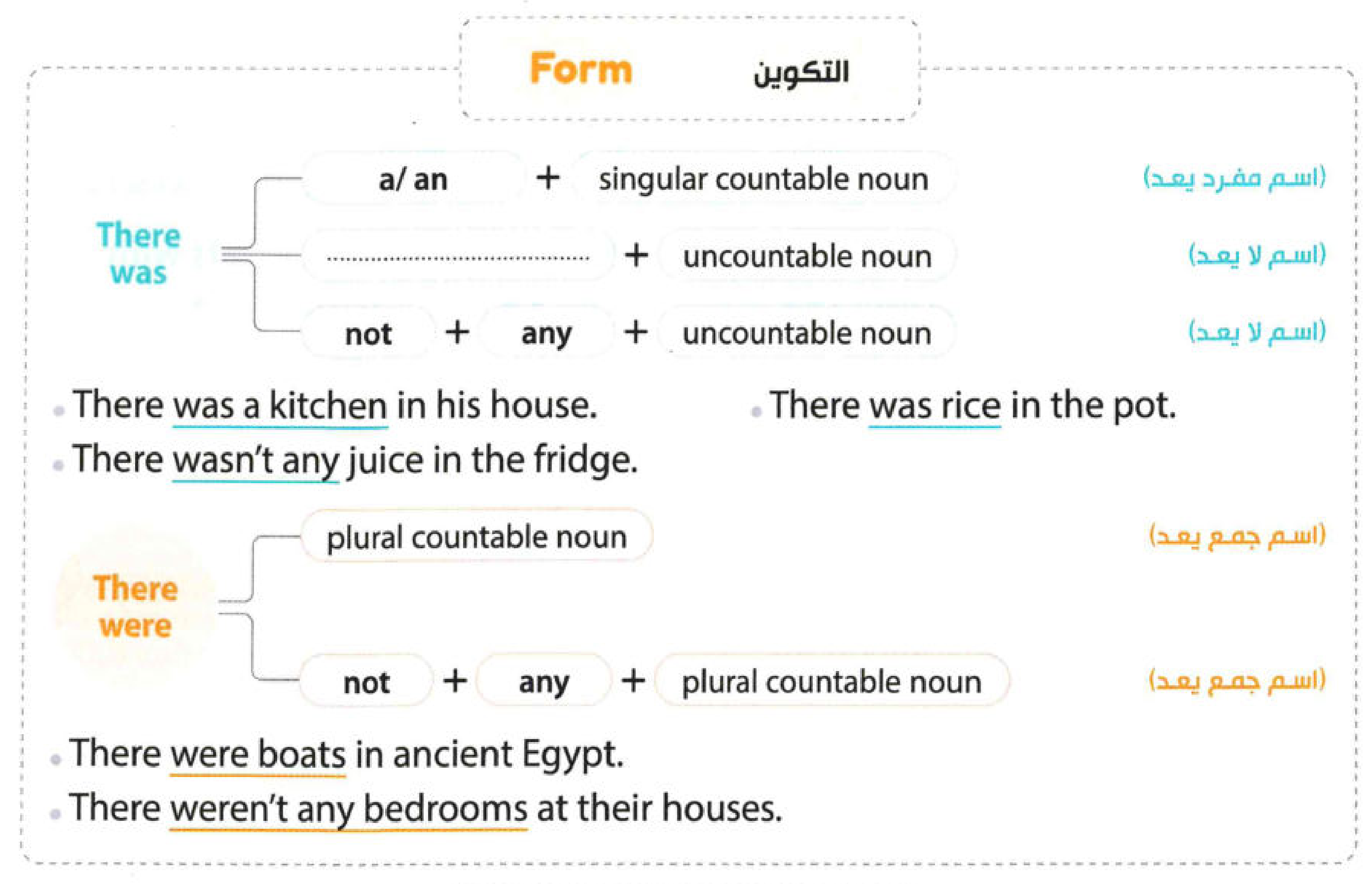
- الإجابة الصحيحة (a) لأن حرف (u) ينطق فى كلمة uniform كصوت غير متحرك.

3. We don't have .... (a) milk.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (any) لأن (milk) اسم لا يعد والجملة منفية.

4 There was/ There were كان هناك

- نستخدم (There was/ There were) بمعنى (كان هناك) للتعبير عن وجود شيء/أشياء في الماضي.



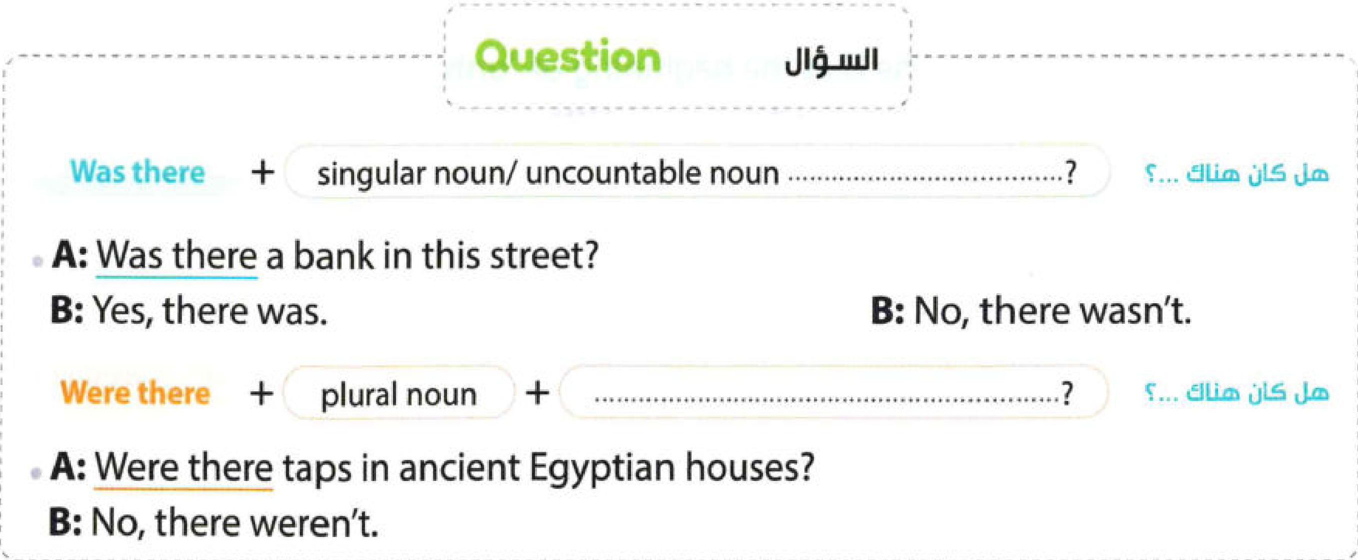
Form التكوين

There was
- a/ an + singular countable noun (اسم مفرد يعد)
- .... + uncountable noun (اسم لا يعد)
- not + any + uncountable noun (اسم لا يعد)

- There was a kitchen in his house.
- There was rice in the pot.
- There wasn't any juice in the fridge.

There were
- plural countable noun (اسم جمع يعد)
- not + any + plural countable noun (اسم جمع يعد)

- There were boats in ancient Egypt.
- There weren't any bedrooms at their houses.



Question السؤال

Was there + singular noun/ uncountable noun ....? هل كان هناك ...؟

- **A:** Was there a bank in this street?
  B: Yes, there was. **B:** No, there wasn't.

Were there + plural noun + ...? هل كان هناك ...؟

- **A:** Were there taps in ancient Egyptian houses?
  B: No, there weren't.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. .... (There were) any ovens in the ancient Egyptian kitchen?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Were there) لأنها صيغة سؤال.

2. There .... (were) any cars long ago.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (weren't) لأن (any) تأتي في الجملة المنفية.



Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Cushions .... of cotton. SB
   a) made b) is made c) are made d) are making
2. Are there .... printers? الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) some b) much c) little d) any
3. Curtains are .... of wool. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) make b) makes c) making d) made
4. .... lots of questions on the quiz.
   a) There were b) Were there c) Was there d) There was
5. In 2080, the driverless cars will be safer and there won't be .... accidents. البحيرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) a b) an c) some d) any
6. Most windows .... made of glass. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢
   a) was b) am c) are d) has
7. Can I have .... cup of tea, please?
   a) a b) an c) any d) some
8. There .... any cinemas hundreds of years ago.
   a) was b) wasn't c) were d) weren't
9. What are the shoes made ....?
   a) from b) of c) by d) in
10. I haven't seen .... lions when I was in Nigeria. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
    a) any b) some c) much d) a

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Books are made .... (in) paper. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
2. The lamp .... (made) of glass. WB
3. There .... (were) any bedrooms in ancient Egyptians' houses.
4. I .... (have) any plans for the weekend.
5. What .... (is) your trousers made of? أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
6. There aren't .... (some) books on the table. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣



D Skills



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.



1. Speaking

Saying what things are made of

الإخبار عمّا صنعت منه الأشياء

Situation	ما يقال في هذا الموقف	Response	جملة الرد



online

- What is the wallet made of? — مم تصنع حافظة النقود؟



It is made of leather. — تصنع من الجلد.

- What are the socks made of? — مم يصنع الجورب؟




They are made of wool. — يصنع من الصوف.

- What is the tablet made of? — مم يصنع الجهاز اللوحى (التابلت)؟



It is made of glass and plastic. — يصنع من الزجاج والبلاستيك.

- What is the statue made of? — مم يصنع التمثال؟



It is made of stone. — يصنع من الحجارة.

Speaking Exercise



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

Yara and Yasmin are talking about materials. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣

Yara : Hello Yasmin, are you good at science?

Yasmin : Hi Yara, (1).. .

Yara : (2)..?

Yasmin : Cars are made of metal.

Yara : Good. (3)..?

Yasmin : Yes, I enjoy making things.

Yara : What materials do you use to make a model plane?

Yasmin : (4).. . Are chairs made of glass?

Yara : (5).. .

2. Write it right



يهدف هذا الجزء الى تمكين الطالب
من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about houses in ancient Egypt

كيفية الكتابة عن المنازل فى مصر القديمة (الفرعونية)

- The ancient Egyptians lived thousands of years ago.
- They invented a lot of things.
- They lived in traditional houses.
- There were (وصف ما فى المنزل)
- There weren't (وصف ما لم يكن موجودًا)
- They were really great.

Writing tips

- The first sentence of a paragraph is the topic sentence.
- Other sentences are details that should support the topic sentence.
- الجملة الأولى فى الفقرة هى الجملة الرئيسية.
- الجمل الأخرى تعطى تفاصيل تعزز الموضوع.

Example

Houses in ancient Egypt

The ancient Egyptians lived thousands of years ago. They were clever and invented a lot of things. Their homes were really traditional. The walls of the houses were made of bricks. They were very strong. The doors were made of wood. There weren't any bedrooms. They slept on the roof of their houses because the weather was very hot at night. There was a kitchen in each home. They used to make delicious food. They ate broad beans for breakfast. They painted their homes white and the doors red. They were really great.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"Ancient Egyptian houses"

The ancient Egyptians were famous for their wonderful buildings.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

TEST YOURSELF



Unit 10 Lessons (1 & 2)



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهايه الكتاب

1. Where was Deir el-Medina?
   a) In Giza. b) In Aswan.
   c) In the Nile Valley. d) In ancient Egypt.
2. Where did the people there work?
   a) In the Valley of the Kings. b) In the Nile Valley.
   c) In the museum. d) In the temple.
3. Where did they get water?
   a) From the mountains. b) From the Nile Valley.
   c) From the hills. d) From the desert.
4. How many houses were there?
   a) Eighty. b) Sixty. c) Sixty-eight. d) Eighty-six.

2 Complete the following dialogue:

الغربية ٢٠٢٢

Adel and Amr are talking about Adel's things.

Adel : Do you want to look at my things, Amr?
Amr : (1).. .
Adel : (2)..?
Amr : I think these pencils are made of wood.
Adel : (3)..?
Amr : I think this wallet is made of leather.
Adel : What is your bag made of?
Amr : (4).. .
Adel : Is your tablet made of plastic?
Amr : (5).. .

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A car door is made of ....
   الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) cotton b) leather c) metal d) wood
2. We usually use .... to build a wall.
   a) cushions b) bricks c) ovens d) taps
3. The .... in the bathroom has hot and cold water.
   a) oven b) tap c) cushion d) tape
4. The opposite of "expensive" is "......................".
   a) costly b) chip c) chop d) cheap

5. In the future, the gardens will be on the .... أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
a) room b) tower c) roof d) floor

6. I wear .... to keep my feet warm.
a) scarfs b) ties c) socks d) trousers

7. Smartphones, tablets and laptops are kinds of new .... بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
a) technology b) houses c) subjects d) sports

8. What is this chair .... of?
a) made b) make c) makes d) making

9. Do you have .... umbrella? It's raining outside.
a) some b) any c) an d) a

10. There .... any food left after the party yesterday. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
a) wasn't b) didn't c) aren't d) isn't

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Was there.................................. (some) water on the floor yesterday?
2. My bed is made .... (from) wood. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
3. A: .... (Where) is the door made of? **B:** It's made of wood. المنيا ٢٠٢٣
4. There .... (was) no mistakes in your paragraph.

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on: أسيوط ٢٠٢٣

"Homes in ancient Egypt"

....

....

....

....

....

....

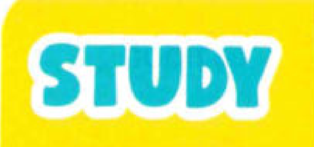
Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1 My school is very near to my home. It is 200 metres ....
a) way b) a way c) away d) ways

2 The wheels on the bike are ....
a) round b) circle c) a round d) around

3 I don't think there are .... more sweets left.
a) some b) an c) a d) any



Watch a video

Lessons 3 & 4



SB pages 38 - 40 | WB pages 95 & 96

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

accident (n)	حادث	produce (d) (v)	ينتج
architect (n)	مهندس معمارى	reason (n)	مبرر/سبب
circle (n)	دائرة	rectangle (n)	مستطيل
driverless car (n)	سيارة بدون سائق	rectangular (adj)	مستطيل الشكل
earthquake (n)	زلزال	robot (n)	إنسان آلى
electric car (n)	سيارة كهربائية	rocket (n)	صاروخ
guest (n)	ضيف	solar panels (n)	الألواح الشمسية
igloo (n)	كوخ الإسكيمو	triangle (n)	مثلث
parcel (n)	طرد	triangular (adj)	مثلث الشكل
pilot (n)	طيار	wind turbines (n)	توربينات الرياح
podcast (n)	بث صوتى/إذاعى	yurt (n)	مهجع (خيمة)

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

3D printer (n)	طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد	petrol (n)	بنزين
dream (n)	حلم	presenter (n)	مقدم برنامج
furniture (n)	أثاث	suddenly (adv)	فجأة
ordinary (adj)	عادى	temperature (n)	درجة الحرارة

Check Point

Choose and complete: presenter – car – earthquake – rocket

1 A/An .... happens when the Earth moves suddenly.

2 The .... of the show is good at English.

3 We can travel into space by ....

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

get > electricity	يحصل على كهرباء	make/produce > electricity	ينتج كهرباء
keep > cool/warm	يحافظ على الجو رطبًا/دافئًا	make > predictions	يقوم بتنبؤات

Prepositions حروف الجر

charger for	شاحن لـ	on the moon	على سطح القمر
drone for post	طائرة بدون طيار لتوصيل البريد	put up pictures	يعلق الصور
fall to the ground	يقع إلى الأرض	sign for	علامة لـ
look out of	ينظر من	welcome to	مرحبًا بك فى
move around	يتجول	work on a project for	يعمل فى مشروع لـ

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
cool	مائل للبرودة	warm	دافئ
heavy	ثقيل/غزير	light	خفيف
modern	حديث/عصرى	ancient/old	قديم

Check Point

Choose and complete: on – to – modern – keep

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر والكلمات وعكسها.

1. We wear heavy clothes to .... warm.
2. My father is working .... a great project at the moment.
3. My car is old. It isn't ....



Language Notes



ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 fast سريع/بسرعة (تستخدم كصفة أو ظرف)

- My new car is very fast. (صفة)
- My little brother walks very fast. (ظرف)

2 rectangle المستطيل / **rectangular** مستطيل الشكل

- Can you draw a rectangle, Bassem?
- Are round buildings quieter than rectangular buildings?

3 too + adj جدًا

- The box was too **heavy** for me to lift.

4 lots of = a lot of كثيرًا من (تأتى قبل الأسماء التى تعد والتى لا تعد)

- There will be lots of solar panels.





جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions التعريفات

cool	رطب/ بارد	a nice temperature that is cold, but not too cold
driverless car	سيارة بدون سائق	it is a car that does not need a driver, it uses a computer instead
earthquake	زلزال	when the ground suddenly moves
space	فضاء/مساحة فارغة	an area that you can move around
warm	دافئة	a nice temperature that is hot, but not too hot

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
ordinary	عادى	usual	عادى

Suffix اللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
driver (n) سائق	-less	تحويل الاسم إلى صفة	driverless (adj) بدون سائق
sudden (adj) مفاجئة	-ly	تحويل الصفة إلى حال/ظرف	suddenly (adv) فجأة

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 He has a driver-.................... car. It doesn't need a driver.
a) ness b) less
c) ful d) ly

2 This tea is .... hot to drink.
a) such b) so
c) to d) too

3 " ...." means an area that you can move around.
a) Rocket b) Space
c) Earthquake d) Driverless

4 Children need .... love and care.
a) lot of b) lots of
c) a lot d) lots

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 3

Pre-listening question: - What are your predictions for the future?

Listen to an interview with an architect, Dina Hassan. Which three sentences does Dina say about her house of the future? *SB page 38*

Interviewer Hello, welcome to our podcast[1]: Homes of the Future. Today, we have a special guest[2] – Dina Hassan. She is a famous architect. Hello, Dina.

Dina Hello.

Interviewer What does an architect do?



Dina Well, I design buildings such as houses or schools. I think about what materials to use and I draw pictures of it.

Interviewer What are you designing at the moment?

Dina I'm working on a project for houses for the future. They'll be a bit different to our houses today.

Interviewer In what ways will they be different?

Dina Well, I think we'll need more gardens in the future, but there won't be much space[3]. So the garden will be on the roof.

Interviewer A garden on the roof, great!

Dina And I think people will all use electric cars[4] in the future, so there'll be chargers[5] for electric cars next to the house.

Interviewer How will people get their electricity?

Dina There'll be lots of solar panels[6] and a wind turbine[7]. They'll make the electricity[8].

Interviewer Great. What else will be different in 2050?

Dina Well, I think there will be robots[9] to do all the housework.

Interviewer Fantastic! Will people use drones[10]?

(1) بث إذاعى
(2) ضيف
(3) فراغ / مساحة
(4) سيارات كهربائية
(5) شواحن كهربائية
(6) ألواح الطاقة الشمسية
(7) توربينات الرياح
(8) الكهرباء
(9) إنسان آلى
(10) طائرات بدون طيار

Dina	Yes, I think drones will bring food and parcels[11] to the house.	(11) طرود
Interviewer	What materials will the house be made of?	
Dina	We will use plastic bricks that are very strong. We'll also use a lot of glass and metal. Look, here's a picture of what it will look like.	
Interviewer	Oh, it's beautiful. Thank you very much, Dina for talking to us. I think I'll like living in this house!	





Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

parcel /pɑːʳsəl/ architect /ɑːʳkɪtekt/ electricity /ɪlektrɪsɪti/

Post-listening question:

- What else would you like to see in houses in the future?

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 3

- In your opinion, how long will the journey to the moon take in 2080?

Read and circle the correct words. *SB Page 39*

Holidays on the moon



In 2080, you won't go to the beach[1] for your holiday[2]. You will go to the moon[3]! There will be rockets[4] that leave Earth every day, and the journey will take only 12 hours. They will be very fast[5]!

Driverless cars



In 2080, people won't drive a car. We will all have a driverless car[6]. They will be safer[7] and there won't be any accidents[8]. Students will read a book or watch TV when a computer on the car drives them to school!

Post-reading question:

- Do you think life in 2080 will be interesting? Why?/Why not?

(1) شاطئ (2) إجازة (3) القمر (4) صواريخ
(5) سريع (6) سيارة بدون سائق (7) أكثر أمانًا (8) حوادث

Lesson 4

Pre-reading question:

- Why do you think a round building is cheaper to build?

Look at the photos. What shape are all the houses? Why do you think they are this shape?

SB Page 40

Round[1] houses around the world

Many traditional[2] houses in the past were round.

Today, many modern[3] houses are also round. Why is this? There are lots of reasons!

A round shape means the building is very strong. This is important when there is an earthquake[4] or in strong winds. Also, heavy snow or rain will fall from the roof.

A round house is also easier to keep warm or cool. It is also quieter[5] inside a round building than a building that is a rectangle[6] or square[7].

Finally, a round building uses fewer materials (so it is cheaper to make). It also has more space[8] inside. How fantastic!



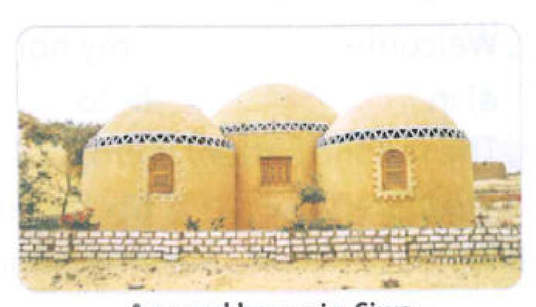
An igloo in Canada



A yurt in Mongolia



A round house in Burkina Faso



A round house in Siwa

Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

traditional /trəˈdɪʃənəl/
earthquake /ɜːrθkweɪk/

Post-reading question:

- Can you think of any disadvantages to a round house?

(1) مستدير	(2) تقليدى	(3) حديث	(4) زلزال
(5) أكثر هدوءًا	(6) مستطيل	(7) مربع	(8) فراغ / مساحة

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

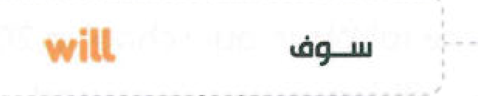
1. The box is .... and hard to lift. دمياط ٢٠٢٢
   a) busy b) heavy c) light d) easy
2. We can listen to .... on our phones or computers.
   a) podcasts b) turbines c) guests d) pilots
3. .... help us to produce electricity. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
   a) Robots b) Solar panels
   c) Swimming pools d) Cameras
4. ...., the car stopped working. We don't know what to do.
   a) Suddenly b) Slowly c) Carefully d) Nicely
5. A clever .... designed this wonderful building. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
   a) artist b) carpenter c) teacher d) architect
6. Cars that have no drivers are called .... cars. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
   a) traditional b) ancient c) easy d) driverless
7. .... people can still do great things.
   a) Ordinary b) Bad c) Unkind d) Heavy
8. Electric cars don't use ....
   a) panel b) electricity c) robot d) petrol
9. This is a round shape. It is a .... قنا ٢٠٢٣
   a) circle b) triangle c) square d) line
10. There was a/an .... on the road today, but nobody died.
    a) accident b) play c) party d) film
11. Some houses fell to the ground after the .... الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
    a) earthquake b) wave c) feast d) wind
12. Welcome .... my home. It's your second home.
    a) in b) to c) for d) on
13. The mobile battery is empty. I need a/an .... أزهر/القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
    a) MP3 b) charger c) printer d) pen
14. Wind .... use the wind to produce electricity. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
    a) printer b) panels c) robots d) turbines
15. The .... is a machine that can fly, but it doesn't have a pilot. الغربية ٢٠٢٣
    a) robot b) panel c) charger d) drone
16. .... predictions can help us prepare for the future.
    a) Doing b) Making c) Staying d) Watching

C Language

Making predictions about the future عمل تنبؤات عن المستقبل

- **We use "will" for making predictions about the future:**

نستخدم "will" بمعنى "سوف" لعمل تنبؤات عن المستقبل (بدون دليل):



With affirmative sentences: (مع الجمل المثبتة)

Subject + will + inf.

- There will be electric cars in the future.
- She will have a garden on the roof in the future.

Key words

tomorrow	غداً
next	القادم
in the future	فى المستقبل
in +	تاريخ فى المستقبل
soon	قريباً

With negative sentences: (مع الجمل المنفية)

Subject + won't (will not) + inf.

- There won't be robot teachers in the future.
- In 2080, people won't drive a car.

With questions: (مع الأسئلة)

Will + subject + inf. + ...?

Q. word + will + subject + inf. + ...?

- Will there be electric cars in the future?
- How will we go to work in 2050?

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 I think it .... (is going to) rain.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (will) لأنه تنبؤ فى المستقبل بدون دليل.

2 .... (He will) travel to France next week?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (Will he) لأنها صيغة سؤال.



Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We will all .... a driverless car in 2080. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) has b) having c) have d) had
2. I think we .... more robots in our school in 2050. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) using b) will use c) used d) use
3. In the future, there .... be a lot of solar panels. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
   a) were b) going c) are d) will
4. What will the houses .... like in the future? الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) look b) looked c) looks d) looking
5. Will there .... electric cars in the future? الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) are b) be c) is d) were
6. My parents .... let me stay up late on a school night. They think it is a bad thing.
   a) are b) aren't c) will d) won't
7. When will you .... football with me?
   a) play b) plays c) playing d) played
8. I hope we .... to the moon in the future. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) will go b) going to c) went d) going
9. I .... learning a new language next year.
   a) was starting b) start c) will start d) started
10. Omar .... travel to London tomorrow. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) is b) will c) has d) was

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. .... (You will) help me? الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
2. Houses for the future .... (are) different to ours today.
3. I think it will .... (rained) tomorrow. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
4. How .... (are) people get their electricity in the future?
5. What will life .... (been) like in the future? الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
6. The train will .... (taking) 3 hours to arrive in Alex. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

D Skills



Write it right



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب
من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about your future predictions

كيفية الكتابة عن تنبؤاتك المستقبلية

- In the future, we'll have a different life.
- We will travel to (المكان).
- We will have (أشياء).
- There will be (اختراعات).
- There won't be (أشياء تقليدية).
- I think life will be more exciting in the future.

Writing tips

- Use vocabulary that's relevant to the topic.
- You can brainstorm the vocabulary you will use before starting writing.
- استخدم المفردات التى تلائم الموضوع.
- يمكنك التفكير فى المفردات المناسبة قبل بدء الكتابة.

Example

To: roaa@gmail.com **From: donia@yahoo.com** **Subject: My predictions for the future**

Dear Roaa,

How are you? I'd like to tell you about my predictions for the future. Nowadays, we use modern technology more and more. So, I think everything will depend on computers in the future. We will have tiny computers in our clothes to keep us warm or cool. At school, I think computers will be our teachers, but we should always have teachers. I think we won't live in crowded cities; we will live on other planets. In the future, we will have small electric cars. They will be easy to drive in traffic. These cars won't use petrol. They will use electricity. They will be better for the environment. They will be very fast. I think life in the future will be completely different. What do you think?

Please, write back soon.

Yours,

Donia

Check Point

Write an email on how schools will be like in the future.

To : .... **From:** ....

Subject : ....

....

....

....

TEST YOURSELF

Take a test



Unit 10 Lessons (3 & 4)



1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

الشرقية ٢٠٢٣

Many traditional houses in the past were round. Today, many modern houses are also round. Why is this? There are lots of reasons! A round shape means that the building is very strong. This is important when there is an earthquake or strong wind. Also, heavy snow or rain will fall from the roof. A round house is also easier to keep warm or cool. It is also quieter inside a round house than a building that is a rectangle or a square. Finally, a round house uses fewer materials, so it is cheaper than other buildings. It also has space inside.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the best title for the passage?

....

2. What's your opinion about round houses?

....

3. Why is the round house cheaper than other buildings?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....
   a) roof b) rain c) snow house d) a round house
5. It's .... inside a round house.
   a) noisy b) quiet c) bad d) very cold
6. It's important for houses to be strong when there is a/an ....
   a) planes b) rocks c) run d) earthquake

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... can do many things for us. Some of them can talk. (WB)
   a) Rockets b) Robots c) Turbines d) Winds
2. To be .... means to be in a nice temperature that is hot but not too hot. (SB)
   a) warm b) cool c) hot d) cold
3. In the future, driverless cars will be safer and there won't be .... الجيزة ٢٠٢٢
   a) architects b) houses c) engineers d) accidents
4. We use .... panels to make electricity using the sun. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) space b) robot c) drone d) solar
5. .... is a good house for people who have snowy weather all year. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) A yurt b) A cave c) An igloo d) A tent

6. Wind turbines .... electricity by using the power of the wind.

a) stay b) take c) produce d) do

7. In the future, there will be .... that leave Earth every day. SB

a) solar panels b) rockets c) rackets d) robots

8. My mum says, "We .... go to the club today, we'll go to the funfair."

a) will b) are c) won't d) aren't

9. Will it snow tomorrow or will it .... sunny?

a) being b) been c) is d) be

10. My teacher .... ask us to do a project next week.

a) will b) has c) is d) was

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Will every student .... (has) a laptop in the future? قنا ٢٠٢٣
2. My little brother won't .... (stops) crying.
3. My cousins .... (will) travel to Alex next holiday. They'll travel to Hurghada.
4. My younger brother .... (is) twelve next week.

4 Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words on your future predictions. Your name is Eslam and your email address is eslam@gmail.com. Your friend's name is Kamal and his email address is kamal@yahoo.com.

To : .... **From:** ....

Subject : ....

....

....

....

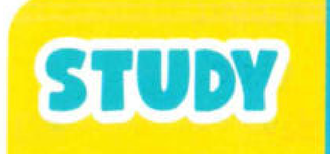
....

Challenging Questions

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1. I don't think she .... (come) tonight.
2. I .... (visit) the Eiffel Tower in Paris someday.
3. I think it .... (rains). It's cloudy.





Lessons 5 & 6



SB pages 41 - 43 | WB pages 97-99

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary / المفردات الرئيسية

anyway (adv)	على أى حال	famous (adj)	مشهور
climb (ed) (v)	يتسلق	flying car (n)	سيارة طائرة
creative (adj)	مبدع/مبتكر	hope (d) (v)	يأمل
describe (d) (v)	يصف	imagination (n)	خيال
diagram (n)	رسم توضيحى/بيانى	person (n)	شخص
event (n)	حدث	size (n)	حجم
explain (ed) (v)	يشرح	task (n)	مهمة

Additional Vocabulary / المفردات الإضافية

change (d) (v)	يغير	idea (n)	فكرة
decide (d) (v)	يقرر	plan (ned) (v)	يخطط
electric light (n)	مصباح كهربائى	writing (n)	كتابة

Check Point

Choose and complete: describe – changed – task – creative

1 Basmala is very good at writing stories. She's very ....

2 Can you .... your room?

3 My brother .... his job three times.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions / التعبيرات اللغوية

draw >	ideas	يرسم أفكار	move >	house	ينتقل إلى منزل جديد
have >	fun	يمرح	ride >	a bike	يركب دراجة
make >	a plan	يعد خطة	start >	school	يبدأ الدراسة
make >	ideas work	تجعل الأفكار قابلة للتنفيذ	was/were >	born	وُلد

Prepositions / حروف الجر

compare with	يقارن بـ	play for	يلعب لدى
in detail	بالتفصيل	write down	يدون

Check Point

Choose and complete: down – had – made – for

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

1. We .... some fun last weekend.
2. I write .... everything the teacher says.
3. Cristiano Ronaldo plays .... Al-Nassr Saudi Club.

Language Notes



ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.



1 Saying years

قراءة الأعوام



Years

1 9 8 4

nineteen eighty-four

تنقسم الأعوام عادة إلى جزأين:

- **1066** ten sixty-six
- **1652** sixteen fifty-two
- **1941** nineteen forty-one
- **1865** eighteen sixty-five

When a year ends in a number between 01 and 09, then that last part is pronounced as the name of the letter O + number.

- عندما ينتهي عام بين الأرقام (٠١-٠٩) ينطق الصفر نطق الحرف «O».

- **1709** seventeen O nine
- **1901** nineteen O one

When a year ends in 00 (e.g. 1600), then the year is said as the digits before 00, and then hundred.

- يقرأ الرقم المنتهي بـ (٠٠) كالتالي:

- **1300** thirteen hundred
- **1800** eighteen hundred

2000 - 2010

two thousand and + number.

- **2001** two thousand and one.
- **2005** two thousand and five.
- **2008** two thousand and eight.

After 2010

- For the first year after 2010, you may hear two different versions.

- الأعوام التى تلى ٢٠١٠ تقرأ بطريقتين:

- **2012** two thousand and twelve.
- **2012** twenty twelve.



- لا نقوم بجمع الكلمات (thousand / hundred) فى حالة وجود رقم قبلها.

- two thousand and twenty.
- seventeen hundred.

2 Football teams فرق كرة القدم

Basel	بازل	El Mokawloon	المقاولون
Chelsea	تشيلسى	Liverpool	ليفربول
African Footballer of the Year	أفضل لاعب إفريقى للعام	the European Champions League	دورى أبطال أوروبا





جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
famous	مشهور	well-known	معروف
hope	يأمل	wish	يتمنى

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
create (v)	يبدع/يبتكر	-ive	تحويل الفعل لصفة	creative (adj)	مبدع/مبتكر
imagine (v)	يتخيل	-ation	تحويل الفعل لأسم	imagination (n)	خيال

Similar spelling - Different meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
hope	يأمل	hop	يحجل/ يقفز
plan	يخطط	plane	طائرة

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

B Reading & Listening Skills

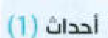
Lesson 5

Pre-listening question:

- What's the most important event in your life?

 **Listen to Basel and complete the timeline.** *SB page 41*

Basel Hi, I'm Basel. These are the important events(1) in my life.



(1) أحداث (2) جبل كلمنجارو (3) يأمل

I was born in 2007 in Alexandria. I started school in 2012. I liked my school! I learned to ride a bike in 2013. I love my bike!





In 2018, we moved to a new house. We live in Cairo now.
In 2019, we went on holiday to the Red Sea. It was amazing!
In 2023, I will climb Mount Kilimanjaro(2) – I hope(3) so anyway!





 **Note:**

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

important /ɪmpɔːˈtənt/ Kilimanjaro /kɪlɪmənˈdʒɑːrəʊ/

Post-listening question:

- From your point of view, what's the most important event in Basel's life?

Lesson 5

Pre-listening question:

- What do you know about Mohamed Salah?



Listen to the life of Mohamed Salah and complete the dates.

WB page 97





Mohamed Salah was born in Cairo in 1992. He started playing football for El Mokawloon in 2010. He then moved to[1] Switzerland to play for Basel in 2012.

(1) انتقل إلى
(2) لاعب كرة قدم إفريقى
(3) دورى أبطال أوربا





In 2014, he went to London to play for Chelsea. Three years later, in 2017, he went to play for Liverpool. Mohamed Salah was also African Footballer[2] of the Year in 2017, and in 2019, he won the European Champions League[3] with Liverpool.



Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:

European /ˌjʊərəˈpiːən/

Post-listening question:

- If you met Mohamed Salah, what would you say to him?



PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. He is a famous writer because he has .... ideas. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) busy b) fast c) expensive d) creative
2. He .... to buy a new car after he had had money. الغربية ٢٠٢٣
   a) divided b) decided c) explained d) kept
3. " ...." means using the mind to think creatively. الأقصر ٢٠٢٣
   a) Project b) Idea c) Imagination d) Champion
4. People remember important .... that happened in their lives.
   a) notes b) events c) tasks d) diagrams
5. The teacher .... the maths problem very well.
   a) explained b) moved c) changed d) decided
6. The athlete .... to win the game.
   a) changes b) describes c) hopes d) climbs
7. The cat .... onto the table to get to the food.
   a) changed b) described c) climbed d) went
8. The .... shows the different parts of a flower.
   a) event b) diagram c) task d) idea
9. Mohamed Salah won the .... Champions League with Liverpool.
   a) African b) European c) Arab d) American
10. Have you got any .... about how to build a new house?
    a) ideas b) planes c) materials d) objects
11. Mr Waleed taught us how to plan a creative writing ....
    a) task b) mask c) ask d) tusk
12. In the future, we will have .... cars that can travel in the air.
    a) common b) flying c) riding d) driving
13. I made a .... to go to the park with my friends today.
    a) plane b) plan c) idea d) writing
14. That shirt is a bit small. I need a large ....
    a) size b) prize c) plan d) seize
15. Describe your house .... detail.
    a) of b) at c) by d) in



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب
من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.



Speaking

How to write your timeline كيفية تمثيل أحداثك الهامة على خط زمنى

- I was born in 2007. - ولدت عام ٢٠٠٧.
- I started school in 2013. - بدأت الدراسة عام ٢٠١٣.
- I learnt to ride a bike in 2014. - تعلمت ركوب الدراجة عام ٢٠١٤.
- I moved to a new house in 2016. - انتقلت إلى منزل جديد عام ٢٠١٦.

Speaking Exercise



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

▶ **Ahmed and Hassan are talking about Mohamed Salah.** المنوفية ٢٠٢٣

Ahmed: Do you know Mohamed Salah?

Hassan: (1).. .

Ahmed: (2)..?

Hassan: He was born in 1992.

Ahmed: (3)..?

Hassan: He plays in England.

Ahmed: Can he score many goals?

Hassan: (4).. .

Ahmed: I think he is kind and helpful.

Hassan: (5).. .

Writing Skills

How to plan a creative writing task كيف تخطط لمهمة كتابة إبداعية

1. First, think of as many ideas as you can. What will the house look like? What will it be made of? What will be different about the houses of today? You can write down or draw your ideas. Use your imagination and have fun!
2. Then, decide which of your ideas are the best. Keep the other ideas for another time.
3. Finally, think about your best ideas in more detail. How can you make the ideas work? Make a plan (maybe in a diagram or drawing). You can change any ideas that don't work.

TEST YOURSELF

Take a test



Unit 10 Lessons (5 & 6)



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Adam asks Fareed about his favourite sport.

سوهاج ٢٠٢٣

Adam : What's your favourite sport?

Fareed : (1).. .

Adam : Where do you watch football matches?

Fareed : (2).. .

Adam : (3)..?

Fareed : Yes, I can score goals.

Adam : Do you like Mohammed Salah?

Fareed : (4).. .

Adam : (5)..?

Fareed : He was born in 1992.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The writer used his .... to write this story.
   a) task b) imagination c) light d) diagram
2. I hope the teacher will .... this difficult point again.
   a) explain b) complain c) tell d) speak
3. My .... is to write a paragraph about my future house.
   a) work b) job c) task d) event
4. This year is two .... and twenty four.
   a) thousands b) thousand c) hundred d) hundreds
5. The electric .... in my room helps me to read at night.
   a) light b) diagram c) idea d) bike
6. The team .... fun after winning the game.
   a) sat b) did c) had d) moved
7. We are going to .... house next month.
   a) make b) move c) ride d) start
8. .... you go to the museum with me next weekend?
   a) Have b) Do c) Are d) Will

9. .... any problems with the experiment?

a) Were there b) There were c) Was there d) There was

10. I don't have .... experience in tourism.

a) some b) a lot c) any d) a

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. What are these shoes .... (make) of?
2. Can you take .... (picture) of us with your camera?
3. .... (We will) live on the moon? الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
4. There .... (were) a lot of snow on the ground this morning.

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your favourite sports star" أسيوط ٢٠٢٣

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب.

1 For my project, I want to know when everyone in our class .... born.

a) is b) was c) are d) were

2 My best friend has a kind and funny ....

a) character b) person c) diagram d) plane

3 These are the important .... in my life.

a) experiments b) experience c) experiences d) event

Review on Unit 10

Vocabulary

a driverless car	سيارة بدون سائق
bricks	الطوب
curtains	ستائر
temperature	درجة الحرارة
cushions	وسائد
the Nile Valley	وادى النيل
diagram	رسم توضيحى
earthquake	زلزال
village	قرية
electric car	سيارة كهربائية
wind turbines	توربينات الرياح
oven	فرن
square	مربع
plastic	البلاستيك
stone	الحجر
sofa	كنبة
wood	الخشب
wool	الصوف
solar panels	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية
teaspoon	ملعقة شاى
creative	مبدع
technology	التكنولوجيا

Language

1. is/ are made of:

Form

- The sofa is made of leather.
- Cushions are made of cotton.

Questions

What+ is/ are + الشئ + made of?

- What is the sofa made of?
- What are the cushions made of?

2. There was/ There were:

- There was a kitchen in his house.
- There wasn't any juice in the fridge.
- There were boats in ancient Egypt.
- There weren't any bedrooms at their houses.

3. Making predictions about the future:

Subject + will/ won't + inf.

- There will be electric cars in the future.
- There won't be robot teachers in the future.

Skills

1. Saying what things are made of:

1. What is the wallet made of?
   - It is made of leather.
2. What are the socks made of?
   - They are made of wool.
3. What is the statue made of?
   - It is made of stone.
4. What are the teaspoons made of?
   - They are made of metal.
5. What is the toy made of?
   - It is made of plastic.

2. How to write your timeline:
كيفية تمثيل أحداثك الهامة على خط زمنى

- I was born in 2007.
- I started school in 2013.
- I learnt to ride a bike in 2014.
- I moved to a new house in 2016.



Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 10







A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. When will we have electric cars?
   a) In the past. b) In the future. c) In the present. d) Next week.
2. What will electric cars use?
   a) Petrol. b) Gas. c) Electricity. d) Water.
3. **A:** Will it be hard to drive electric cars in traffic? **B:** No, it will be ....
   a) difficult b) easy c) different d) hard
4. What will electric cars be better for?
   a) The environment. b) The land. c) The air. d) The park.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue: دمياط ٢٠٢٢

Sama is telling Aya about her new pencil case.

Sama : I bought this new pencil case last week.
Aya : Wow! It's so nice. What's it made of?
Sama : (1).. .
Aya : (2)..?
Sama : I bought it from Abeer's bookshop.
Aya : (3)..?
Sama : It's twenty pounds.
Aya : (4).. .
Sama : I can come with you. Let's go in the evening.
Aya : (5).. .



C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: أسوان ٢٠٢٣

The ancient Egyptians were very **powerful**. They built tombs to be buried in. They thought that the king was a god. They didn't wear many clothes. Most men wore a kind of short skirt, but women used to wear long dresses.

Women didn't go out to work. They stayed at home. Most men were farmers. Their children did the same jobs as their parents. The girls stayed at home with

their mothers. They learned to look after their families. The boys worked with their fathers. They only went to school if they wanted to learn how to do new jobs. Children used to run, jump and play games. Their toys were made of wood.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the title of the passage?

....

2. Why did the girls stay at home?

....

3. Do you like life in Ancient Egypt? Why/Why not?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The ancient Egyptians thought that their king was a ....

a) father b) god c) prince d) leader

5. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to ....

a) sons b) children c) men d) women

6. The word "**powerful**" means ....

a) weak b) strong c) bad d) lazy

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A .... gives us light when we turn it on.

a) tab b) tap c) lamp d) lamb

2. My new jumper is made of .... It makes me warm. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣

a) wool b) wood c) wall d) whale

3. He is a/an .... He designs buildings. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣

a) footballer b) architect c) musician d) dentist

4. Scientists use the sun and wind to .... electricity.

a) do b) produce c) draw d) guess

5. Yesterday, the ground suddenly moved because there was a/an .... بني سويف ٢٠٢٣

a) earthquake b) storm c) rain d) sun

6. When someone reads a story in a book, they use their ....

a) diagram b) imagination c) task d) project

7. .... cars can go without a driver. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

a) Driverless b) Electric c) Old d) Usual

8. My socks .... of wool.

a) is making b) made c) is made d) are made

9. I read .... interesting book last week.

a) a b) an c) any d) some

10. You can't buy .... posters in this shop.

a) any b) a c) some d) an

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Most furniture .... (make) of wood. البحيرة ٢٠٢٢
2. English is .... (any) easy language. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
3. .... (Was) there any famous people in your town last year? سوهاج ٢٠٢٢
4. .... (Will they) arrive at about 6 pm.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your house in the future"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Solve more exams	Well done!

Monthly Models on Units 9&10







هذه النماذج ستساعدك فى التدرب على الاختبارات الشهرية.

March Model 1 on Unit 9

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Maher and Mustafa are discussing what they are going to do after work.

Maher : Hi, Mustafa! Do you want to go out after work?
Mustafa : (1).. . What shall we do?
Maher : I don't know. What do you have in mind?
Mustafa : (2)..?
Maher : I'm not sure about that. How about eating at the new restaurant?
Mustafa : (3).. . I hear they have amazing dishes.
Maher : Me, too. (4).. .
Mustafa : Okay, fine. We can go there early.
Maher : That's good. (5)..?
Mustafa : We can meet at three.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I like .... in the mountains.
   a) kayaking b) sailing c) trekking d) diving
2. Sunglasses .... us from the hot sun.
   a) get b) hurt c) dry d) protect
3. There are many .... of transport in Cairo. You can see cars, buses, trains and so on.
   a) forms b) farms c) lines d) challenges
4. I put all my photos in a photo ....
   a) book b) note c) album d) guide
5. It's Basmala's birthday next week, so we're going .... her some flowers.
   a) buy b) buying c) to buying d) to buy
6. I told him .... that I could do it
   a) herself b) himself c) itself d) myself

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Look! The bus is going .... (leave)! Run or we'll miss it.
2. I was tired, so I gave .... (himself) a break.
3. .... (Hany is) going to read this book?
4. You can do the washing up .... (himself).

March Model  on Unit 10



1 Complete the following dialogue:

5

Wafaa is asking Sara about her new shoes.

Wafaa : I like your new shoes. What are they made of?

Sara : (1).. .

Wafaa : (2)..?

Sara : I bought them last week.

Wafaa : Who bought them for you?

Sara : (3).. .

Wafaa : (4)..?

Sara : He bought them because it was my birthday.

Wafaa : Great. Can you come with me to buy a pair for me?

Sara : (5).. .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

6

1. The .... of the houses were made of bricks.
   a) holes b) walls c) floors d) roofs
2. People got their water from ....
   a) spoons b) sofas c) lamps d) taps
3. My jacket is made of ....
   a) plastic b) wood c) metal d) leather
4. In winter, people wear heavy clothes to .... warm.
   a) take b) make c) have d) keep
5. Chairs .... wood or metal.
   a) made b) are made c) are made of d) are making of
6. How .... we travel in the future?
   a) do b) did c) are d) will

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

4

1. Most bottles .... (made) of plastic.
2. That was .... (any) easy exercise.
3. .... (Was) there any famous people in your town last year?
4. .... (Will they) arrive at about 6 pm.



Unit 11

On land and sea

Objectives of the unit

Reading	A paragraph about sea life; a leaflet about plastic pollution; *The Old Man and the Sea*
Writing	Writing rules; writing an advertisement; a text explaining a beach clean-up day
Listening	A talk at a nature reserve
Speaking	Talking about saving the environment
Language	Zero conditional; must/mustn't; should/shouldn't; asking for, giving and sequencing instructions
Life Skills	Collaboration; setting clear goals



Tapescript




Lessons 1 & 2



SB pages 44 - 47 | WB pages 100 & 101

A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

environment (n)	البيئة	poisonous (adj)	سام
flat (adj)	مسطح/مستوٍ	save (d) (v)	ينقذ/يحفظ
ocean (n)	محيط	shell (n)	صَدَفَة
necessary (adj)	ضرورى	tail (n)	ذيل
planet (n)	كوكب		

Sea animals الحيوانات البحرية

coral reef (n)	الشعب المرجانية	snail (n)	حلزون
jellyfish (n)	قنديل البحر	stingray (n)	السمكة اللادغة
octopus (n)	أخطبوط	turtle (n)	سلحفاة (تقضى معظم الوقت فى الماء)
shark (n)	سمكة القرش	whale (n)	حوت

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

clean air (n)	هواء نظيف	recycle (d) (v)	يعيد تصنيع/تدوير
piece (n)	قطعة	shopping bag (n)	حقيبة تسوق
laugh (ed) (v)	يضحك	tortoise (n)	سلحفاة (تقضى معظم الوقت على اليابسة)

Check Point

Choose and complete: Sharks - Lions - recycle - save

1. We should .... the planet we live in.
2. .... are the most dangerous sea animals.
3. To .... is to use things again.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

fall	> asleep	يغفو/يشعر بنعاس
look	> left/right	ينظر يسارًا/يمينًا
lose	> a tooth	يفقد سنًا

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية: (n) = noun | (v) = verb | (adj) = adjective | (adv) = adverb | (prep) = preposition | (conj) = conjunction

Prepositions — حروف الجر

allow (to + inf.)	يسمح بأن	on beaches	على الشواطئ
dangerous for	خطر لـ	on land	على اليابسة
die from	يموت بسبب	run across	يجرى عبر
get rid of	يتخلص من	take off	يخلع (ملابس)
go around	يدور حول	throw into	يرمى بداخل
in danger	فى خطر	turn to	يتحول إلى
jump out of	يقفز خارج		

Check Point

Choose and complete: at - in - out of - fell

1 My little cousin .... asleep during the film.

2 Most fish swim away when they are .... danger.

3 Mona jumped .... the water because it was very cold.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs — تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.
bite	يعض	bit	bitten
lose	يفقد	lost	lost
sting	يلدغ	stung	stung
throw away	يرمى/يتخلص من	threw away	thrown away

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
dangerous	خطير	safe	آمن
die	يموت	live	يعيش
hard	صلب/جامد	soft	لين/طرى
laugh	يضحك	cry	يبكى






Definitions
التعريفات

environment	البيئة	where we live
recycle	يعيد تدوير/تصنيع	a verb which means use again
rubbish	القمامة	things we do not need, like old paper
throw away	يرمى/يتخلص من	to get rid of what you do not need

Words and Synonyms
الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
dangerous	خطير	serious	خطير
necessary	ضرورى	essential	ضرورى

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
environ (v)	يحيط	-ment	تحويل الفعل لاسم	environment (n)	البيئة
poison (n)	سم	-ous	تحويل الاسم لصفة	poisonous (adj)	سام

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
re-	تعني الإعادة مرة أخرى	cycle (n)	دورة	recycle (v)	يعيد تدوير/ تصنيع


هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

Similar spelling - Different meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
planet	كوكب	plant	نبات
save	ينقذ/يحفظ	safe	آمن
tail	ذيل	tale	حكاية/قصة

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 1

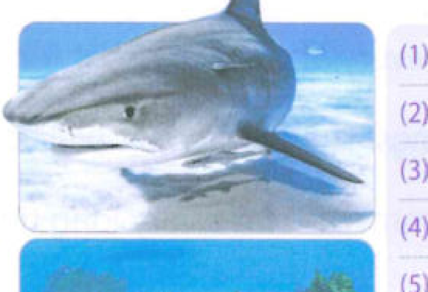
Pre-reading question:

- Which sea animal do you think is the most dangerous? Why?

Read and complete the text with a word from the photos. *SB page 45*

Dangers of the sea

The shark(1) is one of the most dangerous sea animals(2) in the ocean(3).
If it loses a tooth, a new one grows. A shark uses more than 20,000 teeth in its life!



So how do fish and sea animals protect(4) themselves from danger(5)?

A stingray(6) is a big, flat fish and it lives in the coral reef(7). If it knows a shark is coming, it jumps out of the water!

A sea turtle(8) has a hard shell to protect it. Other animals can swim very fast – the octopus(9) has got eight legs to help it!

(1) سمكة القرش
(2) حيوانات بحرية
(3) محيط
(4) يحمي
(5) الخطر
(6) السمكة اللادغة
(7) الشعب المرجانية
(8) سلحفاة بحرية
(9) الأخطبوط
(10) قنديل البحر
(11) سام
(12) الحيتان

Some sea life, like the jellyfish,(10) is poisonous(11). It stings you when you touch it.

What about the whales(12)? These big, heavy animals hit with their big tails!








Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

stingray /stɪŋreɪ/ poisonous /pɔɪzənəs/

Post-reading question:

- Why do you think some sea animals are poisonous?

Pre-reading question:

- What is made of plastic in your classroom?

Read the text and check your answers to Exercise 2. *SB page 46*

WE MUST SAVE OUR PLANET!

(1) البيئة
(2) يعيد تصنيع
(3) يرمى
(4) قمامة
(5) كوكب



Plastic is everywhere! We use it for many different things. The problem is, plastic stays in the environment[1] for a very long time.

Some of the plastic people find on beaches is about 100 years old! We can recycle[2] some plastic, but most of it goes into the ocean. Plastic is poisonous when animals eat it.



Every year, more than 100,000 sea animals and birds die from plastic. We must try to use other materials – paper and glass, for example – because these are easier to recycle.

When we use a plastic shopping bag, we mustn't throw away[3] these bags in rivers.

It will take a long time to clean all the plastic rubbish[4] from the beaches and the ocean. But we mustn't stop trying to help our planet[5]!



تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

environment /ɪnvaɪrənmənt/ ocean /oʊʃən/

Post-reading question:

- Why do you think there is a lot of plastic in the environment?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



▶ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Red Sea is famous for its .... reefs. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
   a) moral b) coral c) flat d) corn
2. Whales hit .... their big tails.
   a) by b) with c) on d) in
3. A sea turtle has a hard .... to protect itself. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) shell b) ship c) shelf d) shore
4. Mum said it's .... to eat our vegetables to stay healthy.
   a) hard b) poisonous c) necessary d) dangerous
5. Earth is one of eight .... that go around the sun. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) planes b) plans c) plants d) planets
6. Don't throw away those glass bottles. We can .... them. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
   a) redo b) grow c) rewrite d) recycle
7. A Jellyfish .... you when you touch it. الغربية ٢٠٢٣
   a) hides b) stings c) covers d) protects
8. Most snakes are .... You must be careful.
   a) poisonous b) helpful c) safe d) friendly
9. A .... has big teeth. It is a dangerous sea animal. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) snake b) turtle c) shark d) jellyfish
10. Trees are very good for our .... because they give us clean air. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
    a) moon b) space c) stars d) environment
11. To throw away something is to .... it.
    a) get out b) get rid of c) get into d) get off
12. My little sister .... her tooth while eating nuts.
    a) died b) lost c) fell d) missed
13. The octopus swims very fast when it's .... danger. الأقصر ٢٠٢٣
    a) out b) at c) on d) in
14. Things which we don't need like old paper are called .... SB
    a) subjects b) rubbish c) tails d) shells
15. You can find whales in .... أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
    a) lakes b) deserts c) hills d) oceans
16. The shark is dangerous because it can .... with its teeth.
    a) bite b) sting c) climb d) sing

C Language



1 The present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Form التكوين

تذكر أن المضارع البسيط يستخدم للتعبير عن الحقائق الثابتة والعادات، وهو يتكون من:

I/ We/ You/ They/ اسم جمع + inf.
He/ She/ It/ اسم مفرد + inf. + (s/es/ies)

- We clean our teeth every day.
- Sara helps her mother in the kitchen.

وينفى المضارع البسيط بـ:

Subject + don't/doesn't + inf.

- I don't like sweets.
- Ola doesn't like fish.

2 "If" Zero conditional حالة "If" الصفرية

Form التكوين

Present simple مضارع بسيط	>	Present simple مضارع بسيط	>	If/When
Present simple مضارع بسيط	>	if/when	>	Present simple مضارع بسيط

Usage الاستخدام

We use the zero conditional to talk about:

- نستخدم حالة الشرط الصفرية للتعبير عن:

١- فعل يحدث دائماً عند حدوث فعل آخر.

- If it rains, we get water. = We get water if it rains.

٢- حدث فى المضارع وما يترتب عليه من نتائج.

- If/When I'm tried, I go to bed. = I go to bed if/when I'm tired.

٣- للتعبير عن حقائق علمية.

- If you heat ice, it melts.



- عند وجود كلمة تدل على المضارع البسيط (often – usually – always) فى جملة جواب الشرط يتم استخدام الحالة الصفرية.

- When/If I've a test, I always **revise** well.



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. When we heat ice, it .... (turn) into water.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (turns) لأنها حقيقة علمية والفاعل it مفرد.

2. Sama always .... (help) her brother with his homework.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (helps) لأنها فى زمن المضارع البسيط لوجود always والفاعل Sama اسم مفرد.

3 must/mustn't - should/shouldn't

Obligation الإلزام

Subject + must + inf. يجب أن	Subject + mustn't + inf. يجب ألا
We use (must) to talk about things that are necessary to do. - تستخدم (must) بمعنى «يجب أن» للتعبير عن الأشياء التى من الضرورى أن تحدث. • You **must study** your lessons hard. • We **must drive** carefully.	**We use (mustn't) to talk about things that are necessary not to do.** - تستخدم (mustn't) بمعنى «يجب ألا» للتعبير عن الأشياء التى من الضرورى ألا تحدث. • We **mustn't throw** rubbish into the ocean. • We **mustn't drive** too fast.

Advice النصيحة

Subject + should + inf. ينبغى أن	Subject + shouldn't + inf. ينبغى ألا
We use (should) to talk about things that are a good idea to do. - نستخدم (should) للحديث عن الأشياء التى ينبغى علينا فعلها. • We **should recycle** more materials. • We **should help** poor people.	**We use (shouldn't) to talk about things that are a good idea not to do.** - نستخدم (shouldn't) للحديث عن الأشياء التى لا ينبغى علينا فعلها. • We **shouldn't use** plastic bags just once. • We **shouldn't** sleep late.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Students must .... (speaking) quietly in the library.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (speak) لأن must يتبعها فعل فى المصدر.

2. We .... (shouldn't) stop eating fast food.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (should) لأنها نصيحة من الأفضل أن نفعلها.

3. You .... (must) park your car here. It isn't allowed.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (mustn't) لأنها تعبر عن الإلزام بعدم فعل شىء (التحريم).



Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If I feel hungry, I always .... healthy snacks. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) will eat b) eats c) ate d) eat
2. You .... look left and right when you cross the road.
   a) must b) mustn't c) shall d) can't
3. If you put ice outside a freezer, it .... دمياط ٢٠٢٣
   a) melt b) melts c) melting d) melted
4. You .... study hard to get full marks. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) mustn't b) should c) shouldn't d) doesn't
5. I wear my jacket .... it is cold. الغربية ٢٠٢٣
   a) without b) to c) if d) but
6. You .... swim here! It is dangerous! بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣
   a) should b) can c) mustn't d) may
7. We .... work hard to pass our exams. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
   a) has to b) mustn't c) won't d) must
8. You stay healthy .... you eat healthy food and do sports.
   a) and b) but c) while d) when
9. We .... share our ideas with others; it's a good idea to do so. الأقصر ٢٠٢٣
   a) should b) shouldn't c) need d) don't have to
10. We .... talk with our mouths full of food; we must be polite.
   a) can b) have c) must d) mustn't

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. What time should I .... (comes) to your house? الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
2. You .... (must) be afraid to ask questions.
3. If you heat water, it .... (boil). أسوان ٢٠٢٣
4. You should .... (are) helpful to others. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
5. When you follow the rules, you............................ (stays) safe.
6. You mustn't .... (playing) games on roads. دمياط ٢٠٢٣

D Skills





Describing a sea animal وصف حيوان بحرى

Description الوصف **Reply** الرد

online

It can swim fast. It's got eight legs.
يمكنه السباحة بسرعة. لديه ثمانية أرجل.

An octopus! - الأخطبوط.

It has a hard shell to protect it. لديها صدفة صلبة لحمايتها.

A turtle! - السلحفاة البحرية.

If it knows a shark is coming, it jumps out of the water!
إذا علمت بقدوم سمكة قرش، تقفز خارج الماء.

A stingray! - السمكة اللادغة!

It is one of the most dangerous sea animals in the ocean.
إنه واحد من أخطر الحيوانات البحرية فى المحيط.

A shark! - سمكة القرش!

Speaking Exercise



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

▶ **Omar and Taha are talking about sea animals.**

Omar : Hi, Taha. Do you like sea animals?

Taha : (1).. . They are so cool.

Omar : (2)..?

Taha : My favourite sea animal is the dolphin. What about you?

Omar : (3).. .

Taha : A sea turtle! What other sea animals do you like?

Omar : (4).. .

Taha : (5)..?

Omar : The octopus has got eight legs.

2. Write it right



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about our environment
كيفية الكتابة عن بيئتنا

- It is very important to look after our environment.
- We must keep it clean.
- We must (الأشياء التى ينبغى فعلها).
- We mustn't (الأشياء التى لا ينبغى فعلها).
- We should try to recycle old things.
- We should teach our children how to keep our environment clean and healthy.

Writing tips

Make sure you are writing in the right tense. The prompt will guide you.
تأكد من استخدام الزمن المناسب فى الكتابة. (تعرف عليه من خلال العنوان).

Example

The environment

It's important to have a healthy life. The environment is the place where we all live. We must keep it clean to be healthy. We mustn't throw plastic in the ocean. When plastic stays in the environment, it causes a big problem. Some of the plastic is about 100 years old! Every year, many sea animals die from plastic. We must try to use other materials like paper and glass. We must use our shopping bags more than once. We mustn't throw them away. We mustn't stop trying to find ways to help our planet. We must keep our planet clean. We must save it!

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"Our planet"

We must keep our planet clean. ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Take a test

TEST YOURSELF



Unit 11 Lessons (1 & 2)



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. The text is about the .... بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) shark b) stingray c) whale d) dolphin
2. What happens if the shark loses a tooth?
   a) It loses another one. b) It uses fewer teeth.
   c) A new one grows. d) It loses its life.
3. How many teeth does the shark use in its life?
   a) 1,000. b) 4,000. c) 20,000. d) 2000.
4. The most dangerous sea animal is the ....
   a) dolphin b) lion c) shark d) octopus

2 Complete the following dialogue: الفيوم ٢٠٢٢

Hatem is asking Nader about some rules.

Hatem: Do you know what we mustn't do on roads?

Nader : (1).. .

Hatem: And what must we do while crossing the roads?

Nader : (2).. .

Hatem: (3)..?

Nader : At school, we must listen carefully to our teachers.

Hatem: And what mustn't we do in the classroom?

Nader : (4).. .

Hatem: (5)..?

Nader : In the library, we must be quiet.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A shell on the back of a/an .... is to protect it. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
   a) turtle b) octopus c) shark d) whale
2. .... are colourful homes to many sea animals.
   a) Sharks b) Whales c) Snails d) Coral reefs
3. It is important for people to have .... air and stay healthy.
   a) poisonous b) clean c) hard d) dangerous
4. Is the sun a star or a/an ....? WB
   a) ocean b) desert c) plant d) planet
5. Mum always takes a .... bag when she goes to the market.
   a) snail b) flat c) recycle d) shopping

6. We need to .... of the trash in the house.

a) get rid b) save c) recycle d) fall

7. Swimming alone in deep water is .... if you don't know how to swim well.

a) necessary b) soft c) dangerous d) poisonous

8. We should .... fresh fruit and vegetables. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣

a) eats b) eating c) ate d) eat

9. We .... water if it rains. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

a) gets b) get c) getting d) got

10. The animals .... eat plastic. It's dangerous. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣

a) doesn't b) mustn't c) must d) have to

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The octopus .... (swam) away fast when it's in danger. SB
2. Drivers .... (mustn't) follow traffic rules.
3. You must .... (listened) to others' ideas. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
4. If I .... (forgot) my pen, I always ask my friend to lend me one.

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Sea animals" السويس ٢٠٢٣

....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1. Mum always cuts the cake .... that knife.

a) in b) on c) with d) into

2. The bee .... me on my arm and it hurt.

a) stung b) bit c) killed d) kicked

3. It's advisable to eat healthy food. That means you .... do this.

a) should b) must c) should to d) must to




Lessons 3 & 4



SB pages 48 - 50 | WB pages 102 & 103

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

adult (n/adj)	بالغ	plant (ed) (v)	يزرع
fishing line (n)	صنارة للصيد	press (ed) (v) (into)	يضغط (فى)
frighten (ed) (v)	يخيف/يرعب	rules (n)	قواعد
instructions (n)	تعليمات	seed (n)	بذرة
nature reserve (n)	محمية طبيعية	tomato plant (n)	نبات الطماطم
pay (v)	يدفع	trash (n)	قمامة

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

around (adv)	حوالى	pot (n)	إناء
group	مجموعة	recycled (adj)	معاد تدويره
collaboration (n)	تعاون	secondly (adv)	ثانيًا
finger (n)	إصبع اليد	soil (n)	تربة زراعية
nut (n)	بندق	talk (n)	حديث
picnic lunch (n)	غداء النزهة	together (adv)	معًا/سويًا

Check Point

Choose and complete: rules - plant - pays - soil

1. Farmers plant seeds in the .... to grow.
2. We should follow .... to live safely.
3. Our father is the person who .... for all our needs.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions التعبيرات اللغوية

answer	> the phone	يرد على الهاتف	
do	> work	يؤدى عملًا	
keep	> healthy	يبقى بصحة جيدة	
make	> a phone call	يقوم باتصال هاتفى	
make	> noise	يقوم بعمل ضوضاء	
take	> turns	يتناوب الأدوار	

Prepositions حروف الجر

agree with	يتفق مع	fill (ed) with	يملأ بـ
collaborate with	يتعاون مع	through the reserve	من خلال المحمية
cover with	يغطى بـ	take out of	يخرج
famous for	مشهور بـ	walk away from	يبتعد عن

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
hide	يخبئ/يخفى	hid	hidden
pay	يدفع مالًا	paid	paid



جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions التعريفات

cover	يغطى	to put something over something else to protect or hide it
ground	الأرض	the top part of the Earth, where we stand
hole	فتحة/ثقب	an empty space in something
seed	بذرة	a small, hard thing made by plants, which grows into new plants
soil	التربة	what plants grow in

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
frighten	يخيف/يرعب	scare	يخيف

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
collaborate (v)	يتعاون	-ion	تحويل الفعل لاسم	collaboration (n)	تعاون
instruct (v)	يأمر			instructions (n)	تعليمات

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

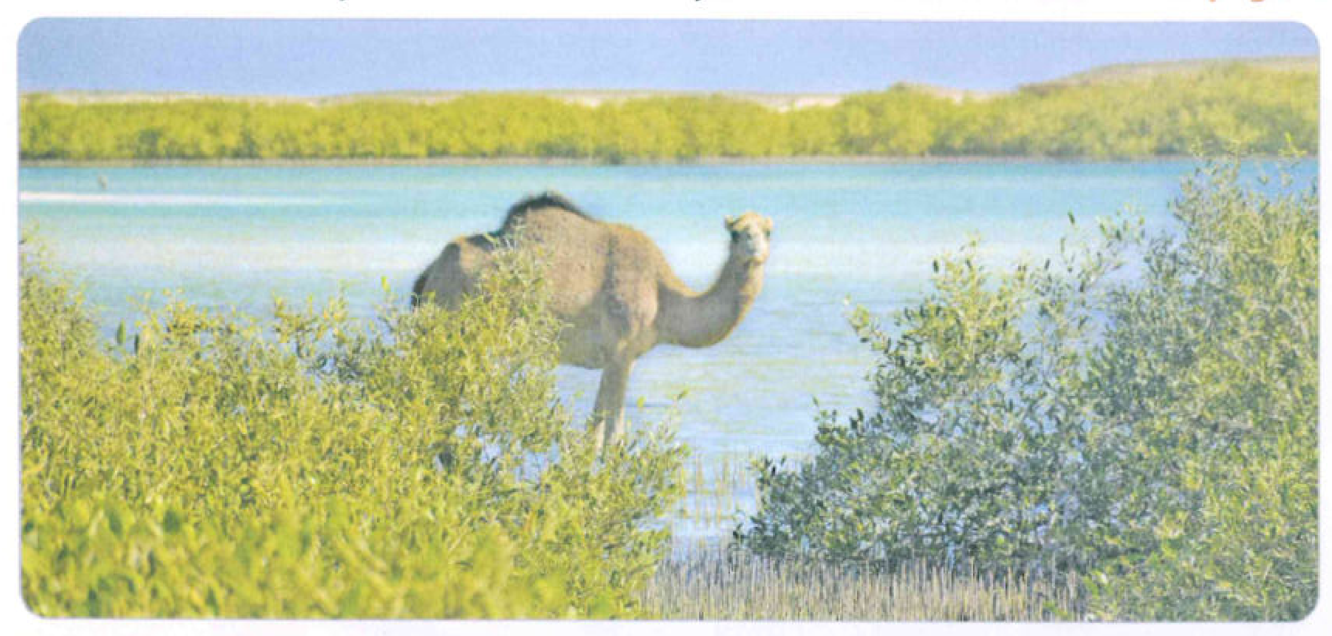
Similar spelling - Different meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
pot	إناء	put	يضع
seed	بذرة	seat	مقعد

B Reading & Listening Skills

Pre-listening question: - What's a nature reserve?

Listen to a talk by a teacher and check your answers to Exercise 1. SB page 48



Teacher We're going to visit this nature reserve[1] today. We have nature reserves to help our birds, plants and animals. Many important birds, animals and plants live here, so we must be careful of what we do.

First, you mustn't make a lot of noise! You'll frighten[2] the animals and birds. Secondly, we must not leave the road through the reserve. The animals and birds live in the plants next to the road and you don't want to walk into their homes, do you?

(1) محمية طبيعية
(2) يخيف
(3) نزهة خلوية
(4) قمامة
(5) مشروع

Now, I know we're going to have a picnic[3] lunch later, but you mustn't give any food to the animals or birds. They must find their own food. They mustn't think that all their food will come from you!

Next, you must take all your rubbish[4] with you when you leave. Some animals think that plastic is food, but they mustn't eat it. It is very bad for them. Finally, you must remember to work together and write what you see. You can write about your visit to the reserve for the project[5].

 **Note:**

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

nature /neɪtʃəʳ/ frighten /fraɪtən/

Post-listening question:

- Why mustn't you give any food to the animals or birds in the nature reserve?

Pre-reading question:

- Why do people go diving in the coral reefs?

Complete the text with *must* or *mustn't*.

WB page 102



Ras Mohammed

Ras Mohammed reserve is famous for its birds and animals. Many people go diving in the coral reefs[1] here to see the many beautiful fish and turtles. If you want to dive here, first you **must** pay around L.E.100.

(1) شعاب مرجانية
(2) صنارات الصيد
(3) حريص

When you dive, you **mustn't** touch or give food to any of the fish. You **must** only use knives to cut fishing lines[2] and you **must** never take any fish from the water. Finally, sharks also live here, so you **must** be careful[3]!



Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:

reserve /rɪzɜːʳv/

Post-reading question:

- Do you think we should visit Ras Mohammed reserve? Why/Why not?

Pre-reading question:

- Why is it very important to plant trees?

Quickly read the instructions. Circle the things you need to plant a tree. SB page 50

(1) هواء
(2) صحي
(3) بذرة
(4) إناء
(5) التربة
(6) أرض

Plant a tree today!

Do you want to help save our planet?

Well, plant a tree! Trees help to keep our air(1) healthy(2). You can plant a nut or the seed(3) of a fruit.



1. First, wash the plastic pot and dry it.
2. Second, put some small stones at the bottom of the pot(4).
3. Then, fill the pot with soil(5).
4. Next, press your finger into the soil and make a small hole about 2 cm deep.
5. Plant the seed in the hole and cover it with soil.
6. Finally, put the pot outside in a warm place.
7. Water it every day. (Don't give it too much water.)
8. When the tree grows too big for the pot, plant it in a bigger pot, or in the ground(6).

Post-reading question:

- Are you going to plant a tree in front of your house? Why/Why not?

Pre-listening question:

- How can we help save our planet?

Read the instructions again and match them to the pictures. Then listen and check your answers. *SB page 50*

Adult Do you want to help save our planet? Well, plant a tree! Trees help to keep our air healthy. You can plant a nut or the seed of a fruit.

Child What should I do first?

Adult First, wash an empty[1] plastic pot and dry it. Secondly, put some small stones at the bottom of the pot.

(1) فارغ
(2) يضغط
(3) فتحة / ثقب

Child Then, what should I do?

Adult Then, fill the pot with soil.



Child Like this?

Adult Yes, that's right! The next thing you do is, press[2] your finger into the soil and make a small hole[3].

Child How deep must it be?

Adult It must be 2 centimetres deep. Now plant the seed in the hole and cover it with soil. Finally, put the pot outside in a warm place. The seed needs sun and water to make it grow.

Child Should I water it now?

Adult Yes, now and every day. But don't give it too much water. It's going to grow big. When it grows too big for the pot, take it out of the soil and plant it in the ground. One day, when it is a big tree, you can say 'I planted that!'



Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

empty /empti/ centimetre /sentɪmiːtəʳ/

Post-listening question:

- What should we do to plant a tree?

Pre-listening question:

- Why do you think planting trees is important?

 **Listen and check your answers to Exercise 3.** *WB page 103*



Lama I'd like to grow a tomato plant. What should I do first?

Mariam **First, find a sunny place in the garden.**

Lama Like this?

Mariam Yes, that's right. **Second, look at the ground. It must not have lots of stones or other plants in it.**

Lama OK. What should I do after that?

Mariam **Then, make a small hole in the soil.**

Lama How deep must it be?

Mariam About 2 cm. **Next, put some water in the hole so it is not too dry.**

Lama Should I water it now?

Mariam Yes, you should. **Finally, put the seed in the hole and cover it with soil.**

Post-listening question:

- What do we need to plant a tree?



Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He tried to .... me by showing me a mouse.
a) plant b) press c) please d) frighten

2. Nature .... protect a lot of animals and birds. الأقصر ٢٠٢٣
a) preserves b) resorts c) deserts d) reserves

3. You need to put the .... in the bin.
a) noise b) soil c) trash d) fruit

4. My little sister learned how to count on her ....
a) hair b) fingers c) teeth d) legs

5. Students must follow their school .... دمياط ٢٠٢٣
a) roles b) rules c) holes d) caves

6. A/An .... is a fully grown person. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
a) baby b) adult c) orphan d) child

7. When you go to a shop, you need to .... for the things you want to buy.
a) frighten b) dry c) pay d) buy

8. You can .... a seed in soil and watch it grow.
a) dry b) plant c) pay d) press

9. When you work .... a group, you can help each other.
a) such as b) like c) as d) such

10. You must .... old materials to keep the environment clean.
a) grow b) burn c) buy d) recycle

11. People catch fish with fishing .... القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
a) ropes b) skeletons c) lines d) rows

12. You shouldn't be angry with people you don't agree .... القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
a) with b) at c) at d) for

13. The teacher gave us .... on how to solve the maths problem.
a) instructions b) stones c) fingers d) seeds

14. You must .... here to start the radio.
a) move b) press c) prove d) dive

15. I ask my father to show me how to .... a phone call.
a) move b) get c) make d) do

16. When you go .... a reserve, you can see the natural world.
a) out b) out of c) with d) through

C Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.



1. Speaking

Asking for and giving instructions

طلب وإعطاء التعليمات

Situation ما يقال فى هذا الموقف **Response** جملة الرد

Asking for instructions طلب التعليمات	Giving instructions إعطاء التعليمات
1. What should I do to + inf. ...? What should I do to → plant a tree? → make a phone call? → make a sandwich? → make something from recycled plastic? → play a sport or game?	- First, ... - Second, ... - Then, ... - Next, ... - Finally, ... (تستخدم هذه الكلمات عند ترتيب خطوات عمل شىء).
2. Should I + inf. ...? • Should I water it now?	- Yes, you should./ No, don't (give it too much water).

Speaking Exercise



▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

Morad is telling Ali how to grow a tomato plant. الغربية ٢٠٢٢

Ali : I'd like to grow a tomato plant. What should I do first?

Morad : (1).. .

Ali : Like this place?

Morad : (2).. .

Ali : What should I do after that?

Morad : (3).. .

Ali : (4)..?

Morad : About 2 cm.

Ali : (5)..?

Morad : Yes, you should water it.



2. Write it right



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about recycling كيفية الكتابة عن إعادة التصنيع

- Materials have many different uses.
- Recycling materials is very important for us.
- We can recycle (المادة) to make (شىء جديد).
- Recycling is important because (السبب).
- We mustn't throw old things.
- We mustn't stop recycling old materials because this is very useful for us.

Writing tips

Use a heading to tell people what your paragraph is about.

- استخدم عنوانًا لتخبر الناس عن موضوع فقرتك.

Example

To: mona@gmail.com
From: ali@yahoo.com
Subject: Recycling plastic

Hello Mona,

I hope you are well. I'd like to talk to you about a very important subject. Materials have many different uses. Recycling materials is very important for us. We must make use of old plastic. There are many good ideas for recycling plastic. We can make pots to feed birds from old bottles. We can make kitchen containers. We can make plastic pencil cases, too. We mustn't throw it away. A lot of animals and birds die from poisonous plastic in the sea and on land. We mustn't stop trying to use old materials because this is very useful for us.

Please, write soon.

Yours,
Ali

Check Point

Write an email on recycling:

To : .... From: ....

Subject : ....

....

....

....

....

....

TEST YOURSELF





17.5

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

If you're planning to visit a nature reserve, there are some things you must do. First, you must respect the natural environment and all the animals that live there. This means you mustn't throw litter, hurt or hit any animals. Remember, you are a guest in the animals' home. Secondly, you must be ready for your visit. This means wearing good shoes, taking enough water and **snacks**, and wearing sunglasses. Always follow the rules there.

Finally, you must enjoy the beauty of the natural world around you. Take your time to see the plants and animals, listen to the sounds of birds and enjoy the clean air.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the text? ....
2. What does the underlined pronoun "there" refer to? ....
3. Would you like to visit a nature reserve? Why/Why not? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. When you visit a place, you are a ....
   a) guide b) guest c) worker d) teacher
5. At the nature reserve, you mustn't .... the animals.
   a) throw b) hurt c) hit d) b & c
6. The word "**snacks**" means small ....
   a) insects b) birds c) animals d) meals

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We can plant a flower in our homes in a ....
   a) talk b) pot c) nut d) rule
2. Firstly, we need to wash the dishes. ...., we need to dry them.
   a) Carefully b) Lonely c) Secondly d) Lately
3. The parents had a .... with their child about the results of the exam.
   a) cause b) seed c) reason d) talk
4. To .... is to put something over something else to protect or hide it. WB
   a) build b) cover c) cycle d) recycle

5. You're right. I agree .... your opinion.

a) at b) with c) in d) of

6. She collaborated .... her friend to write a story.

a) to b) out of c) with d) for

7. He .... into the soil to make a small hole.

a) recycled b) pressed c) stood d) hid

8. Children .... open the door for strangers.

a) must b) mustn't c) are d) aren't

9. What should I .... to get high marks? الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

a) did b) does c) doing d) do

10. When it is very cold, water .... into ice. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣

a) turns b) turning c) turned d) turn

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You .... (mustn't) follow traffic rules. الفيوم ٢٠٢٣
2. When you don't .... (eating) breakfast, you feel hungry.
3. You should .... (studying) for the test. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣
4. If I feel ill, I always .... (visited) my doctor.

4 Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words on recycling. Your name is Ahmed and your email address is mido22@hotmail.com. Your friend's name is Adham and his email address is adham@gmail.com.

To : .... From: ....

Subject : ....

....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

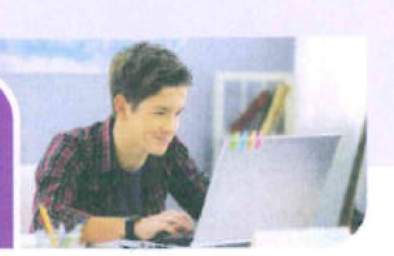
مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1. You .... (mustn't) never share personal information with strangers online.
2. If you want to stay healthy, you .... (don't) eat too many sweets.
3. If you want to do well on a project, you .... (start) working on it early.
4. When there .... (isn't) no water, plants die.





Lessons 5 & 6



SB pages 51 - 53 | WB pages 104 - 106

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

boil (ed) (v)	يغلى	illness (n)	مرض
bone (n)	عظمة	leaflet (n)	منشور
conclude (d) (v)	يستنتج/يختم	position (n)	موقع/مكانة
fisherman (n)	صياد سمك	poster (n)	ملصق إعلانى
gloves (n)	قفاز/جوانتى	radio station (n)	محطة إذاعية
goal (n)	هدف	skeleton (n)	هيكل عظمى

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

group (n)	مجموعة	main (adj)	أساسى/رئيسى
heading (n)	عنوان رئيسى	respect (ed) (v)	يحترم
introduction (n)	مقدمة	rubbish bag (n)	حقيبة/كيس القمامة
left (adj)	متبقٍ	summarise (d) (v)	يلخص

Check Point

Choose and complete: skeleton - conclude - respect - illness

1 If you don't eat healthy food, you'll have a/an ....

2 The .... is the whole bones of the body.

3 People should .... each other.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

catch > fish	يصطاد سمكًا	get > well	يتحسن
feel > well	يشعر بصحة جيدة	play > a role	يلعب دورًا

Prepositions حروف الجر

advertisement for	إعلان لـ	on headphones	فى سماعات الرأس
grow into	ينمو لتصبح	on the ground	على الأرض
home to	موطن لـ	onto the boat	على القارب
in conclusion	فى الختام	return to	يعود/يرجع إلى
make art with	يصنع عملًا فنيًا بـ	run away	يهرب

Check Point

Choose and complete: play - make - to - catching

1. My favourite hobby is .... fish.
2. The forest is home .... many wild animals.
3. You should .... a role in keeping our planet clean.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.
catch	يصطاد	caught	caught
tell	يخبر	told	told
drink	يشرب	drank	drunk

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
brave	شجاع	coward	جبان
clear	واضح	unclear	غير واضح
tiny	صغير جدًا/دقيق	big	ضخم





جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
increase	يزيد/يزداد	rise	يرتفع
real	حقيقى	true	حقيقى

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
ill (adj)	مريض	-ness	تحويل الصفة لاسم	illness (n)	مرض

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 5

Pre-reading question:

- What's your favourite story?

Read the story quickly and put the pictures in the correct order. *SB page 51*

صياد سمك (1)
قلق (2)
صنارة الصيد (3)
هيكل عظمى (4)
شجاع (5)
يحترم (6)

The Old Man and the Sea

by Ernest Hemingway

Santiago was an old fisherman[1]. He felt worried[2] because the last time he caught a fish was 84 days ago. On the 85th day, he felt a big fish at the end of his fishing line[3]. But the fish was stronger than Santiago. It took two days for him to finally pull it to the boat. Then the sharks came. When Santiago returned to his home on the beach, he had no fish, only a skeleton[4]. He felt weak and slept for a long time. But the other fishermen saw how big the fish was and knew that he was brave[5] to catch it. Santiago lost the fish, but the other fishermen now respected[6] him more than ever.









Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

skeleton /skelɪtən/ respect /rɪspekt/

Post-reading questions:

1. How did Santiago feel when he didn't catch any fish for 84 days?
2. What did you learn from the story?

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 6

- Why must we clean the beaches?

 **Read the leaflet. Write the headings in the correct places.** *SB page 52*

We must clean our beach!

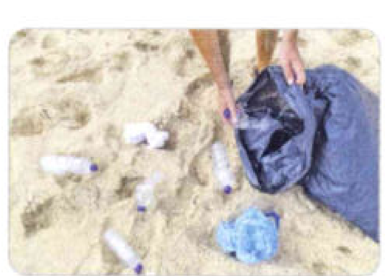
قفازات (1)

سماعات الرأس (2)

1. Where and when is the event?

- West Beach
- Saturday afternoon 2 p.m. – 5 p.m.

2. What do we need?



- Rubbish bags, gloves[1] (to protect your hands), a bottle of water to drink and snacks to eat!
- Some people like listening to music on their headphones[2]!

3. Why must we clean the beaches?



- 100,000 pieces of plastic rubbish on this beach.
- One plastic bottle can stay in our environment for up to 1,000 years (dangerous for animals and fish).

4. How can we tell people about our event?

- Posters (around school and town).
- Emails to local groups.
- Local radio station or newspaper.

5. What should we do with the rubbish we find?

- Recycle it.
- Find a new use for it.
- Make art with it.



Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

glove /glʌv/ environment /ɪnvaɪrənmənt/

Post-reading question:

- What can we do with old things?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

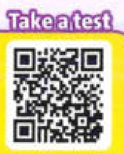
Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She listens to the radio .... every morning.
   a) station b) stop c) poster d) group
2. My father is a great teacher, all students .... him. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) feel b) save c) respect d) catch
3. The archaeologists علماء الآثار found the .... of some dinosaurs. بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣
   a) fishermen b) skeletons c) museum d) opera
4. Dirty environment is home .... illnesses.
   a) at b) to c) on d) in
5. We need to .... the pasta before adding the sauce.
   a) feel b) sell c) catch d) boil
6. The .... use fishing lines to catch fish. الجيزة ٢٠٢٣
   a) fishermen b) doctors c) pilots d) engineers
7. His .... is to become a doctor.
   a) role b) rule c) goal d) gun
8. The .... of the report was "Helping the Environment".
   a) leaflet b) heading c) group d) bone
9. There is no sugar .... We need some.
   a) real b) clear c) clean d) left
10. The rubbish .... was full. We need to empty it.
    a) bag b) rule c) role d) skeleton
11. The .... character in the story is a sailor.
    a) tiny b) local c) main d) brave
12. The children put up .... on the classroom walls.
    a) posters b) bones c) roles d) titles
13. My sister always listens to music .... her headphones.
    a) off b) out c) on d) of
14. He wants to .... a role in protecting the environment.
    a) make b) play c) give d) do
15. We wear .... to protect our hands when we pick up the rubbish. بني سويف ٢٠٢٣
    a) helmets b) gloves c) trousers d) jackets
16. .... conclusion, I think we need to work together to solve this problem.
    a) At b) In c) For d) With





1 Complete the following dialogue:

Asmaa asks Eman about the book she is reading. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣

Asmaa : What are you reading?

Eman : (1).. .

Asmaa : (2)..?

Eman : It's called "The Old Man and the Sea".

Asmaa : (3)..?

Eman : The main character is an old man called Santiago.

Asmaa : What's his job?

Eman : (4).. .

Asmaa : Is it a good story?

Eman : (5).. . I advise you to read it.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She likes to .... art with paint.
   a) take b) make c) stay d) think
2. The human .... has 206 bones.
   a) poster b) skeleton c) head d) character
3. The weather was .... and sunny for the picnic. We had a wonderful day.
   a) ill b) tiny c) real d) clear
4. Judy felt very .... after she was ill, but she is better now. WB
   a) friendly b) strong c) weak d) keen
5. After taking medicines, my grandfather .... well.
   a) hid b) fell c) had d) got
6. He is very .... because he saved a girl from death.
   a) stupid b) brave c) calm d) careful
7. Readers always read the .... of the newspaper first.
   a) headings b) keys c) lines d) stories

8. When you .... away plastic, it stays in the environment for years. SB

a) throw b) throws c) threw d) throwing

9. My father always drives me to school if the bus doesn't ....

a) arrived b) arriving c) arrive d) arrives

10. You shouldn't .... decisions or rules yourself.

a) make b) makes c) made d) to make

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The river freezes when it .... (was) cold.
2. People shouldn't .... (driving) fast in the town centre.
3. If people .... (will eat) too much, they get fat.
4. You .... (mustn't) be careful while crossing the street.

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Cleaning our beaches"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

1 The .... of the poster was attractive.

a) position b) skeleton c) heading d) introduction

2 I need to buy a new pair of .... for the winter.

a) earrings b) gloves c) glasses d) pieces

3 The .... is full of old newspapers and magazines.

a) report b) heading c) poster d) rubbish bag

Review on Unit 11

Vocabulary

brave	شجاع
rubbish	قمامة
environment	البيئة
sea life	الحياة البحرية
fisherman	صياد سمك
fishing line	صنارة صيد
skeleton	هيكل عظمى
land	اليابسة
coral reefs	الشعب المرجانية
nature reserve	محمية طبيعية
jellyfish	قنديل البحر
ocean	محيط
octopus	أخطبوط
planet	كوكب
shark	سمكة القرش
stingray	السمكة اللادغة
turtle	سلحفاة بحرية
recycle	يعيد تصنيع
whale	حوت
sports centre	مركز رياضى
heading	عنوان رئيسى

Language

1. "If" Zero conditional:

If/When + Present simple + Present simple

If/When it **rains**, we **get** water.

I **feel** tired when/if it'**s** late.

2. must/mustn't:

Subject + must /mustn't + inf.

- We **must save** our planet.
- We **mustn't throw** rubbish into the ocean.

3. should/shouldn't:

Subject + should/ shouldn't + inf.

- We should recycle more materials.
- We shouldn't use plastic bags just once.

Skills

1. Describing a sea animal:

- It can swim fast. It's got eight legs.

An octopus!

- It has a hard shell to protect it.

A turtle!

- If it knows a shark is coming, it jumps out of the water!

A stingray!

2. What you must/ mustn't do:

- We mustn't play games on roads.
- We must play games in the sports centre.
- We must be quiet in the classroom.



Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 11





A Listening



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. We are going to visit the nature reserve .... الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) next week b) yesterday c) today d) tomorrow
2. Many .... living things live in the nature reserve.
   a) unimportant b) important c) wild d) dangerous
3. Plants, animals and birds live in the ....
   a) house b) nature reserve c) home d) sea
4. We must be .... about what we do.
   a) careful b) careless c) angry d) sad

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Roaa and Ayman are talking about nature.

Roaa : What are you doing?
Ayman : (1).. .
Roaa : A book! (2)...?
Ayman : (3).. .
Roaa : So, do you like nature?
Ayman : (4).. .
Roaa : What must we do to protect animals which are in danger?
Ayman : We must put them in a nature reserve.
Roaa : (5)..?
Ayman : It is an area of land where animals and plants are kept.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Fishing is a popular sport and hobby enjoyed by many people around the world. Many people take it as a job. A fisherman uses different ways and equipment to catch fish. Some **common** fishing ways include angling and netting.

Angling is a way of fishing that includes using a fishing line to catch fish. The fisherman throws the line into the water and waits for a fish to bite.

Netting is a way of fishing that includes using a net to catch fish. The fisherman throws the net into the water and then pulls it back in with the fish inside.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the passage about?

....

2. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?

....

3. What is your favourite hobby?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. There are .... ways of fishing in the text.

a) one b) two c) three d) four

5. The fisherman can throw the .... into the water to catch fish.

a) line b) pot c) food d) boat

6. The word "**common**" can be opposite to ".....................".

a) known b) famous c) special d) popular

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The .... character in the story is an officer; he made a lot of good things.

a) local b) main c) bad d) common

2. You can .... paper, so don't throw it away. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣

a) cycle b) heat c) hit d) recycle

3. You .... the soup for too long. It needs to cool down before we can eat it.

a) boiled b) respected c) repeated d) dried

4. Be careful, the bees can .... you hard. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣

a) bite b) hit c) sting d) beat

5. When a/an .... is in danger, it goes into its shell. دمياط ٢٠٢٣

a) shark b) octopus c) turtle d) jellyfish

6. He didn't want to .... work during his summer holiday.

a) make b) do c) give d) fall

7. A .... is an area of land in which animals and plants are protected. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣

a) nature reserve b) rubbish bin c) ground d) soil

8. My grandma gets so sad when we .... call her every morning.

a) doesn't b) didn't c) aren't d) don't

9. When you cross a road, you .... look left and right. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣

a) mustn't b) have c) shouldn't d) must

10. People .... smoke in hospitals.

a) must b) mustn't c) should d) have

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She doesn't .... (plays) tennis if the weather is bad.
2. You .... (must) walk on the broken glass. المنوفية ٢٠٢٣
3. Children shouldn't .... (to drink) sugary drinks. It's not very healthy.
4. Leila feels ill if she .... (travel) on a boat. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

E Writing

6 Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words on how to save our planet. Your name is Salma and your email address is simo@student.com. Your friend's name is Karma and her email address is koka@gmail.com.

To : ....

From: ....

Subject : ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Assess your progress	< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
★★★★★	Study again	Practise more	Solve more exams	Well done!

Unit 12

My future

Objectives of the unit

Reading	An interview with a marine biologist; a text about future plans; a text about traditional jobs in Africa; a text predicting the future
Writing	A paragraph giving information about the future
Listening	A description of a job; an interview with a marine biologist; people talking about their future plans
Speaking	Describing and asking questions about jobs; talking about future times
Language	Relative pronoun who; question tags; the first conditional
Life Skills	Productivity: set clear goals



Tapescript

WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات SB تشير لأسئلة كتاب الطالب





STUDY Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 54-57 | WB pages 107 & 108



A Vocabulary

- قم بدراسة المفردات الرئيسية جيدًا لدرجة الإتقان حيث إنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.
- قم باختبار حفظك للمفردات عن طريق الذهاب لملحق التقويم وتسميع الكلمات الخاصة بالدرسين.

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

engine (n)	محرك/موتور	research (n)	بحث (علمى)
fuel (n)	وقود	test (ed) (v)	يختبر
laboratory (n)	معمل	volunteer (ed) (v/n)	يتطوع/متطوع
machine (n)	آلة/ماكينة	wheelchair (n)	كرسى متحرك
meeting (n)	اجتماع		
Jobs		الوظائف	
accountant (n)	محاسب	marine biologist (n)	عالم الأحياء البحرية
architect (n)	مهندس معمارى	photographer (n)	مصور
businessman (n)	رجل أعمال	pilot (n)	طيار
businesswoman (n)	سيدة أعمال	presenter (n)	مقدم برنامج
computer programmer (n)	مبرمج كمبيوتر	scientist (n)	عالم
dentist (n)	طبيب أسنان	writer (n)	كاتب
engineer (n)	مهندس		

Additional Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

especially (adv)	خاصة	rest	باقٍ
interview (ed) (v)	يحاور/يجرى مقابلة	sound like	يبدو
next door	المجاور (بيت/شقة/حديقة)	teenager (n)	مراهق

Check Point

Choose and complete: laboratory - pilot - writer - next door

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

1. I like flying planes. I want to be a ……………… .
2. Scientists do their experiments in a ……………… .
3. A neighbour is the person who lives ……………… .

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

(n) = noun	(adj) = adjective	(prep) = preposition
(v) = verb	(adv) = adverb	(conj) = conjunction

Language Expressions
التعبيرات اللغوية

collect	information	يجمع معلومات	do	a job	يؤدى وظيفة
design	machines/buildings/engines	يصمم آلات/مبانى/محركات	do	sums	يحل مسائل حسابية
			do	voluntary work	يؤدى عملًا تطوعيًا
score	a goal	يسجل/يحرز هدفًا	record	information	يسجل معلومات
write	programs	يؤلف برامج	record	results	يسجل نتائج

Prepositions
حروف الجر

advice to	نصيحة لـ	look after	يعتنى بـ
in a boat for a dive	فى قارب للغوص	turn into	يتحول إلى

Check Point

Choose and complete: for - after - do

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

1 In a maths class, we .... lots of sums.

2 A dentist is the person who looks .... people's teeth.

Words and Opposites
الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
easy	سهل	hard/difficult	صعب
terrible	فظيع/سيئ جدًا	lovely	جميل
traditional	تقليدى	modern	حديث
useful	مفيد	useless	عديم الفائدة

Language Notes



ادرس الملاحظات اللغوية جيدًا لأنها موضع أسئلة امتحانية.

1 Prepositions with means of transport:
حروف الجر مع وسائل المواصلات:

by مع كل وسائل المواصلات بدون فاصل (أداة أو صفة ملكية).
- He travelled to Alexandria by train.
- She went to work by car.

on مع وسائل المواصلات (التى يمكن الحركة فيها أو على ظهرها) مع وجود فاصل (أداة أو صفة ملكية).
- He travelled to Alexandria on a train.
- She went to work on a bus.

in مع وسائل المواصلات (التى نجلس بداخلها) مع وجود فاصل (أداة أو صفة ملكية).
- He travelled to Alexandria in a car.
- She went to work in a taxi.

نستخدم (on) مع كلمة (foot)
- She went to work on foot.

2 spend + time + (v + ing)
يقضى وقتًا
- I spent three hours studying my lessons.

3 What does he/she do?

accountant	محاسب	works with numbers
architect	مهندس معمارى	designs buildings
businessman	رجل أعمال	works in an office and goes to meetings
computer programmer	مبرمج كمبيوتر	programs computers
dentist	طبيب أسنان	looks after people's teeth
engineer	مهندس	designs machines
marine biologist	عالم الأحياء البحرية	studies the ocean and animals in it
photographer	مصور	takes photographs
presenter	مقدم برنامج	interviews people and presents shows
pilot	طيار	flies a plane
writer	كاتب	writes books or articles





جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Words and Synonyms

الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
easy	سهل	simple	سهل/بسيط
useful	مفيد	helpful	مفيد

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
write (v)	يكتب	-er	تحويل الفعل لاسم فاعل	writer (n)	كاتب
teach (v)	يعلم/يدرس			teacher (n)	مدرس/معلم



Similar spelling - Different meaning

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
advice	نصيحة	advise	ينصح
pilot	طيار	polite	مؤدب

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 1

Pre-listening question:

- What would you like to be when you grow up?

Listen to the descriptions. Can you name each job? Use the photos to help you. Who can get the most correct answers? *SB page 54*

Narrator 1
Male He looks after people's teeth. He's a dentist[1].
Narrator 2
Male She studies science. She's a scientist[2].
Narrator 3
Male He's a person who designs machines. He's an engineer[3].
Narrator 4
Male She works with numbers. She finds out how much money a business gets. She's an accountant[4].
Narrator 5
Male He takes photos. He's a photographer[5].
Narrator 6
Male She works in an office and goes to meetings. She's a businesswoman[6].
Narrator 7
Male He writes computer programs. He's a computer programmer[7].
Narrator 8
Male She writes books or articles. She's a writer[8].
Narrator 9
Male She designs buildings. She's an architect[9].

(1) طبيب أسنان	(2) عالم	(3) مهندس
(4) محاسب	(5) مصور	(6) سيدة أعمال
(7) مبرمج كمبيوتر	(8) كاتب	(9) مهندس معمارى



Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

accountant /əkaʊntənt/ architect /ɑːʳkɪtekt/ engineer /endʒɪnɪəʳ/

Post-listening question: - From your point of view, what is the most important job?

Lesson 1

Listen to Randa. Which job from the quiz is she talking about?

SB page 55

It's an interesting job, but it isn't an easy job. You usually work in an office. You have to do a lot of sums. I'm good at maths, so I'd like to do this job.



Lesson 1

Pre-reading question:

- What does an engineer do?

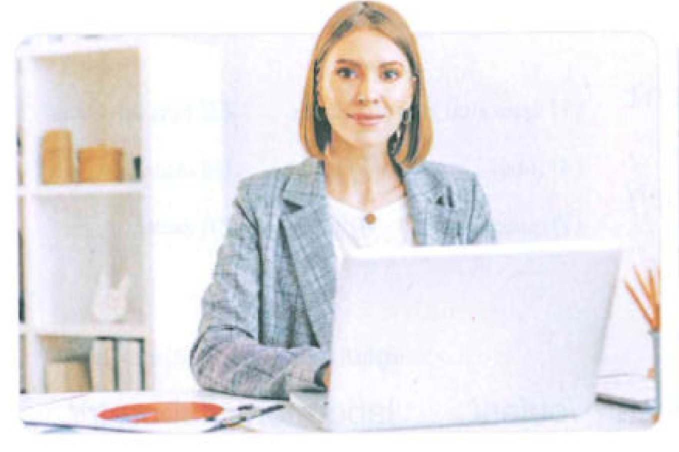
Read about Amir's uncle. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)?

SB page 55

My uncle has got a very interesting job. He's an engineer[1]. An engineer is a person who designs[2] machines[3] and engines[4]. My uncle designs engines for planes. I'd like to be an engineer one day! My aunt is a businesswoman[5]. That's an interesting job, too. A businesswoman and a businessman are people who work in an office and go to meetings[6].



Amir





Post-reading question:

- On which job do you think people travel a lot?

(1) مهندس مدنى	(2) يصمم	(3) آلات
(4) محركات	(5) سيدة أعمال	(6) اجتماعات

Pre-listening question:



- What's your dream job?

Listen to the interview and check your answers to Exercise 1. *SB page 56*

My dream job

This week, we interviewed Nesma El-Soory, a marine biologist.





1. What's a marine biologist?

A marine biologist[1] is a person who studies the ocean[2] and the plants and animals in it.

2. Why did you decide to become a marine biologist?

I'm good at science and I love the ocean. The animals in our oceans are really beautiful and interesting.

3. What's your day like?

In my job, every day is different! On some days, I go diving around coral reefs[3]. On other days, I test water from the ocean in the laboratory[4]. I also spend a lot of time on the computer, writing the results[5] of tests.



4. What's the best thing about your job?

My research[6] helps to protect the plants and animals in the ocean. That's the best thing. It's really important to look after our planet, isn't it?

5. And what's the worst thing?

There are bad things about every job, aren't there? Sometimes the weather[7] is terrible[8]. It isn't nice to go out in a boat for a dive when there's a storm[9]!

(1) عالم أحياء بحرية	(2) محيط	(3) الشعاب المرجانية
(4) معمل	(5) نتائج	(6) بحث علمي
(7) الطقس	(8) فظيع	(9) عاصفة



Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

marine biologist /məri:n baɪɒlədʒɪst/ ocean /oʊʃən/ laboratory /ləbɒrətri/

Post-listening question:

- Do you think that Nesma's job is interesting? Why/ Why not?

Pre-listening question:

- What does a marine biologist study?

Listen to the rest of the interview with Nesma. Choose the correct answers.

SB page 57

Presenter You visit some interesting places, don't you?

Nesma Yes, I do! At the moment, I'm working in the Red Sea, near Neweiba. Last year, I worked in Australia. And before that, I worked in Thailand.

Presenter Wow! And what different kinds of animals do you study?

Nesma Well, some marine biologists study large animals, like whales[1] and dolphins. But I study fish and smaller animals around coral reefs.

(1) حيتان (2) يجمع (3) يسجل
(4) خاصة (5) يتطوع

Presenter It sounds like a dream job to be a marine biologist, but it isn't an easy job, is it?

Nesma No, it isn't. There's a lot of information to collect[2] and record[3]. It's hard work and it takes a long time. I work about ten hours a day.

Presenter What is your advice to young people who want to become a marine biologist?

Nesma Work hard at school, especially[4] in science. You have to love science to be a marine biologist! And find out everything you can about the job. You can even volunteer[5] for dives.

Presenter That sounds like great advice. Thank you, Nesma.

Nesma You're welcome.



Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

Australia /ɒ'streɪlɪə/ whale /weɪl/ Thailand /'taɪˌlænd/

Post-listening question: - What should you do to be a marine biologist?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. A .... is a person who takes photographs and photos.
   a) scientist b) photographer c) teacher d) businessman
2. Scientists do experiments and research in a/an ....
   a) field b) office c) laboratory d) club
3. Excellent, you .... a great job.
   a) made b) thought c) appeared d) did
4. The park .... has a playground, so I can hear children playing outside.
   a) teenager b) sound like c) especially d) next door
5. Scientists .... results to see what they did.
   a) record b) make c) do d) score
6. My uncle is a/an .... He designs buildings.
   a) architect b) biologist c) writer d) scientist
7. The person who studies the ocean, the plants and animals in it is called a/an ....
   a) doctor b) engineer c) writer d) marine biologist
8. My father's car is very fast. It has a good ....
   a) engine b) machine c) tool d) equipment
9. My brother is a/an .... He works with money and numbers. سوهاج ٢٠٢٢
   a) engineer b) scientist c) accountant d) pilot
10. He can't walk after the accident. He'll be in a/an .... for the rest of his life.
    a) coach b) armchair c) wheelchair d) sofa
11. A/An .... is bigger than a sea. WB
    a) ocean b) canal c) fountain d) lake
12. My brother can fly planes and helicopters. He is a/an ....
    a) pilot b) writer
    c) engineer d) businesswoman
13. I love Italy, ... in summer.
    a) really b) especially c) carefully d) easily
14. My father is very busy at work today. He has an important ....
    a) result b) call c) match d) meeting
15. Parents look .... their children and make sure they are safe.
    a) at b) for c) forward d) after
16. Yesterday, I .... my favourite singer for the school project.
    a) collected b) interviewed c) tested d) recorded

C Language

1 Relative Pronoun "who" ضمير الوصل "who"

We can join two sentences about people using the relative pronoun (who):

نستطيع ربط جملتين (للعاقل) باستخدام ضمير الوصل (who) (يأتى بمعنى الذى/التى).

- A businesswoman is a person. She works in an office.
- A businesswoman is a person who works in an office.

Examples:

- A teacher is a **person** who **teaches** students.
- Mona is **the girl** who **sits** next to me in class.
- Ali is **the boy** who **plays** football well.
- These are **the children** who **broke** the glass.

Got it ?

Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- The man .... (which) sits by my father is his best friend.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (who) لأن الفاعل (the man) عاقل.

2 How to ask and answer about jobs السؤال والإجابة عن طبيعة الوظائف

What + do/does + subj. + do?

- **What does an architect do?**

  An architect is a person who designs buildings.

- **What do engineers do?**

  They're people who design machines.



Got it ?

Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. What .... (do) a writer do?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (does) لأن (writer) اسم مفرد.

2. What do .... (a teacher) do?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (teachers) لوجود (do) التى يتبعها اسم جمع.

3 Question Tag السؤال المذيل

- السؤال المذيل هو سؤال قصير يأتى فى نهاية الجملة الخبرية ويأتى قبله (,) وغرضه التأكد بمعنى (أليس كذلك؟).
- يكون السؤال المذيل عكس حالة الجملة (مثبتًا إذا كانت الجملة منفية، ومنفيًا إذا كانت الجملة مثبتة).

Form التكوين

جملة خبرية, + فعل مساعد + ضمير فاعل؟

- She is a great teacher, isn't she?
- You will play the match, won't you?

- إذا لم يكن بالجملة فعل مساعد ... نستخدم (V. to do) ... كالآتى:

Present المضارع	Past الماضى
do > (I / We / You / They / اسم جمع) مع	did > مع جميع الضمائر
does > (He / She / it / اسم مفرد) مع	

You like meat, don't you?
She plays chess well, doesn't she?
He studied his lessons well, didn't he?
Mona didn't go to school, did she?

- إذا وجد بالجملة (v.to have) كفعل أساسى ينفى كالتالى:

have .... don't   has .... doesn't   had .... didn't

They have a new house, don't they?
He has a blue shirt, doesn't he?
Mayar had her breakfast with her family yesterday, didn't she?



لاحظ

١- تراعى الاختصارات فى السؤال المذيل.
will not (✗) - won't (✓)   are not (✗) - aren't (✓)

٢- لابد من التعويض عن الاسم بضمير الفاعل المناسب.
Marwan is a good student, isn't he?

٣- لا تحول الضمائر فى الاستفهام المذيل.
You played the match yesterday, didn't you?

لاحظ التحويلات التالية:
I'm > aren't I?   I'm not > am I?

Ex: - I'm a good student, aren't I?

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My father has got a car, ... (has) he?
   - الإجابة الصحيحة (hasn't) لأن الجملة مثبتة والسؤال المذيل يكون عكس حالة الجملة.
2. Maria and Suzy speak Japanese, ... (aren't) they?
   - الإجابة الصحيحة (don't) لأن الجملة فى زمن المضارع البسيط.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The story is interesting, ... it? أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
   a) does b) doesn't c) isn't d) is
2. The film wasn't good, ...?
   a) wasn't the film b) wasn't it c) was it d) was the film
3. They live next door, ... they?
   a) aren't b) don't c) haven't d) won't
4. Sara wants to be a marine biologist, ... she? القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) is b) isn't c) doesn't d) does
5. The lady .... works at the library can help you find a book.
   a) whose b) who's c) how d) who
6. The dog wants to go for a walk, doesn't ....?
   a) it b) they c) he d) she
7. What .... a businesswoman do? SB
   a) is b) do c) does d) has
8. It's going to be a difficult task, ... it?
   a) wasn't b) hasn't c) doesn't d) isn't
9. She fell down, ... she?
   a) didn't b) wasn't c) doesn't d) isn't
10. Adel's sister is the one who wrote that book, isn't ....?
    a) she b) he c) they d) it

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. What .... (is) accountants do?
2. The children sing well, don't .... (he)?
3. Ali can speak English well, ... (can) he?
4. They .... (enjoyed) playing games, don't they?
5. A writer is a person .... (whose) writes books and articles.
6. It's your turn to clean up, ... (hasn't) it?

D Skills



Write it right



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب
من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about your dream job

كيفية الكتابة عن وظيفة أحلامك

- My name's (الاسم). I'm (العمر) years old.
- When I grow up, I'd like to be a/an (الوظيفة) like my (الشخص).
- He/She works at (المكان).
- I like this job because (السبب).
- A/An (الوظيفة) + (طبيعتها).
- It's an interesting job.

Writing tips

Remember to join your ideas with words like and, although or because.

تذكر الربط بين أفكارك بكلمات
مثل (و / على الرغم من / لأن)

Example

"My dream job"

My name's Kareem. I'm twelve years old. When I grow up, I'd like to be a teacher like my father. He works at a big school in Benha. A teacher is a person who teaches students. Although teaching is tiring, it's very interesting. It helps our country to be great. A teacher helps students to achieve their dreams and get the job they dream of. I like it because I want to help students to learn new things. It's an interesting job.

Check Point

Write a paragraph about:

"The job I dream of"

My name's ....

....

....

....

....

....

....





1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. What do you want to be?
   a) A doctor. b) A dentist. c) An accountant. d) An architect.
2. How is it?
   a) Interesting. b) Easy. c) Hard. d) a & c.
3. What do you have to do at it?
   a) Sums. b) Results. c) Reports. d) Experiments.
4. What subject are you good at?
   a) Science. b) Maths. c) English. d) Arabic.

2 Complete the following dialogue:

القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

Omar is asking Amar about his job.

Omar : Hello, I'm Omar. What's your name?
Amar : (1).. . Pleased to meet you.
Omar : Me, too. What's your job?
Amar : (2).. .
Omar : (3)..?
Amar : A marine biologist is a person who studies the ocean and the animals in it.
Omar : Do you like your job?
Amar : (4).. .
Omar : (5)..?
Amar : The best thing about my job is seeing many sea animals.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A .... works in business and has meetings.
   a) businessman b) teacher c) writer d) photographer
2. The car's .... helps it move and run.
   a) oil b) radio c) engine d) window
3. Computer programmers .... programs to develop software and applications.
   a) write b) score c) record d) take
4. Someone who does research and experiments is a ....
   a) photographer b) presenter c) scientist d) writer

5. Sarah .... at the hospital to help sick children and give them toys.

a) scored b) recorded c) volunteered d) tested

6. He .... many young people for the new job.

a) left b) finished c) interviewed d) stayed

7. Marine biologists test water from the ocean in ....

a) companies b) factories c) laboratories d) clubs

8. This is the woman .... works as an actress.

a) whose b) whom c) who d) which

9. They finished their project, ... they?

a) weren't b) was c) didn't d) did

10. Nora hasn't got any money, ...?

a) has Nora b) does Nora c) has she d) does she

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. What .... (is) a doctor do?
2. It's raining outside, ... (is) it?
3. You're wearing your favourite colour, aren't .... (I)?
4. A businessman is a man .... (who's) works in an office. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your dream job"

....

....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. The part of a car that makes it go is called the ....

a) fuel b) engine c) laboratory d) research

2. A .... is a person who gives their time to help others without money.

a) writer b) photographer c) volunteer d) pilot

3. We had a good time, ... we?

a) had b) hadn't c) did d) didn't





Lessons 3 & 4



SB pages 58-60 | WB pages 109 & 110

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

businesses (n)	أعمال	practise (d) (v)	يمارس/يتدرب
culture (n)	ثقافة	present (n)	هدية
earn (ed) (v)	يكسب (مالًا)	skill (n)	مهارة
education (n)	تعليم	tradition (n)	تقليد
jewellery (n)	مجوهرات	the countryside (n)	الريف
pottery (n)	فخار	workshop (n)	ورشة عمل

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

ability (n)	قدرة	fully grown	ناضج بشكل كامل
apartment (n)	شقة	local people	السكان المحليين
beliefs (n)	معتقدات	necklace (n)	عقد/قلادة
blog (n)	مدونة	pass (ed) (v)	ينجح
clay (n)	طين الصلصال	ring (n)	خاتم
extra (adj)	إضافى	so that	لكى/حتى

Check Point

Choose and complete: blog - extra - practise - education

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

1. To be good at English, you should .... a lot.
2. We want .... bread. We will have many guests.
3. Everyone wants to have good .... to succeed in life.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

catch > a bus	يلحق بالأتوبيس	get > married	يتزوج

Prepositions — حروف الجر

all over	فى كل أنحاء	down the road	فى نهاية الطريق
come back to	يعود/يرجع إلى	plans for	خطط لـ

Check Point

Choose and complete: for - to - get

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.

1. My sister is going to .... married next Thursday.
2. What are your plans .... the next weekend?

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	P.P.
drive	يقود/يسوق	drove	driven
sell	يبيع	sold	sold

Words and Opposites الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
adult	بالغ	young	صغير السن
modern	حديث	ancient/old	قديم
repair	يصلح	damage	يدمر





جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions التعريفات

adult	بالغ/راشد	a fully grown person
culture	ثقافة	the art, ideas, beliefs, etc. of a group of people
earn	يربح مالًا	get money by working
jewellery	مجوهرات	things such as rings and necklaces that you wear
pottery	الفخار	pots, dishes, etc. made from clay
skill	مهارة	an ability to do something well
workshop	ورشة عمل	a room or small building where people make or repair things

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
adult	بالغ	fully grown	ناضج بشكل كامل
repair	يصلح	mend/fix	يصلح

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
help (v)	يساعد	-ful	تحويل الفعل لصفة	helpful (adj)	متعاون
success (n)	نجاح		تحويل الاسم لصفة	successful (adj)	ناجح

Similar spelling - Different meaning

هذا الجزء يوضح لك الفرق بين الكلمات المتشابهة فى الهجاء ولكن مختلفة فى المعنى.

Word	الكلمة	Similar word	الكلمة المشابهة
practise	يمارس/يتدرب	practice	ممارسة/تدريب

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 3

Read about Munir's plans for the future. Which sentence is true? *SB page 58*



I don't know which job I want to do when I'm older, but I think that education is very important. I hope that I pass my exams so that I can go to university. I'm going to work hard. If I go to university, I'll study maths. It's my best subject.

I don't like flying, so I don't want to travel around the world. I want to get a good job in Egypt. I want to teach maths. If I have enough money, I'll buy an apartment near the Red Sea. I'll get married, but how many children will I have? I don't know!

التعليم

Lesson 3

Listen to Rami and Amira talking about their plans for the future. Tick (✓) the things they want to do. What do they both want to do? *SB page 59*

(1) الجامعة	(2) يجتاز
(3) الامتحانات	(4) يتزوج
(5) يفضل	(6) شقة

Presenter Rami, what do you want to do when you're older?

Rami I really want to be an architect. I must go to university[1] for that, so I need to work hard. I won't pass[2] my exams[3] if I don't work hard! When I finish university, I want to travel. I'd like to get a job in another country, like South Africa. But after a few years, I'll come back to Egypt. I'd like to get married[4] one day, but I don't want to live in Cairo. I prefer[5] the countryside!

Presenter Amira, what about you?

Rami I want to go to university, so I hope I'll pass my exams! If I go to university, I'll study science. I'd love to be a scientist! It's a really interesting job. I'd like to get a job in Cairo and buy an apartment[6]. I want to learn to drive so that I can visit my family. One day, I'd like to get married and have children.



Pre-reading question: - Why is it important to keep traditional jobs?

Read quickly and match the photos A–D to the texts. There is one extra photo.

SB page 60

Traditional jobs in Africa









Today, many people in Africa work in modern offices, but traditional(1) jobs and skills(2) are still important.

1. B

People started making pottery(3) thousands of years ago in Egypt. Some people make pottery in workshops(4) or their own homes. If you go to Fayoum, you will see many people making pottery. There is also a school where children and adults(5) can learn this skill.

2. D

It is traditional to make jewellery(6) in Kenya. You can see the colourful(7) jewellery in markets all over the country. Today, some local businesses(8) also use social media(9) and the internet to sell jewellery to people in different countries. It is an important skill because it continues an old tradition(10) and it helps local people to earn(11) money.

3. A

It is an important part of Africa's culture(12) to make baskets. It is also a way for women from small African villages to earn money. In Ghana, there are a lot of women who make and sell baskets. You can buy colourful baskets from Ghana in countries all over the world.

(1) تقليدى
(2) مهارات
(3) الفخار
(4) ورش
(5) بالغون
(6) مجوهرات
(7) زاهى الألوان
(8) أعمال تجارية محلية
(9) وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
(10) تقليد
(11) يربح مالًا
(12) ثقافة



Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

pottery /pɒtəri/
social /soʊʃəl/
jewellery /dʒu:əlri/
culture /kʌltʃəʳ/

Post-reading question:

- How do you think these jobs will change in the future?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Making .... of clay is an ancient Egyptian craft. البحيرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) books b) jewellery c) pottery d) boots
2. If I take that job, I'll .... more money.
   a) miss b) beat c) win d) earn
3. A .... is a place where people can make things or learn new skills.
   a) workshop b) countryside c) cinema d) soil
4. .... are the ideas that people think to be true.
   a) Skills b) Beliefs c) Blogs d) Rings
5. My father .... married in 1990. البحيرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) gave b) made c) got d) passed
6. I wake up early to .... the bus to school.
   a) go b) arrive c) make d) catch
7. The farmer .... fresh vegetables at the market.
   a) earns b) sells c) repairs d) hopes
8. He was very happy when he .... his exams.
   a) dried b) changed c) passed d) carried
9. .... is the art, ideas, beliefs, etc. of a group of people. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
   a) Reading b) Science c) Culture d) Art
10. There are many different kinds of ...., like shops, restaurants, and factories near my town.
    a) presents b) businesses c) traditions d) beliefs
11. If you want to get better at a sport, you should .... a lot.
    a) change b) earn c) pass d) practise
12. My plan .... the weekend is to go camping with my family.
    a) for b) in c) off d) with
13. My cousin is a/an .... now. She was 18 last week! WB
    a) thing b) idea c) child d) adult
14. I got lots of .... on my birthday party. WB
    a) presents b) prizes c) medals d) beliefs
15. A .... is a type of website where people can write about their ideas.
    a) job b) blog c) skill d) goal
16. .... people are very happy about the plans to open another hospital in their village.
    a) Local b) Brave c) Modern d) Traditional

C Language

The first conditional (If) الحالة الشرطية الأولى

- **We use the first conditional to talk about the probable result of an action:**
- تستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للحديث عن نتيجة محتملة عن حدث.

Form التكوين

If / When > subj. + present simple مضارع بسيط > subj. + will/won't + inf.

- If/When I go to university, I'll study maths.
- If I don't work hard, I won't pass my exams.

Subj. + will/won't + inf. > if / when > subj. + present simple مضارع بسيط

- I'll study maths if/when I go to university.
- I won't pass my exams if I don't work hard.

Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

A Yes/No question: السؤال بـ «هل»

Will + subj. الفاعل + inf. مصدر + if + subj. + present simple...? المضارع البسيط

- **A:** Will you buy a new car if you have much money?

  - **B:** Yes, I will. - **B:** No, I will not (won't).

B Wh-question: السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام

Question word كلمة استفهام + will + subj. الفاعل + inf. مصدر + if + subj. + present simple? المضارع البسيط

- **A:** What will you do if it's cold tomorrow? - **B:** We won't go to the beach.

Got it ?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She will play with us if she .... (come) early.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (comes) لوجود if التى يسبقها مستقبل وبالتالى يأتى بعدها الفعل فى زمن المضارع البسيط.

2. What will you do if it .... (was) very hot in summer?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (is) لوجود if فى حالة السؤال التى يسبقها المستقبل ويأتى بعدها المضارع البسيط.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If it .... tomorrow, we will stay indoors.
   a) rained b) raining c) rains d) rain
2. When students .... their best, they'll get better at most subjects.
   a) try b) tries c) tried d) will try
3. If we work hard, Egypt .... the richest country in the world. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) is b) will be c) was d) were
4. If Lara .... in the city, she will use the bus. البحيرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) stay b) stays c) staying d) stayed
5. If Basmala .... for the test, she'll do well.
   a) studies b) study c) studied d) will study
6. The birds .... closer to you when you feed them.
   a) comes b) will come c) come d) coming
7. Will you buy a new house if you .... a lot of money?
   a) has b) will have c) had d) have
8. .... you don't clean your room, your mother will be angry with you.
   a) When b) Because c) So d) Although
9. If you don't wear your jacket, you .... cold.
   a) feels b) will feel c) felt d) feeling
10. .... you listen carefully, you will learn new things.
   a) So b) Because c) When d) While

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If we move to Cairo, my father .... (would) get a new job. دمياط ٢٠٢٣
2. If she .... (clean) her room, she'll find her lost toy.
3. Will she .... (travels) abroad if she gets a good job?
4. If he .... (won't) leave early, he will miss the bus.
5. If you study hard, you .... (passes) the exam. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
6. If you .... (wears) your pullover, you won't be cold outside.

D Skills



Write it right



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب
من كتابة فقرة بشكل جيد.

How to write about your future plans كيفية الكتابة عن خططك المستقبلية

- My name's (الاسم).
- I'm a student at a preparatory school.
- When I go to university, I want to study (المادة).
- I'd like to get a good job in the future.
- I hope to have (عدد) children when I get married.
- In (عدد) years' time, I think I'll learn to drive a car.

Writing tips

When you write your text, remember to:
- End with a conclusion.
- Read your final text and check for any mistakes.

عند كتابة النص، تذكر التالى:
١. اختتم الفقرة بجملة تلخيصية.
٢. اقرأ الفقرة وتأكد من عدم وجود أخطاء بها.

Example

To: youssef@exams.com
From: amr@student.com
Subject: My future plans

Dear Youssef,

I hope everything is OK. I always think about my future and make plans for it. When I leave school, I'd like to join a university. When I go to university, I want to study medicine. I'd like to get a good job in the future. I'd like to have my own clinic and help the poor. I hope to have two children when I get married. I'll look after them. In eight years' time, I think I'll learn to drive a car. I'm going to have a modern car. I hope I'll achieve my dreams.

Please, write back soon.

Yours,
Amr

Check Point

Write an email on your future predictions.

To : .... **From:** ....
Subject : ....

....

....

....

....

TEST YOURSELF

Take a test



Unit 12 Lessons (3 & 4)



17.5

1 Read the following, then answer the questions:

When I close my eyes and see my future, I see myself as an architect, designing beautiful buildings. I love to draw and design, and being an architect will allow me to bring my ideas to life. I will design houses and bridges. People will live, work, and play in the places I **create**.

But my dreams don't stop at my job. I also want to get married and have a loving family. I dream of finding a special person who shares my love. Together, we will build a happy home full of love. We will have children and watch them grow. We will help them achieve their dreams, just like my parents helped me.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

....

2. What does the underlined pronoun "we" refer to?

....

3. Do you think the writer will achieve his dreams?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The writer's future family will have lots of ....
   a) love b) ideas c) buildings d) dreams
5. The writer likes to ....
   a) play b) draw c) design d) both b & c
6. The word "**create**" is similar in meaning to ....
   a) write b) travel c) damage d) build

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... means things such as rings and necklaces that you wear.
   a) Education b) Clay c) Jewellery d) Pottery
2. You can see people making baskets in the .... down the road. WB
   a) workshop b) hospital c) farm d) school
3. It's fun to give and take .... on special days.
   a) presents b) skills c) traditions d) blogs
4. A .... means an ability to do something well. WB
   a) skill b) skull c) skeleton d) skip

5. Some .... are very old and are hundreds or thousands years old.

a) blogs b) traditions c) presents d) mobiles

6. We live in a/an .... in a large building.

a) hospital b) floor c) kitchen d) apartment

7. The Internet is .... for finding information quickly.

a) use b) useful c) hope d) useless

8. If you .... help me cook dinner, we will be late for your father.

a) aren't b) didn't c) don't d) won't

9. When parents look after their children, they .... happy and healthy.

a) will be b) are c) were d) be

10. What will they do if he .... the money?

a) don't send b) doesn't send c) won't send d) hasn't sent

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I .... (would) try windsurfing when I go to Hurghada.
2. If you give me your book today, I .... (return) it tomorrow. بنى سويف ٢٠٢٢
3. If he has enough money, he .... (buys) an apartment near the Red Sea.
4. You .... (will pass) your exams if you don't work hard.

4 Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words on your plans for the future. Your name is Yazan and your email address is zizo@gmail.com. Your friend's name is Said and his email address is said17@yahoo.com.

To : .... From: ....

Subject : ....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب.

1 If it's too cold outside, we will stay inside and .... (watching) TV.

2 If you have enough money, ... (you will) change your car?

3 If you feel ill, you .... (shouldn't) see a doctor.





Lessons 5 & 6



SB pages 61 - 63 | WB pages 111 - 113

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

changes (n)	تغيرات	illness (n)	مرض
cure (d) (n/v)	علاج/يعالج	injury (n)	إصابة
grandchildren (n)	أحفاد	predictions (n)	تنبؤات

Additional Vocabulary — المفردات الإضافية

completely (adv)	تمامًا	language (n)	لغة
electric (adj)	كهربائى (يعمل بالكهرباء)	revise (d) (v)	يراجع
health (n)	صحة	sailor (n)	بحار

Check Point

Choose and complete: electric - health - healthy - changes

1. The company plans to make many .... next year.
2. I think we will drive .... cars in the future.
3. Eating fruit and vegetables gives you strong ....

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للمفردات الرئيسية والإضافية.

Language Expressions — التعبيرات اللغوية

book	a ticket	يحجز تذكرة	make	predictions	يقوم بتنبؤات
design	an app	يصمم تطبيقًا	stay	healthy	يبقى صحيًا
	a video game	يصمم لعبة فيديو	take	a holiday	يأخذ إجازة
find	cures	يجد علاجات	What about later on?		ماذا عما يحدث لاحقًا؟

Prepositions — حروف الجر

cure for	علاج لـ	learn how to + inf.	يتعلم كيف أن
in ten years' time	خلال عشر سنوات	work on a ship/boat	يعمل على سفينة/قارب

Words and Opposites — الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
disappear	يختفى	appear	يظهر
exciting	مثير	boring	ممل

Check Point

Choose and complete: to - for - make - do

1 The teacher asked us to .... predictions for the future.

2 Scientists found many cures .... most illnesses.

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس فهمك للتعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر.





جزء إثرائى للدراسة والفهم وليس للحفظ.

Definitions التعريفات

app	تطبيق	something on your phone that helps you use maps, book tickets, etc.
countryside	الريف	the area that is outside a town or a city
design	يصمم	to draw something that you plan to build or make

Words and Synonyms الكلمات ومرادفها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (Meaning)	مرادفها
exciting	مثير	interesting	شيق

Suffix اللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Suffix اللاحقة	Function الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
ill (adj)	مريض	-ness	تحويل الصفة لاسم	illness (n)	مرض
sail (v)	يبحر	-or	تحويل الفعل لأسم فاعل	sailor (n)	بحار

Prefix البادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Word	الكلمة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
dis-	تعطى عكس المعنى	appear (v)	يظهر	disappear (v)	يختفى

B Reading & Listening Skills

Lesson 5

Pre-listening question:

- What are your plans for the future?

 **Listen and complete the fact files.** *SB page 61*

Presenter What are your plans[1] for the future, Hussein?

Hussein I've got a lot of plans for the future. Next year, I want to learn to play the guitar. And before I leave school, I want to design a video game!

Presenter Wow! And what about later on? What will your life[2] be like in ten years' time?

Hussein In ten years' time, I want to have a good job. I think I'll be a doctor. I'd like to live in the city.

Presenter Thank you, Hussein.

(1) خطط
(2) الحياة
(3) لغة

Presenter Khadeeja, what are your plans for the future?

Khadeeja Well, one day I'd like to be a teacher. But there are lots of other things I want to do first.

Presenter Tell me about them.

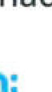
Khadeeja Well, before I get a job, I'd like to learn a new language[3]. I also want to learn to drive.



Presenter And what will your life be like in 10 years' time?

Khadeeja That's a long way into the future, isn't it? Well, in 10 years' time, I'll have a job in a school. I think I'll get married, too.

Presenter Thanks, Khadeeja.



Post-listening question:

- Do you think that Hussein and Khadeeja will achieve their goals? Why?

Pre-listening question:

Lesson 5

- Why do we need to have a lot of skills?

 **Listen and put Dina's plans in the correct order (from first to last).**

WB page 111

Dina I want to be a doctor, but I need a lot of skills[1] to do that.

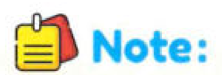


(1) مهارات (2) نصيحة

(3) عمل تطوعي

Tomorrow, I'm going to visit my uncle. He's a doctor, so he can give me some advice[2]. Next summer, I'm going to study English in England. You need to speak good English to be a doctor.

Before I leave school, I'm going to do voluntary work[3] at a children's hospital. In a few years' time, I want to go to a good university. Then, in about ten years' time, I think I'll be a doctor in a good hospital!



Note:

تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمة التالية:

voluntary /vɒləntri/

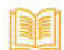
Post-listening question:

- Why do you think Dina wants to do voluntary work?

Pre-reading question:

Lesson 6

- How do you think life will be like in the future?

 **Put the text in the correct order 1-4.**

WB page 112

Today, I am going to write about life in the future. I think life in the next 100 years will be very different. Here are some reasons why.

First, I think there will be a lot more people living in Egypt. I think our cities will be much bigger. They will also be better. We will have clean, quiet electric cars.

Second, we are all going to be healthier. People will not work long hours so they will have more time to do sports and stay healthy.

In conclusion, I think the future will be very different, but I am hopeful that life will be better for my children and my grandchildren.

Post-reading question:

- Do you think that life will be easier for our children and grandchildren? Why/ Why not?

Pre-reading question:

- Do you think technology will make our lives more interesting?

Read Ahmed's text. How many of your ideas were the same? SB page 62

My predictions[1] for the future

By Ahmed

In the next 30 years, there will be a lot of changes in our lives.





Technology[2] will make our lives easier and more interesting. Our phones will be even more important and we will have apps[3] for everything.

Scientists will find new cures[4] for illnesses[5] so people will live longer. Some illnesses will disappear[6] completely.

All our cars will be electric[7]. If this happens, it will be much better for the air in our cities, won't it? I don't think I will have to learn to drive because cars will drive themselves!

(1) تنبؤات	(2) التكنولوجيا
(3) تطبيقات	(4) علاج
(5) أمراض	(6) يختفي
(7) كهربى	(8) إنسان آلى

There will be a lot of interesting new jobs for people. Robots[8] will do some of the jobs that people do today. But I don't think we will have robot doctors or teachers!

I think there will be a lot of exciting changes in the future, but some things will stay the same. Children will still go to school, learn new things and spend time with friends.



تعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات التالية:

prediction /prɪdɪkʃən/ electric /ɪlektrɪk/

Post-reading question:

- From your point of view, how useful are electric cars?

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Practise more



▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Doctors and scientists work hard to find a .... for different illnesses.
   a) way b) cure c) solution d) prediction
2. When you fall off your bike, you have a/an ....
   a) illness b) blood c) cure d) injury
3. A computer programmer is the person who designs a/an ....
   a) app b) map c) sport d) building
4. Old people always .... advice to young people.
   a) take b) give c) do d) make
5. We should always make .... for the future.
   a) illnesses b) presents c) instructions d) predictions
6. My dad's car is .... , so it doesn't make noise and doesn't need fuel.
   a) electric b) electrical c) electricity d) electrician
7. If you're not feeling well, you may have a/an ....
   a) doctor b) illness c) health d) cure
8. A .... is a person who works and travels on a ship or a boat.
   a) ticket b) cure c) sailor d) prediction
9. After .... school, you can go to university.
   a) getting b) giving c) revising d) finishing
10. The last school trip to the Great Pyramid was .... I want to go there again.
    a) boring b) exciting c) interested d) ugly
11. Technology and the world around us will change .... ten years' time.
    a) at b) in c) on d) for
12. Before a test, it's important to .... your lessons.
    a) revise b) book c) design d) leave
13. My brother is good at .... He likes English, French and Spanish.
    a) subjects b) projects c) objects d) languages
14. The .... is the area that is outside a town or a city.
    a) countryside b) city c) capital d) town
15. When you grow up, your body will go through many ....
    a) changes b) medicines c) cures d) predictions
16. My grandmother and grandfather have two .... —me and my sister!
    a) grandchildren b) fathers c) grandfathers d) mothers



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من
حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

Speaking

Talking about your future plans

الحديث عن خططك فى المستقبل

- Next year, I'm going to learn a new language.
- Before I leave school, I think I'll design a video game.
- In ten years' time, I'll get married.
- Before I go to university, I'd like to learn to drive.
- In five years' time, I want to buy a new car.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialogue:

Sara and Eman are discussing their plans for the future.

Sara : What are your plans for the summer, Eman?

Eman : I want to take a holiday with my family. (1)..?

Sara : I plan to work on a ship as a nurse.

Eman : (2).. . What do you want to do after that?

Sara : (3).. .

Eman : Diving is a good hobby! What about your other plans?

Sara : (4).. . I'd like to have a family with two children.

Eman : Where will you live in ten years' time?

Sara : I want to live in a big city. (5)..?

Eman : I want to live in the countryside.

Take a test

TEST YOURSELF



Unit 12 Lessons (5 & 6)



15.5

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ali is asking Nadia about her plans for the future.

Ali : What are your plans for the future?

Nadia : (1).. .

Ali : A teacher! What other things do you want to do?

Nadia : (2).. .

Ali : (3)..?

Nadia : I'd like to work in an international school.

Ali : (4)..?

Nadia : When I get married, I hope to have three children.

Ali : What else will you do in 15 years?

Nadia : (5).. .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To .... is to draw something that you plan to build or make.
   a) design b) change c) plan d) hope
2. A/An .... is something on your phone that helps you use maps, book tickets, etc.
   a) file b) click c) icon d) app
3. Some illnesses will .... completely in the future.
   a) disappear b) appear c) make d) cure
4. My friend hopes that he will learn to .... the guitar in the future.
   a) build b) give c) do d) play
5. In five years' time, I want to .... a new language.
   a) drive b) appear c) learn d) hope
6. Life in the .... is quieter than life in the city.
   a) prison b) court c) hospital d) countryside
7. I think we'll live on other planets. This is my ....
   a) decision b) prediction c) action d) relation

8. I'll study medicine .... I go to university.

a) when　　b) where　　c) why　　d) what

9. Ahmed, ... is a famous player, is my friend.

a) which　　b) how　　c) who　　d) whose

10. My family will buy a new apartment if we .... to the city.

a) moved　　b) moves　　c) moving　　d) move

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If I .... (got) up late, I won't catch the bus.
2. Today .... (was) a nice day, isn't it?
3. Hazem won't travel around the world if he .... (will get) a good job in Egypt.
4. Technology will make our lives more interesting, won't .... (she)?

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"How will life be after 50 years?"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Challenging Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب.

1 If you have an idea for an app, you can learn how to .... it.

a) change　　b) disappear

c) design　　d) fell

2 It's important to work hard to .... school successfully.

a) leave　　b) finish

c) damage　　d) escape

Review on Unit 12

Vocabulary

change jobs	يغير وظائف
prediction	تنبؤ
computer programs	برامج الكمبيوتر
research	بحث علمى
robot	إنسان آلى
technology	التكنولوجيا
terrible	فظيع
engine	موتور/محرك
weather	الطقس
accountant	محاسب
architect	مهندس معمارى
businessman	رجل أعمال
businesswoman	سيدة أعمال
computer programmer	مبرمج كمبيوتر
dentist	طبيب أسنان
engineer	مهندس مدنى
photographer	مصور
scientist	عالم
marine biologist	عالم الأحياء البحرية

Language

1. Relative Pronoun "who"

- نستطيع ربط جملتين (للعاقل) باستخدام (who) ضمير الوصل

- A businesswoman is a person. She works in an office.
- A businesswoman is a person who works in an office.

2. Question Tag

- You like meat, don't you?
- She plays chess well, doesn't she?
- He studied his lessons well, didn't he?

3. The first conditional

- نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للحديث عن نتيجة محتملة عن حدث

If/When subj. + present simple,
subj. will/won't + inf.
Subj. will/won't + inf. if/when subj. +
present simple

- If I go to university, I'll study maths.
- I'll study maths when I go to university.

Skills

Talking about your future plans:

- Next year, I'm going to learn a new language.
- Before I leave school, I think I'll design a video game.
- In ten years' time, I'll get married.
- Before I go to university, I'd like to learn to drive.
- In five years' time, I want to buy a new car.



Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 12






A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. Mayan has got a lot of .... for the future.
   a) planes b) plans c) designs d) drawings
2. She wants to be a ....
   a) doctor b) teacher c) vet d) farmer
3. Mayan likes .... people.
   a) helps b) helped c) help d) helping
4. She wants to work in a ....
   a) school b) hospital c) farm d) shop

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Naglaa is asking Samar about her future job. سوهاج ٢٠٢٢

Naglaa : Which job would you like to do?
Samar : (1).. .
Naglaa : A teacher! (2)..?
Samar : Because I want to help children learn new things.
Naglaa : Are there any teachers in your family?
Samar : (3).. .
Naglaa : (4)..?
Samar : My mother is a nurse.
Naglaa : Does she like her job?
Samar : (5).. .

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

Doctors are important because they look after people. Doctors are people who take care of others and help them get well when they are **sick**. Doctors find out what is wrong with people when they are sick. Doctors help sick people get better by giving them medicine. They work in hospitals. They are helpful.

To be a doctor, you should work hard. You should like working with people and helping others. You should be kind. If you aren't kind, people won't love you.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to the passage.

....

2. What do you think of the doctor's job?

....

3. Where do doctors work?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. If you aren't a kind doctor, people will .... you.
   a) love   b) like   c) dislike   d) admire
5. The underlined word "They" refers to ....
   a) doctors   b) patients   c) nurses   d) farmers
6. .... means the same as "**sick**".
   a) Tall   b) Happy   c) Ill   d) Thin

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An .... is a person who writes books or articles.
   a) writer   b) pilot   c) engineer   d) photographer
2. My uncle designs .... for planes.
   a) machines   b) goals   c) engines   d) tests
3. Hatem is a very clever .... He takes good photos.
   a) dentist   b) scientist   c) pilot   d) photographer
4. We should .... to learn new skills.
   a) continue   b) catch   c) pass   d) win
5. I'd love to buy a modern car, so I decided to .... to drive.
   a) catch   b) win   c) teach   d) learn
6. In the next 30 years, there will be a lot of .... in our lives.
   a) bones   b) changes   c) gloves   d) glasses

7. Before I leave school, I'm going to .... voluntary work at a children's hospital.

a) do b) make c) play d) win

8. Sandy is the girl .... I met on Friday.

a) which b) where c) whose d) who

9. There is a picture on the wall, ...?

a) isn't it b) is it c) is there d) isn't there

10. If she .... this question correctly, she will get an extra point.

a) answering b) will answer c) answer d) answers

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. This is the boy .... (which) had an accident.
2. If we work in groups, we .... (finished) it quicker.
3. I will remember you if you .... (gives) me a photo.
4. Mary didn't do her homework last Monday, ... (was) she?

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your life in the future"

....

....

....

....

....

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Solve more exams	Well done!

Review D







Units 10, 11 & 12



SB pages 64&65 | (WB) Pages 116 & 117

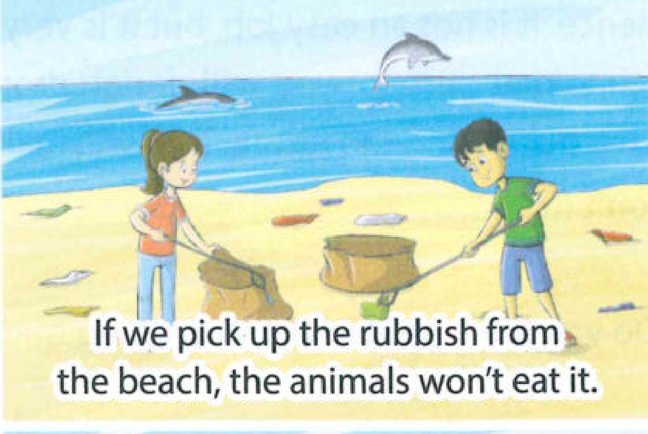
Pre-reading question:

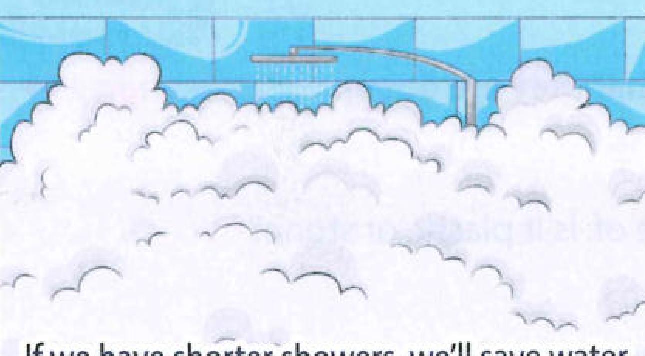
Lesson 1

- Why should we pick up rubbish from the beach?

Read the story quickly. Why is Tarek worried? *SB page 64*







We must walk or cycle when we can.

I always ride my bike to the sports centre.





Post-reading question:

- What will happen if we have shorter showers?

Lesson 1

Pre-reading question:

- What does an aeronautical engineer do?

Read and complete the article with the words in the box. *WB page 114*

In the past, many people had **traditional** jobs that people still do today. There were many teachers and bakers, for example. However, some jobs are quite new, **aren't** they? For example, an aeronautical engineer is a person **who** designs things that fly. If you **want** to become an aeronautical engineer, you will have to study science. It is not an easy job, but it is very **interesting**. If you want to help future technology, perhaps you **will** design drones. Many people think that drones will **carry** our post in the future. That will make the skies above our cities interesting, **won't** it?

Post-reading question:

- Do you think people will stop doing traditional jobs?

Lesson 1

Listen and match each speaker with what they are doing. *WB page 114*

1. Guessing something:

I'm not sure what this souvenir is made of. Is it plastic or stone?

2. Giving instructions in order:

OK, first look for the fruit that is yellow.

Then feel the fruit carefully. It should not be too soft.

So, if it's yellow and not too soft, what should you do?

Well, finally, take it carefully from the tree.

3. Checking information:

Hello, so, it's Mrs Shabana, isn't it? And you have got two children in this class, haven't you? But Aya isn't in school today, is she?

4. Talking about future plans:

Before I go to university, I think I'll travel for a few months. Then I'd like to work for a charity.

Pre-listening question:

- What are magazines made of?

Hala and Malak are doing a recycling project at school. Listen and tick (✓) the materials you hear. *SB page 65*

Malak Here are the boxes for the recycling project. Different rubbish goes into different boxes.

Hala Great! So which box does this bottle go into?

Malak What is it made of – plastic or glass?

Hala It's made of plastic.

Malak OK, it goes into the yellow box.

Hala Right … There's another bottle here. This one is made of glass.

Malak If it's made of glass, it goes into the blue box.

Hala What about this magazine? It's made of paper.

Malak It goes into the red box.

Hala Where can I put this can?

Malak If it's made of metal, it goes into the green box.

Hala Yes, it's made of metal … I'm putting it in the green box.

Malak What's left?

Hala Just this T-shirt. We can't recycle that, can we? It's made of cotton.

Malak We're not going to recycle the clothes – but we can give them to other people so that they can use them. Put them in the orange box, please.

Hala The orange box … OK.

Malak Great. Everything is ready. Thanks for your help, Hala.

Post-listening question:

- What are T-shirts made of?

Listening Texts

Unit 7 Test yourself Lessons 1 & 2

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Last weekend was fantastic. It was Ali's birthday so we went out and had a lot of fun. In the morning, we went to the funfair where we rode on the big wheel. After that, we visited the aquarium where we saw many colourful fish. We came home in the evening.

Unit 7 Al-Adwaa Test

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

It was a fantastic weekend. I got up at 5 a.m. and had breakfast. We went to Siwa by car. I enjoyed reading my favourite book in the car.

Unit 8 Test yourself Lessons 1 & 2

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

The Great Pyramid of Giza is 146 metres tall. The Red Pyramid is 105 metres tall. The Red Pyramid is less crowded with visitors and it's also quieter.

Unit 8 Al-Adwaa Test

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

The oldest museum in Cairo opened in 1835. There were more than 160,000 of Egypt's most valuable treasures on display. However, the museum did not have space for 100,000 other objects. It was a wonderful museum.

Unit 9 Test yourself Lessons 1 & 2

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Next holiday, I am going to travel to Luxor and Aswan with my family. We are going to stay for one month in Aswan. We are going to leave Aswan at the end of December. Then, we are going to travel to Luxor. We are going to spend the rest of holiday in Luxor.

Unit 9 Al-Adwaa Test

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name's Sameh. Yesterday was an adventure. We went trekking in the mountains. It was sunny when we started, but when we got to the top of the mountain, we saw dark clouds.

Unit 10 Test yourself Lessons 1 & 2

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

The people, from Deir el-Medina in ancient Egypt, worked in the Valley of the Kings. There were 68 houses. People got their water from the Nile Valley.

Unit 10 Al-Adwaa Test

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I think we will have electric cars in the future. They will use electricity to move and they'll be easy to drive in traffic. They will be better for the environment.

Unit 11 Test yourself Lessons 1 & 2

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

The shark is the most dangerous sea animal in the ocean. If it loses a tooth, a new one grows. It uses more than 20,000 teeth in its life!

Unit 11 Al-Adwaa Test

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I am very excited because me and my family are going to visit a nature reserve next week. A nature reserve is home to many plants, animals and birds. We must be careful of what to do as there are many important living things there.

Unit 12 Test yourself Lessons 1 & 2

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name is Anas. I want to be an accountant. It's an interesting job, but it isn't an easy job. You have to do a lot of sums. I'm good at maths.

Unit 12 Al-Adwaa Test

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name is Mayan. I have a lot of plans for the future. I want to be a doctor like my father. We like helping people. I want to work in a hospital in a foreign country.

Challenging Questions Answers

Unit 7

Lessons 1 & 2

1. a) called
2. d) has
3. d) never

Lessons 3 & 4

1. it is
2. went
3. What/How

Lessons 5 & 6

1. a) have
2. d) to
3. a) around

Unit 8

Lessons 1 & 2

1. a) tunnel
2. d) more expensive
3. b) older

Lessons 3 & 4

1. least expensive
2. widest
3. fast

Lessons 5 & 6

1. c) designs
2. a) covered
3. d) the bravest

Unit 9

Lessons 1 & 2

1. b) fun
2. d) Bedouin
3. a) he is

Lessons 3 & 4

1. ourselves
2. themselves
3. yourself

Lessons 5 & 6

1. a) not go
2. d) to
3. c) by

Unit 10

Lessons 1 & 2

1. c) away
2. a) round
3. a) some

Lessons 3 & 4

1. will come
2. will visit
3. is going to rain

Lessons 5 & 6

1. b) was
2. a) character
3. c) experiences

Unit 11

Lessons 1 & 2

1. c) with
2. a) stung
3. a) should

Lessons 3 & 4

1. must
2. shouldn't
3. should start
4. is

Lessons 5 & 6

1. c) heading
2. b) gloves
3. d) rubbish bag

Unit 12

Lessons 1 & 2

1. b) engine
2. c) volunteer
3. d) didn't

Lessons 3 & 4

1. watch
2. will you
3. should

Lessons 5 & 6

1. c) design
2. b) finish



رقم الإيداع: ٢٠٢٣/٢٠٤٧٩

ترخيص وزارة التربية والتعليم رقم:

١٣٧/٢/٩/١٠٣

طبعة: 2024

خدمة العملاء: 16766

NAHDET MISR

PUBLISHING HOUSE


1st PREP
SECOND TERM
AL ADWAA
Gem
2024
NEW HELLO!
Ongoing Assessment & Exams Booklet

Contents

Part 1 Ongoing Assessment

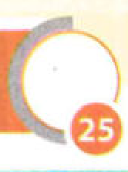


1 Check Your Vocabulary
إملاء خاص بكل درسين

2 Lessons Quiz
نموذج اختبار قصير خاص بكل درسين



Check Your Vocabulary



Vocabulary

بالغ من العمر	....	صالة البولينج	....
مقصف (كانتين)	....	معرض	....
عصبى/متوتر	....	مركز رياضى	....
متحف	....	معرض الأحياء المائية	....
استاد كرة القدم	....	مبنى القبة السماوية	....
الملاهى	....	مذكرة/يومية	....
تمثال	....	زى موحد	....

Language Expressions & Prepositions

يؤدى أنشطة	....	يقص شعره	....
يذهب للتسوق	....	يركب العجلة الدوارة	....
خائف من	....	يقرر أن	....

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

يكتشف	....	....	....
يغادر/يترك	....	....	....
يدرس/يُعلم	....	....	....

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
fantastic	....
exciting	....

Unit 7
Lessons 1 & 2

Quiz in 



15

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. I loved fish, but I didn't see any whales at the .... الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) funfair b) museum c) aquarium d) bank
2. I saw a/an .... of old statues at the museum.
   a) dinosaur b) funfair c) centre d) exhibition
3. I visit the .... to see the planets and stars.
   a) bowling alley b) aquarium c) planetarium d) stadium
4. I usually .... swimming in the early morning when the beach is almost empty.
   a) teach b) make c) go d) do
5. He needs to .... a haircut because his hair is too long.
   a) do b) have c) watch d) go
6. She .... a bus to the market because she was in a hurry.
   a) made b) went c) took d) designed
7. I .... on the big wheel. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) rode b) saw c) did d) heard

Language

8. Mariem .... a new skirt last Saturday. القليوبية ٢٠٢٣
   a) buy b) buys c) buying d) bought
9. Why did you .... the school bus yesterday?
   a) miss b) missed c) missing d) misses
10. .... he call his friend yesterday?
   a) Was b) Did c) Is d) Does

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

5

1. We .... (was) in the park two days ago. We were in the cinema.
2. .... (Do) they visit their grandparents last weekend?
3. Where did you go on holiday .... (next) summer?
4. She .... (cleans) her room yesterday.
5. They .... (not) have pizza for dinner last night.



Unit 7
Lessons 3 & 4

Check Your Vocabulary



25

Vocabulary

....	فرقة موسيقية	....	قصة مغامرات
....	موسيقار/عازف	....	عاصفة
....	بوق (آلة موسيقية)	....	جزيرة
....	كلاسيكى	....	كهف
....	تقليدى	....	أدغال
....	مضغوط	....	ميت

Language Expressions & Prepositions

....	ينزل إلى	....	يبحث عن
....	يشارك مع	....	يعزف البيانو
....	يمشى بامتداد	....	يدوّن

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

....	يسقط	....	....
....	ينسى	....	....
....	يرتفع	....	....

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
famous	....
useful	....

Definitions

....................................: a place where you wash plates and cups in a kitchen

....................................: someone who works on a boat or ship

Unit 7
Lessons 3 & 4

Quiz in 



15

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. The recipe was .... We didn't like it. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣

a) nice b) delicious c) terrible d) good

2. Omar learned to play chess at a .... club. He used to go on foot.

a) nearly b) nearby c) far d) farther

3. I am feeling .... because I have two exams tomorrow.

a) stressed b) useful c) exciting d) joyful

4. I need to write .... a shopping list before going to the market.

a) up b) down c) to d) into

5. Could you please tell me what happened .... your uncle?

a) to b) on c) through d) over

6. Do you .... your room with your brother?

a) spend b) stay c) make d) share

7. We saw many different types of plants and animals .... the island.

a) on b) in c) with d) for

Language

8. What .... your favourite book?

a) are b) is c) does d) do

9. .... your father buy his new car last week? الغربية ٢٠٢٣

a) Did b) Do c) Is d) Was

10. How .... sisters do you have?

a) long b) often c) many d) much

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

5

1. .... (Which) do you think about the match?
2. .... (Who) do you feel about working at the weekends?
3. .... (Does) your father working now?
4. Why must we .... (cleaned) the beaches?
5. .... (What) is your favourite writer?



Check Your Vocabulary



Vocabulary

أفكار	....	مسرح	....
نصائح	....	حفلة موسيقية	....
آلة موسيقية	....	شيق	....
رحلة	....	رأى	....
مشاعر	....	شعور/عاطفة	....

Language Expressions & Prepositions

تذكرة لـ	....	يذهب فى إجازة	....
يتوقف عن العمل	....	سبب/مبرر لـ	....
يلتقط صورة شخصية	....	يُسقط الهاتف	....

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

ينهض	....	....	....
يفهم	....	....	....

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
patient	....
brave	....

Unit 7
Lessons 5 & 6

Quiz in 

15

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Speaking

5

Nelly is asking Tamara about her last weekend.

Nelly : Hi, Tamara! How was your weekend?
Tamara : Hi, Nelly! (1).. . I went to the beach.
Nelly : That sounds lovely. Who did you go with?
Tamara : (2).. .
Nelly : (3)..?
Tamara : Yes, I did. The water was nice.
Nelly : Did you do anything special?
Tamara : (4).. . I went sand skiing.
Nelly : (5)..?
Tamara : We had some delicious seafood for lunch.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

10

1. He got up feeling afraid. He had a very .... dream.
   a) terrible b) happy c) good d) nice
2. The book I'm reading is very ....; I read it many times.
   a) terrible b) quiet c) bad d) interesting
3. The .... by train was long, but comfortable.
   a) whiteboard b) information c) journey d) concert
4. A: Which musical .... can you play? B: The guitar. القاهرة ٢٠٢٣
   a) tool b) concert c) instrument d) device
5. The tickets .... the theatre show are expensive.
   a) for b) at c) in d) on
6. The price of the tour .... two meals a day.
   a) stays b) shares c) drops d) includes
7. My brother .... a selfie with a famous sports star at the stadium.
   a) gave b) took c) did d) went

Language

8. .... you go to the gym today?
   a) Are b) Does c) Did d) Were
9. .... is your favourite colour?
   a) Who b) What c) When d) Where
10. She didn't .... to the beach yesterday. الأقصر ٢٠٢٣
   a) go b) went c) gone d) goes

Check Your Vocabulary



Vocabulary

حركة المرور	....	سكان	....
حقائق	....	نفق	....
غابة	....	برج	....
يخمن	....	قاموس	....
يقيس	....	ضفة النهر	....
الريف	....	يعبر	....
جسر/كوبرى	....	يربط	....

Language Expressions & Prepositions

يحصل على إجابات صحيحة	....	بعيد عن	....
أمثلة لـ	....	يؤدى اختبارًا صغيرًا	....
سهل لـ	....	يقارن بـ	....

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

يعتقد/يفكر	....	....	....
يبنى	....	....	....

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
empty	....
narrow	....
high	....

Unit 8
Lessons 1 & 2

Quiz in 



15

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

بني سويف ٢٠٢٣

1. There are many people in the shop. It is very ....
   a) quiet b) short c) deep d) crowded
2. The Burj Khalifa is the .... building in the world. It's the tallest.
   a) highest b) noisiest c) deepest d) narrowest
3. Old cars are usually noisier than .... cars.
   a) big b) ancient c) large d) modern
4. The teacher asked us to .... the meaning of the difficult words.
   a) compare b) measure c) guess d) link
5. How .... is the river in this area?
   a) heavy b) tall c) wide d) high
6. We need to cross the .... to get to the other side of the river.
   a) bridge b) bank c) beach d) tower
7. We can have a great view of the city from the ....
   a) tunnel b) tower c) tour d) theatre

Language

8. The castle is .... the museum.
   a) older b) more older c) much older d) older than
9. Modern laptops are .... than desktop computers.
   a) most expensive b) as expensive
   c) least expensive d) more expensive
10. This exam was .... than the exam in May.
   a) easy b) easier c) easiest d) as easy

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

5

1. The Temple of Horus is .... (new) than the Temple of Isis.
2. The holiday on the farm was .... (exciting) than the last holiday.
3. The hamburger was .... (tasty) than the fish and chips.
4. The roads in London are .... (busy) than the roads in Scotland.
5. The city is .... (beautiful) at night than during the day.



Check Your Vocabulary



Vocabulary

برنامج تلفزيونى	....	ثمن/سعر	....
يحمى	....	مُعلق	....
غروب الشمس	....	أرضية من الزجاج	....
تسلق الجبل	....	يصف	....
يشبه	....	من المحتمل	....
نادٍ رياضى	....	إنجاز	....
عبر	....	التزحلق على الجليد بلوح	....

Language Expressions & Prepositions

يمارس رياضة	....	منظر لـ	....
يعتقد/يفكر فى	....	فى رأيى	....
لا يتفق مع	....	فخور بـ	....

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

يشعر	....	....	....
يسمع	....	....	....

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
polite	....
healthy	....
popular	....

Unit 8
Lessons 3 & 4

Quiz in 10 min



15

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. You must look left and right when you .... the road.
   a) protect b) cross c) think d) disagree
2. Your opinion may be good, but I disagree .... it.
   a) with b) to c) about d) of
3. There is a big statue in .... of the museum.
   a) next b) away c) near d) front
4. She was proud of her .... at school. She came first.
   a) climbing b) suspension c) achievement d) opinion
5. The child was afraid because he .... a loud noise outside.
   a) heard b) listened c) thought d) drove
6. The Valley of the Kings is one of the most .... places. Many people visit it every day.
   a) bad b) terrible c) unknown d) popular
7. Girls always think .... what to wear.
   a) about b) in c) on d) for

Language

8. Do you know what .... fastest animal in the world is?
   a) the b) the most c) the more d) the least
9. Mountain climbing is .... dangerous sport. المنيا ٢٠٢٣
   a) more b) most c) the most d) the more
10. December is the .... month of the year in our city.
    a) as cold b) colder c) coldest d) cold

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

5

1. The .... (difficult) part of the exam was the listening.
2. Where are .... (nice) beaches in your country?
3. Who is .... (famous) singer in Egypt?
4. Hamza bought .... (biggest) cake in the shop.
5. Maged is very good at playing football, but Anas is .... (better) of all.



Check Your Vocabulary



Vocabulary

عمود	....	مجموعة	....
كتاب إرشادى	....	موقف السيارات	....
مدخل	....	كنز	....
وسط المدينة	....	منافسة/مسابقة	....
قيم/ذو قيمة	....	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	....
يصمم/تصميم	....	مقالة نقدية على موقع إنترنت	....
نافورة	....		

Language Expressions & Prepositions

مشابه لـ	....	يعتنى بـ	....
معروض/فى العرض	....	يدون ملاحظات	....
فى وقت لاحق	....	يقوم بنزهة	....

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
ancient	....

Unit 8 Lessons 5 & 6 — Quiz in 10 min

15

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Speaking 5

Samira is asking Rasha about reading.

Samira : Where are you going, Rasha?
Rasha : (1).. .
Samira : Why?
Rasha : To borrow some books.
Samira : (2)..?
Rasha : I like reading because it's very useful.
Samira : What do you think I should read?
Rasha : (3).. .
Samira : I love adventure! I think "*The Old Man and the Sea*" is a good story. (4)..?
Rasha : Yes, I agree. So, can you come with me?
Samira : (5).. .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary 10

1. The building has an open car ....
   a) picnic b) park c) website d) treasure
2. There are many shops and restaurants in the city ....
   a) centre b) statue c) tower d) column
3. The museum is full of ancient ....
   a) motorbikes b) tunnels c) entrances d) treasures
4. This painting is a .... work of art. It's great.
   a) deep b) sunny c) valuable d) terrible
5. The ancient Egyptians wrote in ....
   a) French b) Arabic c) hieroglyphics d) English
6. I live in a modern house with a big .... and a garden. بني سويف ٢٠٢٣
   a) bridge b) entrance c) mountain d) tunnel
7. I had a picnic in the .... garden a week ago.
   a) ugly b) terrible c) unknown d) public

Language

8. French is .... difficult than English.
   a) more b) most c) much d) many
9. This is the .... interesting book I read.
   a) more b) most c) much d) many
10. It rained all day. It was the .... day of the holiday.
   a) bad b) worse c) worst d) as bad



Unit 9
Lessons 1&2

Check Your Vocabulary



Vocabulary

....	الإبحار	....	معدات
....	التجديف	....	بدوى/بدو
....	ركوب الدراجات فى الجبل	....	مخيف
....	الانزلاق بالحبل	....	بحرص
....	تسلق الصخور	....	الغطس/الغوص
....	الارتحال/التجوال	....	ركوب الأمواج
....	مهارة	....	صفحة على الإنترنت

Language Expressions & Prepositions

....	يصل إلى	....	يجد الطريق
....	يفعل شيئًا ما	....	فى/عبر النيل
....	خطة لـ	....	يذهب فى رحلة بالقارب

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
quiet	....
usual	....

Definitions

....: a person who shows a place to tourists

....: something you sleep in when you go camping

....: an exciting experience when something unusual or dangerous happens

Unit 9
Lessons 1 & 2

Quiz in 

15

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

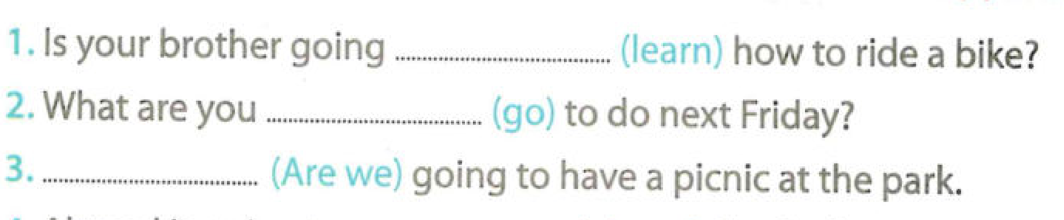
1. Kenzy would like to try .... She likes water sports.
   a) climbing b) biking c) kayaking d) zip lining
2. She walked .... on the icy road. She didn't want to fall over.
   a) carefully b) quickly c) badly d) fast
3. Nady had all the .... we need for camping.
   a) planes b) webpages c) dates d) equipment
4. A good .... can make your journey safer.
   a) experience b) guide c) turn d) trip
5. We are meeting to talk about our plans .... the weekend.
   a) of b) to c) for d) out
6. When we trek in the desert, we sleep in ....
   a) tents b) equipment c) turns d) experiences
7. Adel got lost trying to find his .... back to the camp.
   a) away b) way c) map d) guide

Language

8. Look at the sky! It's full of dark clouds. It .... rain soon. المنيا ٢٠٢٣
   a) will b) won't c) is going to d) isn't going to
9. My mother isn't going .... me any more money.
   a) to lend b) lend c) to lending d) lending
10. .... you going to try the new ice cream flavour?
    a) Have b) Will c) Do d) Are

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

5



1. Is your brother going .... (learn) how to ride a bike?
2. What are you .... (go) to do next Friday?
3. .... (Are we) going to have a picnic at the park.
4. Ahmed is going to .... (played) football.
5. I .... (be) going to visit Sinai next week.



Check Your Vocabulary



Vocabulary

متحمس	....	بطاقة بريدية	....
خط سكة حديد	....	يساند/يدعم	....
يعود/يرجع	....	عرض تقديمى	....
يجف/يجفف (بـ)	....	الطقس	....
مواصلات	....	فوطة/ منشفة	....
شخصية	....	طبيب أسنان	....
نسر	....	يفحص/يراجع	....

Language Expressions & Prepositions

يحمى من	....	يكمل تحديًا	....
يرتكب خطأ	....	يرتدى ملابسه	....
يأتى/يخرج من	....	يعطى فكرة لـ	....
فى الوقت المحدد	....	يجلس بجانب النار	....

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

يكتب	....	....	....
يعطى	....	....	....
يحفظ	....	....	....

Unit 9
Lessons 3 & 4

Quiz in



15

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. I went to the .... because my tooth hurt.
   a) guide b) dentist c) postcard d) character
2. The metro is a form of .... that most people like to take to travel fast.
   a) postcard b) towel c) sport d) transport
3. The TV show gave me a great idea .... a book.
   a) for b) at c) off d) out
4. Students should .... their answers before ending the test.
   a) keep b) delete c) check d) protect
5. We live near to the railway .... It is very noisy.
   a) line b) skill c) towel d) mirror
6. The top students took the .... to do a presentation in front of the head teacher.
   a) achievement b) possessions c) character d) challenge
7. Some people are sitting by the fire to .... warm.
   a) make b) keep c) take d) give

Language

8. Did you paint the picture by ...., boys?
   a) yourself b) yourselves c) himself d) themselves
9. Ali enjoyed .... in the swimming pool yesterday. أسيوط ٢٠٢٣
   a) yourself b) himself c) myself d) herself
10. Nada and Dina collected the rubbish ....
   a) themselves b) herself c) itself d) yourselves

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:



1. Dad and I fixed the car .... (themselves).
2. Look! There's a little bird washing .... (herself) in the river.
3. Grandpa hurt .... (yourself) while he was repairing his car.
4. The children tidied their room .... (himself).
5. Why don't you clean the windows .... (myself)?



Check Your Vocabulary



Vocabulary

ألبوم صور	....	يحترم	....
مشغول	....	محطة	....
خطاب	....	هدية	....
بريد إلكترونى	....	مجلة	....
طائرة عمودية/هليكوبتر	....		

Language Expressions & Prepositions

لديه حصص تنس	....	مختلف عن	....
مسرور/متحمس بخصوص	....	مميزات لـ ...	....
يرد على	....	رد على	....
نوع/شكل من	....	يقدم اقتراحات	....

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
dangerous	....
online	....
beautiful	....

Unit 9
Lessons 5 & 6

Quiz in 

15

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Speaking

5

Amal and Baher are discussing their plan for tomorrow.

Amal : What shall we do tomorrow?
Baher: Why don't we go rock climbing?
Amal : (1).. . That sounds a bit scary. I'd rather do a sport.
Baher: I like sports, too. (2).. ?
Amal : I don't know. I'm not very good at basketball.
Baher: I know! (3).. . We're both good at that.
Amal : Good idea! I like to play tennis.
Baher: (4)..?
Amal : We're going to play at 9 am.
Baher: (5)... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

10

1. I'd .... play athletics.
   a) rather b) prefer c) like d) love
2. I'm looking .... to seeing you again.
   a) with b) for c) up d) forward
3. My grandpa made me a photo album as a .... present.
   a) private b) scary c) special d) sunny
4. My sister and I always .... suggestions about what we are going to do at the weekend.
   a) make b) take c) bring d) do
5. I'm really .... that you'll come to the party.
   a) excited b) exciting c) rude d) polite
6. What are the advantages .... shopping online?
   a) off b) of c) at d) from
7. I like tennis very much, so I want to .... tennis lessons.
   a) have b) see c) do d) make

Language

8. Sandy is a baby, she can't eat by ....
   a) himself b) myself c) yourself d) herself
9. If you can't do this exercise by ...., ask the teacher for help.
   a) herself b) himself c) yourself d) itself
10. .... going to try rock climbing?
   a) You are b) Are you c) You will d) Will you

Unit 10
Lessons 1 & 2

Check Your Vocabulary



Vocabulary

تكنولوجيا	....	وسادة/مسند	....
سجادة/مشاية	....	ممتلكات	....
مقعد ثابت	....	بلوفر	....
طرحة/وشاح	....	مواد خام	....
يدهن/يلون/يطلى	....	ستارة	....
فرن	....	محفظة نقود	....
قمامة	....	المعدن	....
كنبة/أريكة	....	الجلد	....

Language Expressions & Prepositions

يكتشف	....	على سبيل المثال	....

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

ينام	....	....	....
يجلس	....	....	....

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
difficult	....
expensive	....

Definitions

............: you can turn this to get water

............: this is on the top of a house

............: you use these to build a wall

Unit 10
Lessons 1 & 2

Quiz in 

15

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. There weren't any kitchens in .... Egyptian houses.
   a) recent b) new c) modern d) ancient
2. She put a .... of sugar in her coffee.
   a) fork b) teaspoon c) lamp d) scarf
3. There are .... for four people at the table.
   a) rugs b) curtains c) seats d) sofas
4. Books are usually made of ....
   a) glass b) paper c) wood d) stone
5. The .... is the highest part of the house.
   a) roof b) floor c) ground d) living
6. I lost everything I had last year. I have no money or ....
   a) ideas b) possessions c) subjects d) bricks
7. The police are trying to find .... why the man killed the people in the city centre.
   a) in b) off c) out d) from

Language

8. What is this chair .... of?
   a) making b) makes c) make d) made
9. I can't find .... good films about dinosaurs.
   a) any b) an c) a d) some
10. There .... short curtains in the windows.
   a) am b) is c) were d) was





2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

5

1. I had .... (a) apple for breakfast this morning.
2. There .... (was) no drones in the past.
3. I don't have .... (a) skills to draw or paint.
4. My bag .... (made) of leather.
5. There weren't .... (some) customers in the shop yesterday.


Unit 10
Lessons 3 & 4

Check Your Vocabulary


25

Vocabulary

حادث	....	الألواح الشمسية	....
أثاث	....	ضيف	....
سبب	....	توربينات الرياح	....
مستطيل الشكل	....	مهندس معمارى	....
صاروخ	....	بث إذاعى	....
مهجع (خيمة)	....	طرد	....

Language Expressions & Prepositions

يتجول	....	يقوم بتنبؤات	....
ينظر من	....	ينتج كهرباء	....
يعلق الصور	....	يعمل فى مشروع لـ	....
طائرة بدون طيار لتوصيل البريد	....	مرحبًا بك فى	....

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
heavy	....
warm	....
modern	....

Definitions

........................: it is a car that does not need a driver. It uses a computer instead

........................: when the ground suddenly moves

Unit 10
Lessons 3 & 4

Quiz in 

15

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. The .... outside is very hot today.
   a) electricity b) temperature c) robot d) podcast
2. Most .... is made of wood.
   a) furniture b) cans c) bottles d) books
3. The .... is useful for designers and engineers.
   a) rocket b) circle c) triangle d) 3D printer
4. All the balls are .... in shape. سوهاج ٢٠٢٣
   a) square b) round c) triangular d) rectangular
5. .... will do a lot of things in the future. I think they will cure diseases.
   a) Pilots b) Podcasts c) Robots d) Accidents
6. That's the .... why I couldn't attend the meeting.
   a) reason b) result c) circle d) architect
7. Solar panels and wind turbines help to .... electricity.
   a) do b) drive c) stay d) produce

Language

8. People will .... driverless cars in 2100.
   a) driving b) drive c) drove d) driven
9. In 2080, you .... go to the beach for your holiday. الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) won't be b) won't have c) will have d) won't
10. How .... we travel in the future?
    a) do b) did c) are d) will

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:



5

1. .... (We will) live on the moon?
2. Adel will .... (buying) a new pen.
3. Are you hungry? I .... (make) you a hamburger.
4. I think we will travel by rockets in the .... (past).
5. By using a driverless car, we .... (will) be in danger.

Unit 10
Lessons 5 & 6

Check Your Vocabulary



Vocabulary

رسم توضيحى/بيانى	....	حدث	....
يشرح	....	مبدع/مبتكر	....
خيال	....	مشهور	....
يصف	....	مصباح كهربائى	....
يغير	....	يأمل	....
مهمة	....	سيارة طائرة	....

Language Expressions & Prepositions

يعد خطة	....	تجعل الأفكار قابلة للتنفيذ	....
يدون	....	يلعب لدى	....
يقارن بـ	....	بالتفصيل	....
يمرح	....	ينتقل إلى منزل جديد	....

Unit 10
Lessons 5 & 6

Quiz in 

15

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Speaking

5

Ragab is asking Hatem about sports.

Ragab : Do you play a sport?

Hatem : (1).. . But I watch football matches.

Ragab : Great! Who is your favourite footballer?

Hatem : (2).. .

Ragab : When was Mohamed Salah born?

Hatem : (3).. .

Ragab: So, he is 32. (4)..?

Hatem : He started playing football in 2010.

Ragab : (5)..?

Hatem : He played for El Mokawloon.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

10

1. The musician worked hard to .... his idea for a new song work.
   a) ride b) start c) make d) move
2. My dad taught me how to .... a bike without training wheels.
   a) ride b) climb c) describe d) explain
3. The children are excited to .... school and learn new things.
   a) arrive b) get c) make d) start
4. I need to write .... my friend's phone number.
   a) up b) down c) out d) on
5. I .... my toys in a box so I don't lose them.
   a) produce b) make c) keep d) move
6. The teacher drew a diagram on the board to .... the lesson well.
   a) explain b) describe c) stay d) move
7. I asked him to tell me what happened in the interview .... detail.
   a) on b) in c) at d) of

Language

8. It's 7 am and the sun is very strong. It .... be hot.
   a) will b) is going c) is going to d) would
9. **A:** Do you think we'll live on other planets, Ali? **B:** No, we .... live there.
   a) not b) won't c) aren't d) didn't
10. It will .... us three hours to get to Alexandria.
    a) took b) taken c) takes d) take



Check Your Vocabulary



Vocabulary

البيئة	....	سام	....
كوكب	....	صدفة	....
ينقذ/يحفظ	....	حوت	....
سلحفاة (تقضى معظم الوقت فى الماء)	....	محيط	....
قنديل البحر	....	السمكة اللادغة	....
الشعب المرجانية	....	مسطح/مستوٍ	....

Language Expressions & Prepositions

يخلع (ملابس)	....	على اليابسة	....
يموت بسبب	....	فى خطر	....
يقفز خارج	....	يغفو/يشعر بنعاس	....

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

....	....	يعض	....
....	....	يلدغ	....

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
laugh	....
hard	....

Definitions

........................: to get rid of what you do not need

........................: things we do not need, like old paper

........................: a verb which means use again

Unit 11
Lessons 1 & 2

Quiz in 

15

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. Don't .... away those glass bottles. We can recycle them.
   a) move b) throw c) save d) stay
2. It's important to look right and left before running .... the street.
   a) cross b) across c) at d) for
3. I need to take .... my shoes before entering the house.
   a) up b) after c) at d) off
4. People enjoy swimming, diving and fishing in the ....
   a) earth b) air c) ocean d) land
5. The teacher .... us to work in groups for the project.
   a) allowed b) protected c) lost d) fell
6. .... helps to reduce pollution and protect the environment.
   a) Jumping b) Swimming c) Stinging d) Recycling
7. Water is .... for all living things.
   a) necessary b) hard c) soft d) bad

Language

8. If I .... coffee at night, it takes me a long time to fall asleep.
   a) drink b) don't drink c) drank d) didn't drink
9. You mustn't hit or .... other children.
   a) to hurt b) hurts c) hurt d) hurting
10. You .... be afraid to ask for help when you need it.
   a) should to b) shouldn't to c) shouldn't d) should

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:



1. If you don't exercise, you .... (didn't) stay healthy.
2. You .... (must) break the rules.

3. You .... (shouldn't) be proud of your parents. They made great things.

4. We mustn't .... (eating) food that has a bad smell.
5. You .... (must) play with objects that can hurt you.



Check Your Vocabulary



Vocabulary

يزرع	....	قواعد	....
بذرة	....	صنارة للصيد	....
بالغ	....	يخيف/يرعب	....
تعليمات	....	يضع (فى)	....
معاد تدويره	....	غداء النزهة	....
تربة زراعية	....	قمامة	....
محمية طبيعية	....	تعاون	....

Language Expressions & Prepositions

يبقى بصحة جيدة	....	يقوم بعمل ضوضاء	....
يتناوب الأدوار	....	يتفق مع	....
يقوم باتصال هاتفى	....	يُخرج	....

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

يخبئ/يخفى	....	....	....
يدفع مالًا	....	....	....

Definitions

....: the top part of the Earth, where we stand

....: an empty space in something

....: to put something over something else to protect or hide it

Unit 11
Lessons 3 & 4

Quiz in 

15

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. Nature .... keep our birds, plants and animals safe. الجيزة ٢٠٢٢
   a) resorts b) reserves c) beaches d) services
2. The teacher was angry because the students .... a lot of noise.
   a) made b) did c) had d) got
3. My best friend and I like to study .... He always comes to my house.
   a) away b) outside c) together d) alone
4. The .... is the top part of the Earth, where we stand. المنيا ٢٠٢٣
   a) ground b) roof c) wall d) attic
5. I bought a strong fishing .... to catch big fish.
   a) line b) post c) way d) seed
6. I don't like this game as it has many ....
   a) ways b) roads c) roles d) rules
7. We use .... paper to make some books.
   a) recycle b) recycles c) recycled d) recycling

Language

8. If you .... drink water, you get thirsty.
   a) aren't b) don't c) didn't d) won't
9. He is often late to work. He .... get up earlier.
   a) should b) have c) are d) must to
10. If Fatma .... a lot of TV, she feels tired. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) watch b) watching c) watches d) watched

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

5

1. You .... (must) use your phone in the exam.
2. If you .... (did) well, you get good results.
3. .... (While) you use bad words, people become angry with you.
4. You must .... (been) polite to other people.
5. Where .... (we should) go next holiday?



Unit 11
Lessons 5 & 6

Check Your Vocabulary



Vocabulary

منشور	....	صياد سمك	....
ملصق إعلانى	....	هيكل عظمى	....
هدف	....	يغلى	....
قفاز/جوانتى	....	مرض	....
محطة إذاعية	....	موقع/مكانة	....
يستنتج/يختم	....	عظمة	....

Language Expressions & Prepositions

يلعب دورًا	....	موطن لـ	....
إعلان لـ	....	ينمو لتصبح	....

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

....	....	يصطاد	....
....	....	يخبر	....

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
tiny	....
clear	....

Quiz in 

15

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Speaking

5

Waleed and Mohammed are talking about how to help the environment.

Waleed : Our environment is in danger. We should help it.
Mohammed: (1)..?
Waleed : We should clean our beautiful beaches.
Mohammed: (2)..?
Waleed : Because there is lots of plastic rubbish on beaches.
Mohammed: What do we need to do that?
Waleed : (3).. . We need them to protect our hands.
Mohammed: How can we tell people about that?
Waleed : (4).. . Then, we can put these posters on walls.
Mohammed: (5).. .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

10

1. You must .... your parents and teachers. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) expect b) respect c) break d) design
2. After taking medicines, my grandfather .... well.
   a) hid b) worked c) let d) got
3. My father is an important man in his work. He has a good .... there.
   a) position b) rule c) skeleton d) invitation
4. Soha never eats fast food or unhealthy .... الشرقية ٢٠٢٣
   a) snacks b) exercises c) snakes d) restaurants
5. My .... is to become an architect.
   a) rule b) goal c) role d) experiment
6. Don't throw rubbish .... the ground.
   a) in b) for c) on d) below
7. I usually go shopping at our .... shops.
   a) local b) clear c) tiny d) brave

Language

8. You .... run near the swimming pool.
   a) should b) will c) must d) mustn't
9. When a turtle is in danger, it .... into its shell.
   a) went b) would go c) go d) goes
10. Marwa .... see a doctor. She is ill.
   a) is going b) mustn't c) should d) shouldn't



Check Your Vocabulary



Vocabulary

مبرمج كمبيوتر	....	يتطوع/متطوع	....
يختبر	....	خاصة	....
معمل	....	محرك/موتور	....
بحث (علمى)	....	كرسى متحرك	....
اجتماع	....	طيار	....
مراهق	....	آلة/ماكينة	....
وقود	....	مصور	....
مهندس معمارى	....	عالم الأحياء البحرية	....

Language Expressions & Prepositions

يحل مسائل حسابية	....	يؤدى عملًا تطوعيًا	....
يسجل معلومات	....	يسجل/يحرز هدفًا	....
نصيحة لـ	....	يؤدى وظيفة	....

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
useful	....
traditional	....
easy	....

Quiz in 10 min



15

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. Mechanics .... engines to run different types of vehicles.
   a) collect b) do c) score d) design
2. The scientist .... some information about the experiment in a notebook.
   a) recorded b) did c) scored d) made
3. The person who studies the ocean, the plants and animals in it is called ....
   a) a marine biologist b) an engineer
   c) a writer d) a doctor
4. We went in a boat .... a dive and saw many colourful fish.
   a) at b) to c) of d) for
5. My grandma hurt her leg and needed a/an .... until she can walk again.
   a) engine b) wheelchair c) machine d) goal
6. A .... is a person who takes photographs.
   a) biologist b) programmer c) photographer d) writer
7. Is your house .... or modern? القاهرة ٢٠٢٢
   a) traditional b) colourful c) technological d) big

Language

8. A farmer is a person .... grows food. الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢
   a) when b) who c) where d) which
9. You like ice cream, don't ....?
   a) you b) I c) we d) they
10. It isn't hot today, ...? بنى سويف ٢٠٢٢
   a) is it b) isn't it c) it isn't d) it is

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

5

1. What .... (do) a scientist do?
2. You .... (can't) swim, can't you?
3. I met the boy .... (which) won the prize.
4. The flowers need water, don't .... (it)?
5. He knows how to play the guitar, ... (isn't) he?



Check Your Vocabulary



Vocabulary

طين الصلصال	....	يمارس/يتدرب	....
تقليد	....	تعليم	....
معتقدات	....	الريف	....
عقد/قلادة	....	السكان المحليون	....
مدونة	....	الفخار	....
أعمال	....	خاتم	....
مجوهرات	....	شقة	....

Language Expressions & Prepositions

يعود/يرجع إلى	....	يتزوج	....
فى نهاية الطريق	....	خطط لـ	....

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
adult	....
repair	....
modern	....

Definitions

........................: get money by working

........................: a room or small building where people make or repair things

........................: an ability to do something well

........................: the art, ideas, beliefs, etc. of a group of people

Unit 12
Lessons 3 & 4

Quiz in



15

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

Vocabulary

1. Girls like to wear .... clothes.
   a) successful b) colourful c) useful d) hopeful
2. You need to .... every day to be good at English.
   a) change b) travel c) practise d) earn
3. He's running to .... the bus.
   a) sell b) earn c) catch d) buy
4. A .... is a place where people make or repair things.
   a) culture b) blog c) laboratory d) workshop
5. No children went into the theatre. Only .... did. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
   a) kids b) babies c) adults d) animals
6. My uncle is a successful businessman. He .... lots of money.
   a) wins b) passes c) buys d) earns
7. .... people are very angry about the plans to close another hospital in their village.
   a) Local b) Brave c) Modern d) Traditional

Language

8. If you .... hard, you will do badly on your test.
   a) study b) don't study c) didn't study d) studied
9. If we follow the rules, we .... be safe.
   a) have to b) would c) won't d) will
10. If she .... her teeth, she will have a bright smile.
   a) cleans b) clean c) cleaned d) will clean

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

5

1. If you .... (feeds) the fish, they will swim around.
2. If students read books, they'll .... (getting) lots of information.
3. .... (While) you share your toys with your friends, they will be happy.
4. He .... (won't) get a stomachache if he eats too much ice cream.
5. If you .... (coming) to the party, you'll meet your old friends.



Check Your Vocabulary



Vocabulary

تغيرات	....	إصابة	....
مرض	....	بحار	....
تنبؤات	....	علاج	....
تماماً	....	أحفاد	....
صحة	....	كهربائى (يدار بالكهرباء)	....

Language Expressions & Prepositions

يبقى صحيًا	....	يحجز تذكرة	....
يأخذ إجازة	....	يعمل على سفينة/قارب	....
يتعلم كيف أن	....	يصمم لعبة فيديو	....

Words and Opposites

Word	Opposite (Antonym)
disappear	....
exciting	....

Definitions

............................: something on your phone that helps you use maps, book tickets, etc.

............................: the area that is outside a town or a city

Quiz in 

15

1 Complete the following dialogue:

القاهرة ٢٠٢٣



Speaking

Amr is asking his new friend some questions.

Amr : Can I ask you some questions?
Ali : (1).. .
Amr : (2)..?
Ali : I was born in 2007.
Amr : (3)..?
Ali : I went to El-Salam Primary School.
Amr : What subjects do you like at school?
Ali : (4).. .
Amr : What job do you want to do in the future?
Ali : (5).. .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

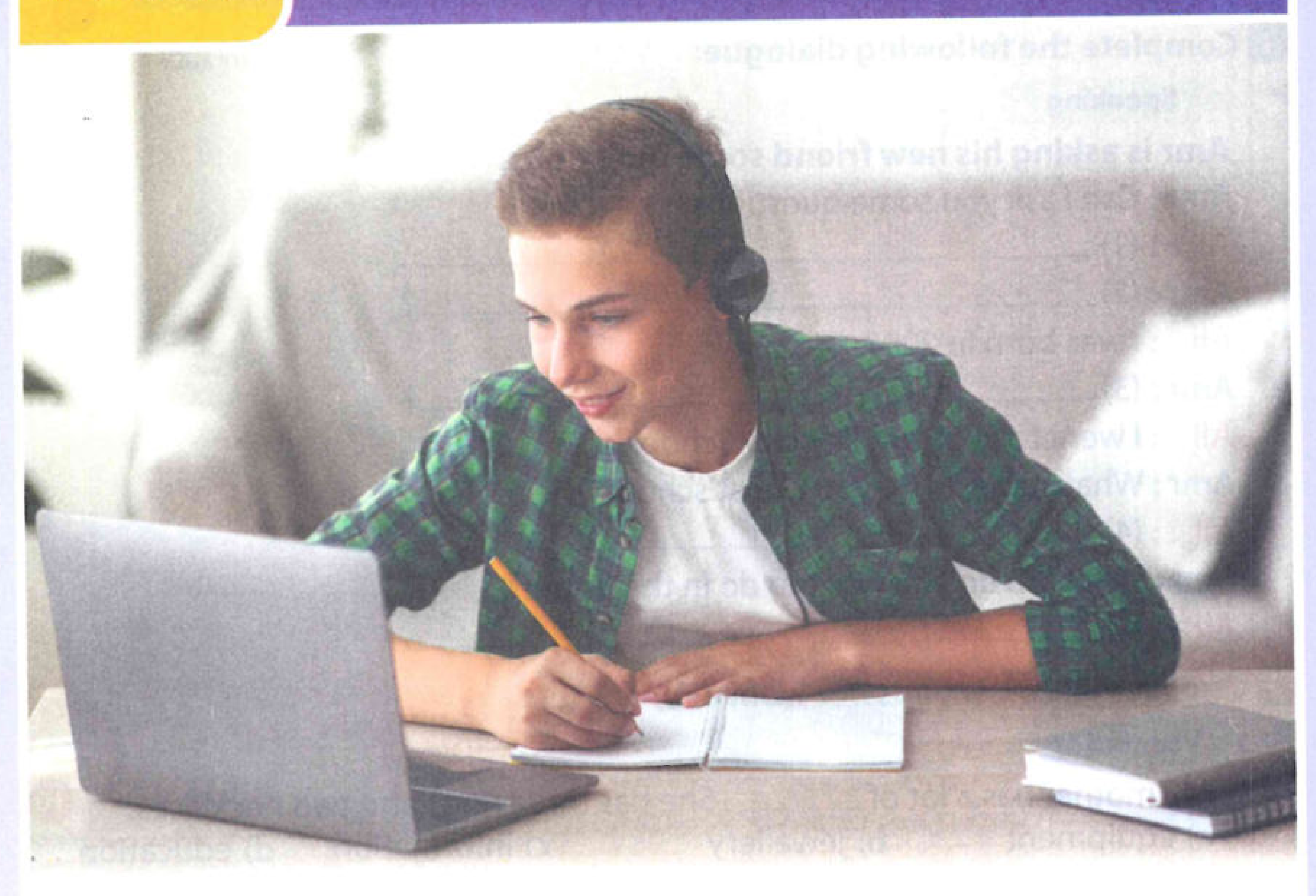
Vocabulary

1. My mother has a lot of .... She has three rings and two necklaces.
a) equipment b) jewellery c) information d) education
2. My sister is going to .... married next Friday.
a) go b) get c) do d) have
3. I got lots of .... on my last birthday party.
a) presents b) prizes c) jobs d) beliefs
4. My father decided to .... our old car and buy a new one.
a) win b) get c) pay d) sell
5. Millions of people visit YouTube and other .... sites daily.
a) cups b) education c) social media d) maps
6. Life in the .... is quieter than life in the city.
a) prison b) court c) hospital d) countryside
7. I think we'll live on other planets. This is my ....
a) information b) prediction c) action d) relation

Language

8. If the weather .... good tomorrow, we will go to the park.
a) is b) will be c) was d) would be
9. When you see Mr Said, ... him to call me.
a) asked b) asks c) will ask d) ask
10. What do you call someone .... designs buildings?
a) who b) where c) which d) how

Part 2 Final Revision



1 **Vocabulary Revision on Each 2 Units** مراجعة عامة على أهم الكلمات الخاصة بكل وحدتين

2 **Language Revision on Each 2 Units** مراجعة عامة على أهم القواعد الخاصة بكل وحدتين

3 **Speaking Revision on Each 2 Units** مراجعة عامة على أهم المحادثات الخاصة بكل وحدتين

4 **Writing Revision on Each 2 Units** مراجعة عامة على أهم المواضيع الكتابية الخاصة بكل وحدتين

5 **Al-Adwaa Monthly Test** اختبار الأضواء الشهري

Units 7 & 8 **February Revision**

A Vocabulary

Unit 7

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

adventure story	قصة مغامرة	football stadium	استاد كرة القدم	nervous	عصبى/متوتر
aquarium	معرض الأحياء المائية	funfair	الملاهى	patient	صبور/مريض
band	فرقة موسيقية	interesting	شيق	planetarium	مبنى القبة السماوية
bowling alley	صالة البولينج	interview	مقابلة	sports centre	مركز رياضى
canteen	مقصف (كانتين)	journey	رحلة	statue	تمثال
cave	كهف	jungle	أدغال	swimming pool	حمام سباحة
concert	حفلة موسيقية	museum	متحف	storm	عاصفة
diary	مذكرة/يومية	musical instrument	آلة موسيقية	terrible	فظيع/رهيب/سيئ جدًا
exhibition	معرض	musician	موسيقار/عازف	uniform	زى موحد
		Types of music	أنواع الموسيقى		
classical	كلاسيكى	opera	الأوبرا	rock	موسيقى الروك
jazz	موسيقى الجاز	pop	موسيقى البوب	traditional	تقليدى

Language Expressions and Prepositions — التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

look for	يبحث عن	help with	يساعد فى
frightened of	خائف من	share with	يشارك مع
ride on the big wheel	يركب عجلة الملاهى	have a haircut	يقص شعره
have a barbecue	لديه حفل شواء	go bowling	يذهب للعب البولينج
look around	يتجول	play chess	يلعب شطرنج
decide to + inf.	يقرر أن	write down	يدوّن

Definitions — التعريفات

sailor	بحار	someone who works on a boat or ship
alone	بمفرده	not with other people
sink	يغرق	go down into water
sink	حوض	a place where you wash plates and cups in a kitchen

Unit 8

Key Vocabulary
المفردات الرئيسية

achieve (d) ينجز/يحقق	design (ed) يصمم	mountain climbing تسلق الجبل
bridge جسر/كوبرى	entrance مدخل	ice skating التزحلق على الجليد
car park موقف السيارات	bank ضفة النهر	suspension مُعلقة
century قرن (١٠٠ عام)	glass floor أرضية من الزجاج	tower برج
city centre وسط المدينة	guide book دليل إرشادى	treasure كنز
competition منافسة/مسابقة	link (ed) يربط	website review مقالة نقدية على موقع إنترنت
the countryside الريف	tunnel نفق	fountain نافورة
cross (ed) يعبر/يمر على	collection مجموعة	population سكان
	Question words with "How"	
How wide ...? كم عرض/اتساع ...؟	How deep ...? كم عمق ...؟	How old ...? كم عمر ...؟
How long ...? كم طول/ما المدة ...؟	How high ...? كم ارتفاع ...؟	How many ...? كم عدد ...؟

Words and Opposites
الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite (Antonym)	عكسها
noisy	صاخب	quiet	هادئ
far	بعيد	near	قريب
busy	مشغول/مزدحم	empty	فارغ
famous	مشهور	unknown	غير معروف
polite	مؤدب	impolite	غير مؤدب
popular	محبوب/شعبى	unpopular	غير محبوب
healthy	صحى	unhealthy	غير صحى
ancient	قديم جداً/أثرى	new/modern	جديد/حديث

Language Expressions and Prepositions
التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

a view of منظر لـ	examples of أمثلة لـ	opinion of/about رأى فى
at sunset فى وقت الغروب	do a quiz يؤدى اختبارًا صغيرًا	make notes يدون ملاحظات
compare with يقارن بـ	disagree with لا يتفق مع	similar to مشابه لـ
crowded with مزدحم بـ	on display معروض/فى العرض	space for مساحة لـ
easy for سهل لـ	proud of فخور بـ	the capital of عاصمة

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I knew a lot about the solar system when I went to the ....
   a) alley b) aquarium c) canteen d) planetarium
2. I felt afraid in the cave because it was ....
   a) fantastic b) clear c) light d) dark
3. The weather was .... with heavy rain and storms.
   a) terrible b) great c) fantastic d) wonderful
4. I don't like to go to the cinema .... I like to go with my friends.
   a) asleep b) awake c) alone d) afraid
5. I'm looking .... my keys. I can't find them anywhere.
   a) after b) up c) for d) at
6. He likes to read a book .... his bed.
   a) in b) off c) of d) for
7. Hend learnt to play the piano last year. It's her favourite .... instrument.
   a) music b) musically c) musician d) musical
8. The computer .... working and he had to restart it.
   a) went b) stopped c) stayed d) dropped
9. My grandfather likes living in the .... because it's quieter than a city.
   a) city centre b) countryside c) town d) club
10. We .... a barbecue last night and grilled some meat.
    a) went b) hid c) had d) took
11. Firefighters wear special uniform to .... themselves from the fire.
    a) protect b) take c) hurt d) harm
12. We needed to buy some water. This bottle is ....
    a) empty b) crowded c) tall d) old
13. It's healthy to .... a sport.
    a) do b) make c) stay d) buy
14. There is a .... in the middle of the city square. The children usually play in its water.
    a) desert b) cave c) mountain d) fountain
15. I like writing stories, so I will join the writing ....
    a) competition b) collection c) fountain d) treasure

B Language

Unit 7

1 Past simple tense



Subject + التصريف الثانى للفعل

- Mona watched a nice film **last night**.
- They had a fantastic weekend in the aquarium.

Negative

Subject + didn't + inf. ... .

- I didn't visit my uncle **yesterday**.
- We didn't go to the theatre **last** Monday.



yesterday أمس - last .... الماضى - ..... ago منذ - in the past فى الماضى -
in + سنة فى الماضى (in 2010)

2 Verb to "be"

Subject + was (n't) / were (n't) ...

- I was at the sports centre two days **ago**.
- My father wasn't at home **yesterday**.
- My friends were at the planetarium **last** Friday.

Question

1. Yes/No questions:

Was/Were + subject + ...?

- Were they at the restaurant **last** night?

2. Wh- questions:

Q. word + was/were + subject + ...?

- Where was your father **yesterday**?

3 How to form questions

1. Yes/No questions:

Helping/Auxiliary verb + **subject** + **complement?**

- Can **you** ride a bike?
- Does **he** like jazz?

2. Wh- questions:

Q. word + helping verb + **subject** + **complement?**

- When do **you** play tennis?
- Where will **you** go next summer holiday?

Unit 8

1 Comparative adjectives

A) Short adjectives: الصفات القصيرة

الصفة القصيرة + er + than

- The Nile River is longer than the Amazon.
- Planes are faster than trains.

Common Exceptions استثناءات شائعة

- (good) → **better** - I'm better than Ali at maths.
- (bad) → **worse** - Today's weather is worse than yesterday's.
- (far) → **further** - Which Pyramid is further from the centre of Cairo?

B) Long adjectives: الصفات الطويلة

more/less + الصفة الطويلة + than

- The lion is more dangerous than the fox.
- Bikes are less expensive than cars.

C) Which is (adj. + er) / (more/less + adj.), ... or ...?

- Which is **higher**, Mountain Everest **or** Mount Kilimanjaro?
- Which is **more crowded**, Cairo **or** Aswan?

2 Superlative adjectives

A) Short adjectives: الصفات القصيرة

the + الصفة القصيرة + est

- Ali is the tallest boy in our class.
- Lions are the strongest animals.

Common Exceptions استثناءات شائعة

- (good) → **the best** - Sami is the best student in my class.
- (bad) → **the worst** - Today's weather is the worst.
- (far) → **the furthest** - Can you run to the furthest tree and come back?

B) Long adjectives: الصفات الطويلة

the most/the least + الصفة الطويلة

- Cairo is the most crowded city in Egypt.
- This is the least popular book in the library.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Salma .... at the stadium three days ago.
   a) is b) was c) were d) are
2. I .... a fantastic holiday last May.
   a) have b) has c) had d) having
3. Mazin .... see the last match.
   a) didn't b) don't c) won't d) can't
4. **A:** Can we go to the park this afternoon? **B:** Yes, you ....
   a) do b) did c) can d) will
5. .... did you feel at the end of the game?
   a) When b) How c) Why d) Who
6. **A:** .... did you go to the sports centre? **B:** I went there four days ago.
   a) Which b) Where c) How d) When
7. I think maths is .... than English.
   a) much difficult b) most difficult c) more difficult d) difficult
8. I think elephants are the .... animals on land.
   a) heavier than b) heaviest c) heavier d) heavy
9. I think golf is .... than football.
   a) popular b) less popular
   c) most popular d) the most popular
10. Nouran is .... than Meral at science.
    a) good b) the best c) better d) as good
11. Mona is tall, but Malak is ....
    a) taller b) taller than c) tallest d) the tallest
12. That's .... expensive hotel in the city.
    a) the most b) the more c) the less d) the much

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I .... (go) to the museum two weeks ago.
2. The children .... (didn't) happy last night.
3. How .... (many) money do you have?
4. That was .... (good) holiday of my life.
5. This is the .... (exciting) story I've ever read.
6. Mayan is .... (helpful) than Bassem.

C Skills



1. Speaking

Unit 7

1. Ask and answer questions about past events

When did you have breakfast? متى تناولتِ الإفطار؟

I had my breakfast this morning. - تناولته هذا الصباح.

Where did you go last weekend? أين ذهبتِ العطلة الماضية؟

I went to the museum. - ذهبت إلى المتحف.

2. Ask and answer about favourite music

- What type of music do you like? ما نوع الموسيقى التى تحبينها؟

I like jazz best. - الجاز هى أفضل موسيقى أحبها.

I like the sound of pop. - أحب موسيقى البوب.

Unit 8

1. Ask and answer about measurements

How long is the Cairo-Alexandria desert road?
كم طول طريق القاهرة - الإسكندرية الصحراوى؟

It is 220 kilometres long. - إنه ٢٢٠ كيلو متراً.

How wide is the Tahya Masr Bridge? كم عرض كوبرى تحيا مصر؟

It's about 67.36 metres wide. - حوالى ٦٧,٣٦ متر.

2. Asking about opinion

Which subject do you think is more difficult, English or Arabic?
أى مادة هى أصعب فى رأيك، اللغة العربية أم اللغة الإنجليزية؟

In my opinion, English is the most difficult of all.
فى رأيى اللغة الإنجليزية هى الأصعب على الإطلاق.

What's your opinion of the Tahya Masr Bridge? ما رأيك فى كوبرى تحيا مصر؟

I think the Tahya Masr Bridge is a great project.
أعتقد أن كوبرى تحيا مصر هو مشروع عظيم.



2. Write it right

Unit 7

How to write about "Your last weekend"

To: noha@gmail.com From: sara@hotmail.com Subject: My last weekend

Hi Noha,

How are you and your family? I'm writing this email to tell you about what I did last weekend. I went to the funfair. I went with my family. We went there by car. My father bought us the tickets. There were a lot of interesting games. I rode on the big wheel. I felt afraid, but it was fun. My brother went on a ride. He was really happy. My little sister swam in a small plastic swimming pool. My father and mother went for a walk. We all had a wonderful time. We went back home late at night. We decided to go there again very soon. I look forward to meeting you and going there together. See you soon.

Yours, Sara.

Unit 8

1. How to write about "An important building"

The Cairo Tower

Egypt has many amazing places. You can visit these places in Cairo, like the Cairo Tower and the Egyptian Museum. The Cairo Tower is one of the most famous buildings in Egypt. It took five years to be built. It opened in 1961. It is 187 metres tall and stands next to the Nile. There is a restaurant at the top. It moves, so you can see all of the city below you. There are 24 windows on each floor of the building. If you want to walk to the top, there are 2,500 stairs! At night, the colours on the tower change. It is a wonderful building!

2. How to write about "The Tahya Masr Bridge"

The Tahya Masr Bridge

Egypt is a great country. It has lots of great achievements. We should be proud of that. One of the newest and greatest achievements is the Tahya Masr Bridge. It's the world's widest suspension bridge. It's a great project. More than 4,000 people helped to build it. They started building it in 2014. It opened in Cairo in May 2019. It is 67.36 metres wide. It's 540 metres long. It crosses the Nile's Warraq Island. Many people enjoy walking across the glass floor of the bridge. I think the Tahya Masr Bridge is one of the greatest projects in Egypt.

Tapescript



Al-Adwaa February Test on Units 7&8

24



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. Where did the writer want to go?
   a) The cinema. b) The theatre. c) The funfair. d) The restaurant.
2. Where did the writer's brother want to go?
   a) The cinema. b) The theatre. c) The funfair. d) The restaurant.
3. Where did they decide to go?
   a) The cinema. b) The theatre. c) The funfair. d) The restaurant.
4. Why did they go there? - For a ....
   a) birthday b) holiday c) weekend d) rest

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Mira asks Hana about her weekend in Alexandria.

Mira : Good morning.

Hana : (1).. .

Mira : Where did you spend your weekend?

Hana : (2).. .

Mira : (3)..?

Hana : The weather was fantastic.

Mira : (4)..?

Hana : I ate fish.

Mira : What else did you do there?

Hana : (5)... . The water was great.



C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Dina's 13th birthday was a **wonderful** one. She wanted to go to the funfair with her family and friends. She wanted to ride on the big wheel, but her parents planned a surprise party for her, inviting all her close friends and family members. Her mother made delicious cake and food. Dina was happy with the surprise and really enjoyed

herself, taking many photos with her friends. Dina had many beautiful presents from everyone. Her favourite part of the party was the delicious food, including fresh fruit, cake and drinks. Really, it was a fantastic party that she would never forget.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the passage about?

....

2. What does the underlined pronoun "Her" refer to?

....

3. Why do you think it was a fantastic party that she would never forget?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Dina is .... years old.

a) twelve b) thirteen c) eleven d) three

5. Dina was .... with the surprise party.

a) friendly b) nervous c) worried d) happy

6. The opposite of the word "**wonderful**" is ....

a) fantastic b) boring c) awesome d) friendly

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The sports .... has different places where you can play many games.

a) funfair b) centre c) theatre d) concert

2. The .... wanted to know more about my skills.

a) interviewer b) interview c) sailor d) musical

3. She loves .... selfies and posting them on social media.

a) doing b) talking c) giving d) taking

4. She decided to .... in Egypt for another week to visit more places.

a) leave b) stay c) visit d) sleep

5. Football is the most .... sport all over the world.

a) popular b) dangerous c) ugly d) crowded

6. New roads will .... cities with each other.

a) measure b) guess c) link d) cross

7. Cairo Metro goes through a long .... under the Nile.

a) tunnel b) tower c) hall d) bridge

8. .... enjoy watching football matches on TV?

a) You do b) Do you c) Are you d) You are

9. Where did she .... her new dress?

a) buys b) buying c) bought d) buy

10. He .... his breakfast early this morning.

a) ate b) eat c) eaten d) eating

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. .... (Do) you planning to travel this summer?

2. Nawal .... (wasn't) finish writing the paragraph yesterday.

3. My brother .... (lives) in London in 2015. أسوان ٢٠٢٢

4. A car is .... (as) expensive than a bike.

E Writing

6 Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words on a place you visited. Your name is Nelly and your email address is nelly@hotmail.com. Your friend's name is Laila and her email address is lily@gmail.com.

To : ....

From : ....

Subject : ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Units 9 & 10

March Revision

A Vocabulary

Unit 9

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

carefully	بحرص	magazine	مجلة	scary	مخيف
character	شخصية	mountain biking	ركوب الدراجات فى الجبل	skill	مهارة
date	تاريخ (اليوم)	mountain climbing	تسلق الجبال	support (ed)	يساند/يدعم
diving	الغطس/الغوص	photo album	ألبوم صور	towel	فوطة/ منشفة
dry (with)	يجف/يجفف (بـ)	postcard	بطاقة بريدية	transport	المواصلات
equipment	معدات	presentation	عرض تقديمى	turn	دور
fun	مرح/متعة	railway line	خط سكة حديد	webpage	صفحة على الإنترنت
kayaking	التجديف	rock climbing	تسلق الصخور	windsurfing	ركوب الأمواج
letter	خطاب	sailing	الإبحار	zip lining	الانزلاق بالحبل

Language Expressions and Prepositions — التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

a reply to	رد على	keep warm	يبقى دافئًا
advantages of	مميزات لـ	make a mistake	يرتكب خطأً
different to/from	مختلف عن	make suggestions	يقدم اقتراحات
excited about	مسرور/متحمس بخصوص	on time	فى الوقت المحدد
form of	نوع/شكل من	protect from	يحمى من
get dressed	يرتدى ملابسه	respond to	يرد على
give an idea for	يعطى فكرة لـ	ride on a camel	يركب جملًا
have a guide	يحصل على دليل	sit by the fire	يجلس بجانب النار
introduction to	مقدمة لـ	take a challenge	يأخذ تحديًا

Definitions — التعريفات

adventure	مغامرة	an exciting experience when something unusual or dangerous happens
guide	مرشد	a person who shows a place to tourists
journey	رحلة	a long trip from one place to another
tent	خيمة	something you sleep in when you go camping

Unit 10

Key Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

accident	حادث	flying car	سيارة طائرة	round	مستدير
architect	مهندس معمارى	imagination	خيال	sofa	كنبة
creative	مبدع/مبتكر	lamp	لمبة/مصباح	solar panels	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية
curtains	ستائر	leather	الجلد	stone	الحجر
cushions	وسائد	metal	المعدن	task	مهمة
diagram	رسم توضيحى	parcel	طرد	teaspoon	ملعقة شاى
earthquake	زلزال	podcast	بث إذاعى	technology	تكنولوجيا
electric car	سيارة كهربائية	possessions	ممتلكات	wallet	محفظة نقود
event	حدث	robot	إنسان آلى	wind turbines	توربينات الرياح

Language Expressions and Prepositions — التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

charger for	شاحن لـ	make predictions	يقوم بتنبؤات
drone for post	طائرة بدون طيار لتوصيل البريد	move around	يتجول
find out	يكتشف	put up pictures	يعلق الصور
get electricity	يحصل على الكهرباء	sign for	علامة لـ
in detail	بالتفصيل	work on a project for	يعمل فى مشروع لـ
look out of	ينظر من	write down	يدون

Definitions — التعريفات

bricks	الطوب	you use these to build a wall
oven	فرن	you use this to cook food or bread
roof	سطح	this is on top of a house
tap	صنبور/حنفية	you can turn this to get water
driverless car	سيارة بدون سائق	it is a car that does not need a driver, it uses a computer instead
space	فضاء/مساحة فارغة	an area that you can move around

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I read a/an .... about the most dangerous animals on the water.
   a) diary b) article c) title d) interview
2. I'm going to go trekking across Sinai and I'm going to sleep in a ....
   a) tent b) sofa c) curtain d) cushion
3. Hassan .... windsurfing with his family.
   a) did b) played c) went d) made
4. Take this .... to dry the water on your hair.
   a) map b) curtain c) postcard d) towel
5. Most people like to make a photo .... of the most important events in their life.
   a) note b) leaflet c) diary d) album
6. I like reading .... stories. They are so exciting.
   a) mountain b) adventure c) boring d) ugly
7. People should wear gloves when they collect rubbish to .... their hands.
   a) dry b) achieve c) respect d) protect
8. My father is a great teacher. All students .... him.
   a) respect b) guess c) hate d) hide
9. It's good to buy vegetables at the market because they're .... there.
   a) hard b) costly c) expensive d) inexpensive
10. My dad .... in a chair and watched the game.
    a) sat b) slept c) got d) looked
11. We .... the house green last summer.
    a) pointed b) painted c) sat d) damaged
12. The apple fell .... the ground from the tree.
    a) for b) at c) in d) to
13. The .... on the TV show is very funny.
    a) presenter b) architect c) pilot d) podcast
14. Basmala is very good at writing stories. She's very ....
    a) ugly b) creative c) bad d) stupid
15. Last weekend, we went out to .... fun.
    a) have b) make c) see d) do

B Language

Unit 9

1 "going to" for future plans

Form

Subject	be	
I	am (not)	+ going to + **inf.**
He, She, It, اسم مفرد	is not (isn't)	
You, We, They, اسم جمع	are not (aren't)	

- I am going to **visit** my grandfather on Friday.
- My sister is not going to **go** kayaking.

Question

1. Yes/No questions:

Am/Is/Are + subject + going to + inf.?

- Are your brothers going to **try** diving?
  - Yes, they are.
  - No, they aren't.

2. Wh- questions:

Q. word + am/is/are + subject + going to + inf.?

- When is he going to **try** trekking?

2 Reflexive pronouns

نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة عندما يكون فاعل الجملة ومفعولها متماثلين:

Subject pronouns	Reflexive pronouns	Subject pronouns	Reflexive pronouns
I	myself بنفسي/نفسي	She	herself بنفسها/نفسها
You (singular)	yourself بنفسك/نفسك	It	itself بنفسه/بنفسها (لغير العاقل)
You (plural)	yourselves بأنفسكم/أنفسكم	We	ourselves أنفسنا/بأنفسنا
He	himself بنفسه/نفسه	They	themselves بأنفسهم/أنفسهم

- I did my homework (by) myself.
- Ali and I hurt ourselves with a knife.
- You all should do your homework (by) yourselves.
- A bird can feed *itself*.
- They enjoyed *themselves* in Hurghada.

Unit 10

1 is/are made of

Form

Subject + is/are + made of + (material)

- **The sofa** is made of leather.
- **The cushions** are made of cotton.

Wh-questions

What + is/are + subject + made of?

- What are the curtains made of?
- What is the table made of?

2 A/An/Any

A) a/an:

- We use a/an with singular nouns.

a + a word that starts with a **CONSONANT SOUND**

an + a word that starts with a **VOWEL SOUND**

- I ate an orange an hour ago.
- There was a bank in this street.

B) any:

- We use (any) with **Negative sentences & Yes/ No questions.**
- We use (any) with **plural countable nouns/ uncountable nouns.**

- There weren't any **taps** in ancient Egypt.
- Was there any **money** on the table?

3 There was/There were

There was (wasn't) + اسم مفرد / اسم لا يعد

There were (weren't) + اسم جمع

- There was a kitchen in his house.
- There wasn't any juice in the fridge.
- There were boats in ancient Egypt.
- There weren't any bedrooms at their houses.

4 Making predictions about the future

Form

Subject + will/won't + (inf.) + ...

Will + subject + inf. +.....?

- There will be electric cars in the future.
- There won't be robot teachers in the future.
- Will she have a garden on the roof in the future?

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Is she .... learn the English alphabet?
   a) going b) going to c) go to d) go
2. Be careful! Don't cut ....
   a) yourself b) myself c) himself d) ourselves
3. There .... many mistakes in the report.
   a) were b) was c) is d) be
4. The door is made .... wood.
   a) from b) of c) in d) by
5. I will .... how to swim this summer.
   a) learning b) learns c) to learn d) learn
6. Sara, did you write this paragraph ....?
   a) myself b) herself c) himself d) yourself
7. I think people .... drive a car in 2080.
   a) won't b) wouldn't c) don't d) didn't
8. What .... the chair cushion made of?
   a) does b) do c) are d) is
9. Where .... they going to do some exercises?
   a) is b) have c) are d) do
10. I don't have .... ideas about what to make for dinner tonight.
    a) some b) a c) an d) any
11. .... start your own business soon?
    a) Will you b) You will c) Did you d) You did
12. He went camping by ....
    a) himself b) itself c) herself d) yourself

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I .... (will) going to have a lot of fun in the park with my friends. Would you like to come?
2. Hamza cut .... (herself) with the knife.
3. There .... (were) any books on this shelf yesterday.
4. Will you .... (studying) English with me?
5. There .... (was) lots of cars on the road last Monday.
6. What is your wallet .... (make) of?



C Skills



1. Speaking

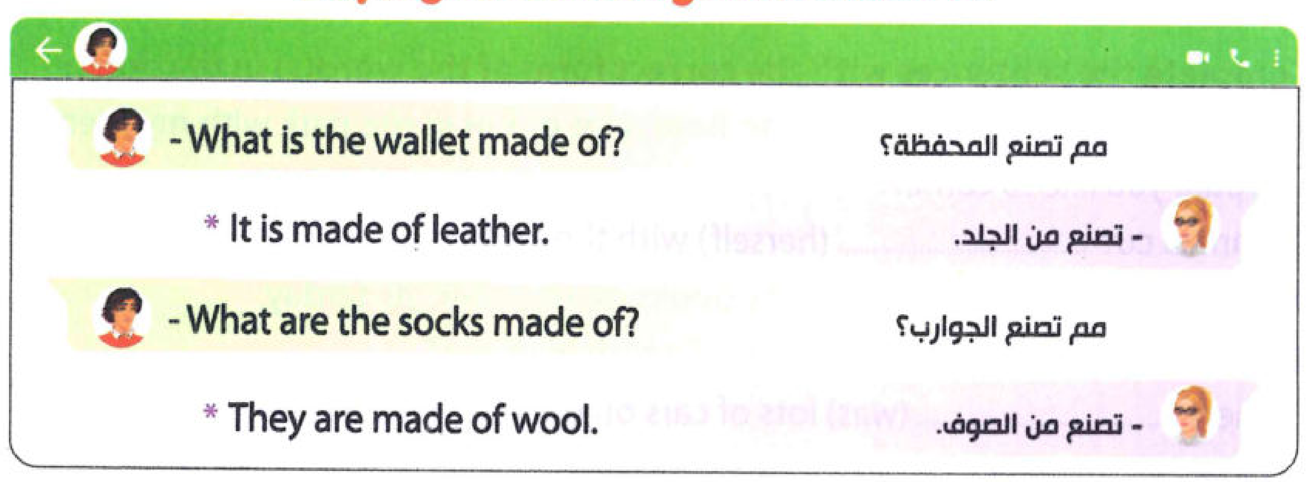
Unit 9

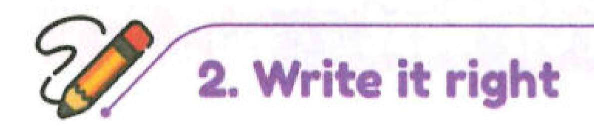
Making and responding to suggestions

- Let's go rock climbing.	هيا نذهب لتسلق الصخور.
* That sounds a bit scary.	- يبدو هذا مخيفاً قليلاً.
- I'd rather visit the park.	أفضل زيارة الحديقة.
* Good idea!	- فكرة جيدة!
- Shall we play tennis?	هل نذهب للعب التنس؟
* Great idea.	- فكرة عظيمة.
- How about playing football?	ماذا عن لعب كرة القدم؟
* I'm not sure.	- لست متأكدة.
- Why don't we go for a walk?	لمَ لا نذهب للتمشية؟
* OK. Why not?	- حسناً ولِمَ لا؟

Unit 10

Saying what things are made of





2. Write it right

Unit 9

How to write about "Your favourite adventure sport"

My favourite adventure sport

I like adventure sports. There are lots of adventure sports, like rock climbing, windsurfing and zip lining. I like mountain biking. I liked it many years ago when my father bought me my first bike. Today, I am going to go mountain biking. So, I get dressed and phone my best friend. He is the person who I go mountain biking with. We go to a forest with mountains. After my friend arrives at my house, we make sure that all of the equipment is safe on the bike. With water bottles filled and bikes ready to go, we are off. It makes us feel happy.

Unit 10

How to write about "Your future predictions"

To: anas@gmail.com **From: mohamed@student.com** **Subject: My future predictions**

Dear Anas,

How are you? I'm writing this email to tell you about my future predictions. I think our life will be easier because we use modern technology more and more. I think everything will depend on computers in the future. We will have tiny computers in our clothes to keep us warm or to make us cool. At school, I think computers will be our teachers, but we should always have teachers. I think we won't live in crowded cities; we will live on other planets. In the future, we will have small electric cars. They will be easy to drive in traffic. These cars won't use petrol. They will use electricity. They will be better for the environment. They will be very fast. I think life in the future will be totally different. What do you think life will be like in the future?

I look forward to hearing from you.

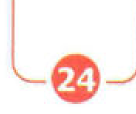
Yours, Mohamed

Tapescript

Al-Adwaa March Test on Units 9 & 10



Listening



نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Where are they going to go?
   a) To the zoo. b) To the park. c) To the sea. d) To the beach.
2. When are they going to go there?
   a) Next year. b) Next month. c) Next Sunday. d) Next weekend.
3. How are they going to go there?
   a) By train. b) By bus. c) By car. d) By taxi.
4. How will the day be like?
   a) Rainy. b) Bad. c) Bright. d) Dark.

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Amgad is thinking of travelling to South Africa.

Sherif : How are you, Amgad?
Amgad : (1).. .
Sherif : I heard that you are going to travel next week. Is that true?
Amgad : (2).. . I'm thinking of visiting South Africa.
Sherif : Really? (3)..?
Amgad : I'm going to go zip lining.
Sherif : Zip lining! It's a bit scary. Why don't you go trekking in the mountains?
Amgad : (4).. . I don't like trekking.
Sherif : (5)..?
Amgad : That's a good idea. I'll try diving.



Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Long ago, people didn't know all forms of transport that we have today. They could only walk or travel on boats, horses or camels. Then, people invented bicycles and later trains, cars and planes. In the future, we will have small electric

cars. They will be easy to drive in traffic. These cars won't use petrol. They will use electricity, so they will be **better** for the environment. Now, a lot of cities have too many cars. These cities will build more metro lines, so people will be able to get around the cities quickly.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the passage about?

....

2. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?

....

3. In your opinion, why will electric cars be better for the environment?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. "........................" is the opposite of "**better**".

a) Best b) Worse c) Wonderful d) Great

5. Electric cars will be .... to drive in traffic.

a) hard b) easy c) difficult d) terrible

6. .... lines will make people get around cities quickly.

a) Metro b) Boat c) Horses d) Ferry

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I am going to stay in a hotel .... the beach. It isn't far.

a) with b) by c) in d) for

2. I want a good .... to design my new house. القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

a) pilot b) architect c) teacher d) doctor

3. When she .... home that night, there was a letter for her. الغربية ٢٠٢٢

a) felt b) returned c) gave d) caught

4. People who can't walk have lots of challenges, so we should .... them.

a) check b) support c) dry d) complete

5. The computer is an example of ....

a) technology b) rubbish c) paper d) stone

6. We can walk .... the park and enjoy the nature and fresh air.

a) for b) on c) through d) under

7. Basel is talking about the important .... in his life. بني سويف ٢٠٢٢

a) accidents b) months c) events d) times

8. Clocks .... of metal and other materials.

a) are made b) are making c) made d) making

9. There .... a beautiful sunset last night.

a) are b) is c) was d) were

10. Did a famous person draw that, or did you draw it ....? الفيوم ٢٠٢٢

a) herself b) himself c) yourself d) itself

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I'd rather .... (visiting) the park.
2. .... (Do) you going to the party tonight?
3. What is the curtain .... (make) of?
4. Shall we .... (going) rock climbing?

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"An adventure sport"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

A Vocabulary

Unit 11

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

brave	شجاع	nature reserve	محمية طبيعية	rubbish bag	حقيبة/كيس القمامة
environment	البيئة	instructions	تعليمات	position	موقع/مكانة
fisherman	صياد سمك	ocean	محيط	skeleton	هيكل عظمى
fishing line	صنارة صيد	planet	كوكب	soil	تربة
gloves	قفازات	poisonous	سام	sting	يلدغ
shell	صدفة	illness	مرض	poster	ملصق إعلانى
rules	قواعد	trash	قمامة	leaflet	منشور
		Sea animals	الحيوانات البحرية		
coral reef	الشعب المرجانية	shark	سمكة القرش	snail	الحلزون
jellyfish	قنديل البحر	stingray	السمكة اللادغة	whale	حوت
octopus	أخطبوط	turtle	سلحفاة بحرية (تقضى معظم الوقت فى الماء)		

Language Expressions and Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

fall asleep	يغفو/يشعر بنعاس	lose a tooth	يفقد سنًا من الأسنان
agree with	يتفق مع	in danger	فى خطر
jump out of	يقفز خارج	collaborate with	يتعاون مع
get rid of	يتخلص من	take out of	يخرج
cover with	يغطى بـ	take off	يخلع (ملابس)
die from	يموت بسبب	throw into	يلقى فى
take turns	يتناوب الأدوار	advertisement for	إعلان لـ

Definitions التعريفات

cover	يغطى	to put something over something else to protect or hide it
ground	الأرض	the top part of the Earth, where we stand
hole	فتحة/ثقب	an empty space in something
seed	بذرة	a small, hard thing made by plants, which grows into new plants
recycle	يعيد تدوير/تصنيع	a verb which means use again

Unit 12

Key Vocabulary
المفردات الرئيسية

blog	مدونة	education	تعليم	machine	آلة
changes	تغيرات	electric	كهربائى (يعمل بالكهرباء)	pottery	الفخار
colourful	ملون/زاهى الألوان	engine	موتور/محرك	prediction	تنبؤ
culture	ثقافة	injury	إصابة	research	بحث علمى
cure	علاج	jewellery	مجوهرات	the countryside	الريف
disappear (ed)	يختفى	laboratory	معمل	tradition	تقليد
earn (ed)	يربح مالًا	local businesses	أعمال محلية	volunteer (ed)	يتطوع
		Jobs	الوظائف		
marine biologist	عالِم الأحياء البحرية	businesswoman	سيدة أعمال	photographer	مصور فوتوغرافى
accountant	محاسب	computer programmer	مبرمج كمبيوتر	pilot	طيار
architect	مهندس معمارى	dentist	طبيب أسنان	scientist	عالِم
businessman	رجل أعمال	engineer	مهندس مدنى	writer	كاتب

Language Expressions and Prepositions
التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

advice to		نصيحة لـ	get married	يتزوج
design	an app/a video game	يصمم تطبيقًا إلكترونيًا/لعبة فيديو	in a boat for a dive	فى قارب للغوص
design	machines/buildings/engines	يصمم آلات/مبانى/محركات	book a ticket	يحجز تذكرة
do	a job	يؤدى وظيفة	stay healthy	يبقى صحيًا
do	voluntary work	يؤدى عملًا تطوعيًا	score a goal	يسجل/يحرز هدفًا
do	sums	يحل مسائل حسابية	record results	يسجل نتائج
find cures		يجد علاجات	record information	يسجل معلومات

Definitions
التعريفات

app	تطبيق	something on your phone that helps you use maps, book tickets, etc
adult	بالغ/راشد	a fully grown person
jewellery	مجوهرات	things such as rings and necklaces that you wear

PRACTICE

Vocabulary Exercises

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An .... is someone who designs machines for us.
   a) sailor b) accountant c) engineer d) teacher
2. Mohamed Salah .... many goals for Egypt every year.
   a) scores b) scares c) kicks d) takes
3. .... design new buildings.
   a) Teachers b) Doctors c) Carpenters d) Architects
4. Scientists try to find new .... for different illnesses.
   a) cars b) cares c) cures d) cores
5. A .... is a man who works in business.
   a) dentist b) businessman c) scientist d) teacher
6. A pilot is a person who .... a plane.
   a) flies b) rides c) drives d) carries
7. .... look after people's teeth.
   a) Vets b) Teachers c) Scientists d) Dentists
8. The scientist did lots of tests in the ....
   a) zoo b) park c) laboratory d) bank
9. A .... is someone who works for no money to help people.
   a) surgeon b) volunteer c) scientist d) sports coach
10. My father .... married in 1975.
    a) gave b) made c) got d) passed
11. .... is something made from clay such as pots and dishes.
    a) Jewellery b) Pottery c) Wood d) Glass
12. When I share a post, my friends write ....
    a) comments b) blogs c) plays d) pictures
13. Naguib Mahfouz was a famous .... He wrote a lot of books.
    a) writer b) singer c) musician d) reporter
14. .... cars don't use petrol.
    a) Traditional b) Sunny c) Old d) Electric
15. A/An .... is a fully grown person.
    a) infant b) baby c) child d) adult

B Language

Unit 11

1 The Zero Conditional

If/ When ⟶ subject + present simple ⟶ subject + present simple

- تستخدم مع الحقائق الثابتة والعادات.

- If/ When we heat water, it evaporates.
- When/If I have a problem, I ask my father for help.

Subject + present simple ⟶ if/when ⟶ subject + present simple

- People die if/when they don't drink water for a long time.
- I feel sick if/when I eat too much chocolate.

2 must/ mustn't/ should/ shouldn't

Obligation إلزام

Subject + must + inf.	Subject + mustn't + inf.
• We must save our planet. • You must listen to your mum's advice.	• We mustn't throw rubbish into the ocean. • Cars mustn't go when the light is red.

Advice نصيحة

Subject + should + inf.	Subject + shouldn't + inf.
• We should recycle more materials. • She should help her younger brother to eat.	• We shouldn't use plastic bags just once. • Young children shouldn't stay at home alone.

Unit 12

1 Relative Pronoun "who"

نستطيع ربط جملتين (للعاقل) باستخدام ضمير الوصل (who).

- A businesswoman is a person. She works in an office.
  A businesswoman is a person who works in an office.
- That's the boy. He works in a restaurant.
  That's the boy who works in a restaurant.

2 Question Tags

- السؤال المذيل هو سؤال قصير يأتى فى نهاية الجملة الخبرية ويأتى قبله (,) وغرضه التأكيد بمعنى (أليس كذلك؟).
- يكون السؤال المذيل عكس حالة الجملة (مثبتًا إذا كانت الجملة منفية ومنفيًا إذا كانت الجملة مثبتة).

جملة خبرية, فعل مساعد + ضمير الفاعل ?

- She is a great teacher, isn't she?
- You will play the match, won't you?
- They haven't got the key, have they?

إذا لم يكن بالجملة فعل مساعد نستخدم (v. to do)

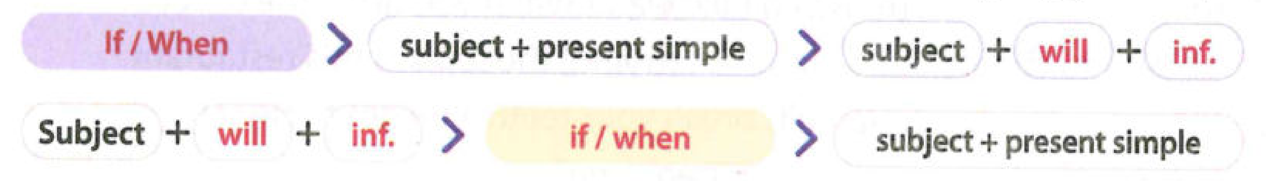
- You like meat, don't you?
- He studied his lessons well, didn't he?
- She plays chess well, doesn't she?
- Mona didn't go to school, did she?

لاحظ التحويلات التالية:

I'm	>	aren't I?	- I'm coming with you, aren't I?
I'm not	>	am I?	- I'm not dreaming, am I?

3 The First Conditional

- نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للحديث عن نتيجة محتملة عن حدث.



- If/When I go to university, I'll study medicine.
- If I don't work hard, I won't pass my exams.

PRACTICE

Language Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You must always .... your sunglasses in the hot sun.
   a) wear b) wearing c) wears d) wore
2. If it ...., the grass gets wet.
   a) rain b) rains c) rained d) raining
3. You .... forget to say "thank you" when someone is kind to you.
   a) will b) must c) shouldn't d) should
4. You should .... fruits and vegetables to stay healthy.
   a) ate b) eating c) eat d) to eat
5. When it is very cold, water .... into ice. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   a) turns b) turning c) turned d) turn
6. You .... listen to your parents' advice. دمياط ٢٠٢٢
   a) mustn't b) must c) shouldn't d) can't
7. What .... a musician do?
   a) does b) do c) is d) are
8. A computer programmer is a person .... writes programs and apps.
   a) whose b) when c) who d) where
9. We're going to the park, ... we?
   a) weren't b) were not c) are not d) aren't
10. You didn't eat all the sweets, ...?
    a) did I b) did you c) didn't I d) didn't you
11. If Lara .... in the city, she will use the bus. البحيرة ٢٠٢٢
    a) stay b) stays c) staying d) stayed
12. If it ...., the students will practise sport in the playground.
    a) doesn't rain b) don't rain c) won't rain d) didn't rain

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You .... (mustn't) take water when you go to the desert.
2. I think you should .... (trying) the food in this restaurant.
3. If you .... (aren't) brush your teeth, you get toothache.
4. We're not lost, ... (aren't) we?
5. She likes chocolate, ... (isn't) she?
6. When Ali .... (play) football with us, we will win the match.



C Skills



1. Speaking

Unit 11

1. Describing a sea animal





- It can swim fast. It's got eight legs.
يمكنه السباحة بسرعة. لديه ثمانى أرجل.





* An octopus! - الأخطبوط.



- If it knows a shark is coming, it jumps out of the water!
لو علمت بقدوم سمكة قرش، تقفز خارج الماء.





* A stingray! - السمكة اللادغة.



- It is one of the most dangerous sea animals in the ocean.
إنه واحد من أخطر الحيوانات البحرية فى المحيط.



* A shark! - سمكة القرش.



- It has a hard shell to protect it. لديها صدفة صلبة لحمايتها.



* A turtle! - السلحفاة البحرية.

2. Asking for and giving instructions

- What should I do to plant a tree? ماذا يمكننى أن أفعل لزراعة شجرة؟
- First, find a sunny place in the garden. أولًا، ابحث عن مكان مشمس فى الحديقة.
- Then, make a small hole in the soil. ثم قم بعمل حفرة فى التربة.
- Finally, put the seed in the hole and cover it with soil.
فى النهاية، ضع البذرة فى الحفرة ثم غطِّها بالتربة.

Unit 12

Talking about your future plans

- Next year, I'm going to learn a new language.
- Before I leave school, I think I'll design a video game.
- In ten years' time, I'll be married.



2. Write it right

Unit 11

1. How to write about "Keeping our environment clean"

Keeping our environment clean

It's important to have a healthy life. The environment is the place where we all live. We must keep it clean and healthy. We mustn't throw plastic in the ocean. When plastic stays in the environment, there is a big problem. Some of the plastic is about 100 years old! Every year, many sea animals die from plastic. We must try to use other materials like paper and glass. We must use our shopping bags more than once. We mustn't throw them away. We mustn't stop trying to use them. We must keep our planet clean. We must save it!

2. How to write about "Recycling"

Recycling

Materials have many different uses. Recycling materials is very important for us. We must make use of old plastic. There are many good ideas for recycling plastic. We can make pots to feed birds from old bottles. We can make kitchen containers. We can make plastic pencil cases, too. We mustn't throw it away. A lot of animals and birds die from poisonous plastic in the sea and on land. We mustn't stop trying to use old materials because this is very useful for us.

Unit 12

How to write about "Your dream job"

From: kareem@gmail.com To: hany@hotmail.com Subject: My dream job

Dear Hany,

How are you and your family? I'm writing this email to tell you about my dream job. When I grow up, I'd like to be a teacher like my father. He works at a big school in Benha. A teacher is a person who teaches students. Although teaching is tiring, it's very interesting. It helps our country to be great. A teacher helps students to achieve their dreams and get the job they dream of. I like it because I want to help students to learn new things. It's an interesting job. I'm looking forward to hearing from you. See you soon.

Yours, Kareem



Al-Adwaa April Test on Units 11 & 12



Listening



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1. How much plastic can we recycle?
   a) Much. b) Some. c) All. d) None.
2. Where does plastic go into?
   a) The underground. b) The Earth.
   c) The air. d) The ocean.
3. How long does plastic stay in the environment?
   a) No time. b) Not much.
   c) A long time. d) A little time.
4. How is plastic when animals eat it?
   a) Poisonous. b) Safe. c) Easy. d) Kind.



Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue: بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣

Rana is talking with Ahmed about her parents.

Ahmed : What is your father's job?
Rana : (1).. .
Ahmed : (2)..?
Rana : He looks after sick people.
Ahmed : Does your mother work?
Rana : (3).. .
Ahmed : (4)..?
Rana : She is a teacher.
Ahmed : Do you want to be a doctor or a teacher?
Rana : (5).. .



Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions: بنى سويف ٢٠٢٣

Doctors are important because they care for people. Doctors are people who take care of others and help them get well when they are sick. Doctors find out what is wrong with people when they are sick. Doctors help sick people get better by giving them the right medicine. They work in hospitals and doctor's offices.

They are caring people. To be a doctor, you will have to go to college. You should like working with people and helping others. You should be kind and helpful. If you are not kind, patients will not love you.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of the passage?

....

2. What do doctors give to sick people?

....

3. Is it important to be kind as a doctor? Why/Why not?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to ....

a) doctors b) patients c) nurses d) colleges

5. If you are not a kind doctor, people will .... you.

a) love b) like c) admire d) dislike

6. "........................." means ill.

a) Tall b) Happy c) Sick d) Thick

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Some sea life, like jellyfish is .... It stings you when you touch it. دمياط ٢٠٢٢

a) cute b) calm c) pretty d) poisonous

2. We should recycle old things to .... our environment. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

a) save b) destroy c) harm d) leave

3. In ...., we can protect birds, fish and animals. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

a) planetariums b) caves c) aquariums d) nature reserves

4. A .... is all the bones inside an animal or a person.

a) skeleton b) head c) skin d) face

5. A/An .... is a person who works with money.

a) accountant b) biologist c) engineer d) dentist

6. People make pottery from ....

a) wood b) plastic c) paper d) clay

7. A/An .... travels on ships or boats for a job.

a) dentist b) musician c) sailor d) player

8. If you touch a jellyfish, it .... you. الجيزة ٢٠٢٢

a) sting b) stings c) stung d) stinging

9. We .... clean our room every day.

a) must b) should to c) have d) are

10. He .... to America if he earns a lot of money.

a) fly b) is flying c) will fly d) flies

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You .... (mustn't) listen to other students' ideas.
2. You .... (should) eat so many sweets. They are bad for you.
3. Tamer is a teacher, ... (is) he?
4. The boy .... (whose) plays basketball with you is very tall.

E Writing

6 Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words on your plans for the future. Your name is Adel and your email address is adel@gmail.com. Your friend's name is Samir and his email address is samir@yahoo.com.

To : ....

From : ....

Subject : ....

....

....

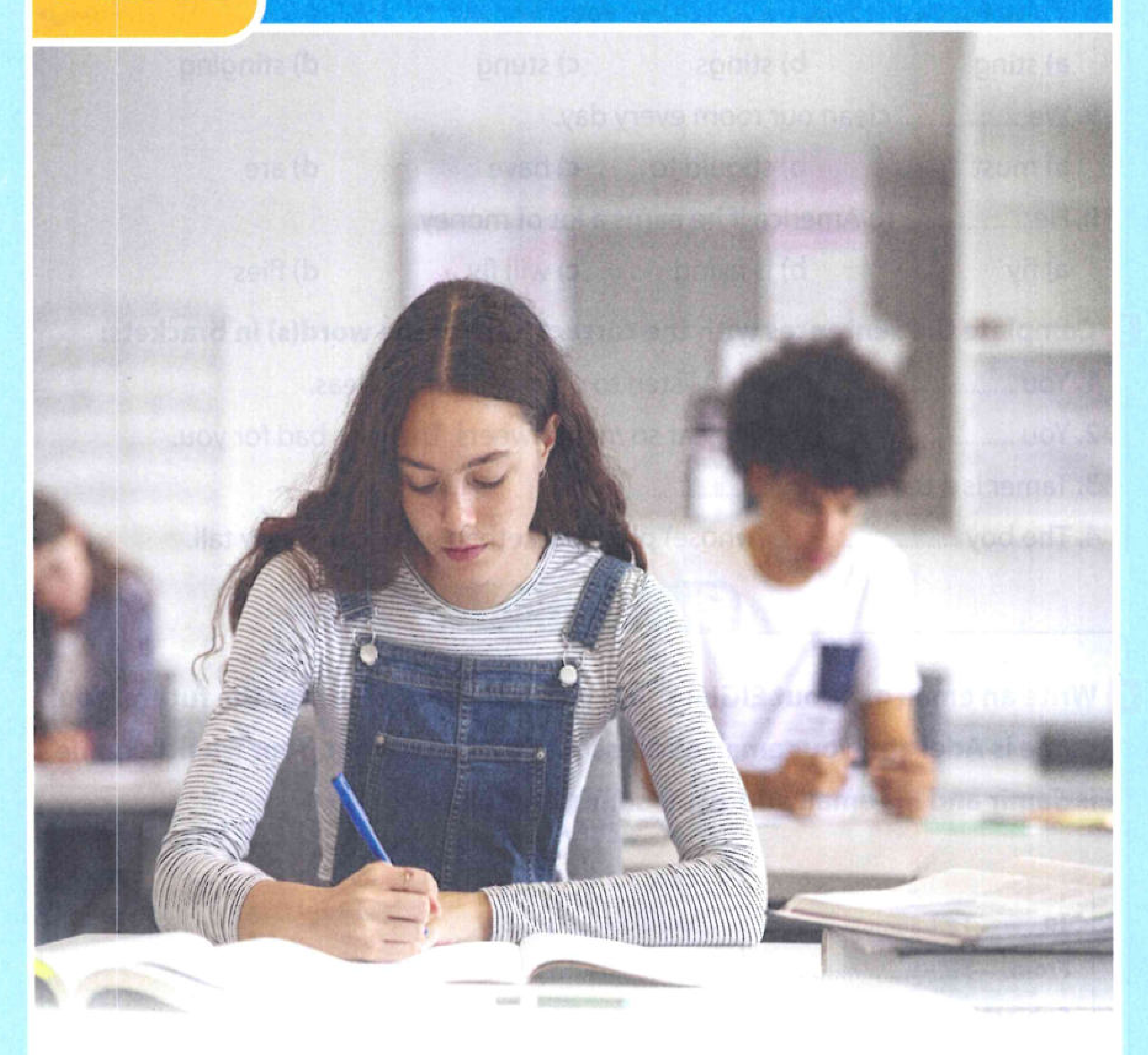
....

....

....

....

Part 3 SB & WB General Exercises



1 Vocabulary Exercises on Each Unit

2 Language Exercises on Each Unit

- التدريبات الخاصة بالمفردات وقواعد اللغة على كل وحدة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات.

Unit 7

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. I saw a/an .... about dolphins.
   a) aquarium b) planetarium c) park d) exhibition
2. I .... on the big wheel.
   a) rode b) saw c) did d) heard
3. To be .... is to be very bad.
   a) terrible b) good c) high d) sad
4. I like ...., but it is difficult to open them!
   a) bananas b) figs c) coconuts d) dates
5. My grandfather was a .... and sailed around the world.
   a) sailor b) driver c) player d) nurse
6. Do you like working with other people, or do you prefer to work ....?
   a) together b) lonely c) a line d) alone
7. Do you think this glass bottle will .... in the water?
   a) sing b) thank c) sink d) think
8. Crusoe ate a .... fish and it was not very nice.
   a) dead b) died c) dies d) death
9. It wasn't always very hot .... the island.
   a) of b) with c) for d) on
10. .... music is sometimes very loud.
    a) Quiet b) Rock c) Traditional d) Classical

Language

11. **A:** When .... you go to the museum? **B:** I went to the museum four days ago.
    a) have b) are c) do d) did
12. **A:** Can you play chess? **B:** No, I .... play chess.
    a) can't b) can c) do d) would
13. It was OK on Saturday, ... I had lots of homework.
    a) because b) although c) so d) when
14. His ship sank .... there was a terrible storm.
    a) because b) but c) so d) and
15. .... I am very hungry, I don't want to eat another dead fish!
    a) Because b) Although c) But d) So

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. When .... (did) Dina's birthday?
2. It's Wednesday today, so it was Tuesday .... (this morning).
3. 2016 was eight years .... (last).
4. **A:** What time is it? **B:** It .... (was) quarter past ten.
5. What did you .... (did) last weekend?
6. .... (Do) you got a new school bag?
7. She went to school .... (because) she felt ill.
8. .... (You can) see the island?
9. .... (Do) you taller than your brother?
10. Can your best friend .... (speaks) French?

Unit 8

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. .... than 37,500,000 people live in Paris.
   a) Old b) About c) Under d) More
2. The Pyramid is just .... 850 years old.
   a) for b) deep c) under d) more
3. How .... is the Cairo-Alexandria desert road?
   a) high b) long c) tall d) many
4. The Tahya Masr .... goes over the Nile in Cairo.
   a) Pyramid b) Tunnel c) Tower d) Bridge
5. The Cairo .... is the tallest building in Egypt.
   a) Bridge b) Tower c) Tunnel d) City
6. What do you think .... animals like horses and cats?
   a) about b) in c) from d) under
7. "...................." means something that is not expensive.
   a) Fast b) Long c) Cheap d) Deep
8. To be .... means not to be quiet.
   a) deep b) dangerous c) safe d) noisy
9. "...................." means measuring something from one side to the other.
   a) Wide b) Deep c) Safe d) Cheap
10. "...................." means measuring water from the top to the bottom.
    a) High b) Deep c) Wide d) Long

Language

11. Which pyramid is ...., the Great Pyramid of Giza or the Red Pyramid?

a) more tall b) tall c) taller than d) taller

12. Some people think maths is the .... subject of all.

a) a difficult b) difficult c) most difficult d) more difficult

13. On Saturdays, the market is .... on Fridays.

a) more quiet b) quiet c) quieter d) quieter than

14. Tennis is less dangerous .... football.

a) this b) that c) then d) than

15. This is the .... popular book in the library.

a) least b) less c) more d) little

16. Insects make .... people ill than any other animals.

a) more b) much c) many d) some

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. An elephant is .... (biggest) than a camel.
2. My cousins felt very .... (as happy) after they moved to a new flat.
3. Cheese is .... (useful) for you than fruit.
4. Let's buy green apples because the red apples are .... (most) expensive.
5. Old cars are usually .... (noisy) than modern cars.
6. A train is .... (faster) a bus.
7. The museum is usually .... (crowded) on a Saturday than a Sunday.
8. Adel is tall, but Rami is .... (tall).
9. I don't like this hotel .... (and) it is not very modern.
10. The Nile is the .... (long) river in the world.

Unit 9

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. We can't go .... today because there is no wind!

   a) diving b) windsurfing c) trekking d) biking

2. All you need to go .... is a boat and some wind!

   a) climbing b) zip lining c) trekking d) sailing

3. I love going .... I love going down rivers. It's usually very quiet!

   a) kayaking b) trekking c) biking d) lining

4. We sometimes go .... for two days or more, usually across the desert.

   a) diving b) windsurfing c) trekking d) kayaking

5. I love .... because I'm good at swimming under the water.

   a) kayaking b) sailing c) trekking d) diving

6. Try .... You start really high, but you finish on the ground. You go very fast!

   a) windsurfing b) zip lining c) diving d) sailing

7. .... the third of March, Ahmed's going to leave Ras Shetan.

   a) In b) On c) At d) Of

8. A .... is a person who shows a place to tourists.

   a) visitor b) pilot c) nurse d) guide

9. I love waking up in a .... and hearing the birds sing in the mornings.

   a) pool b) tent c) picnic d) tint

10. They took four days to cross the desert. It was a difficult ....

    a) experiment b) journey c) tent d) guide

11. I don't want to have a/an .... on holiday, I want to sleep by a pool!

    a) experiment b) tent c) adventure d) travel

12. The roads are dangerous when it is .... because you can't see very well.

    a) fogs b) foggy c) sunny d) clouds

13. Don't swim in the sea when it is .... It is dangerous.

a) warm b) stormy c) sunny d) hot

14. .... shall we do this weekend?

a) What b) How c) Why d) Where

15. .... don't we go kayaking?

a) What b) Why c) When d) Where

16. Maher and Karim can .... windsurfing or diving.

a) make b) play c) do d) go

17. Maher asks Karim to find photos .... themselves and their other cousins.

a) at b) of c) by d) near

Language

18. What are you going to .... tomorrow?

a) wearing b) worn c) wore d) wear

19. What are you .... do next Saturday?

a) going to b) going c) go d) go to

20. You don't drive this car. It drives .... !

a) herself b) itself c) himself d) yourself

21. We all looked at .... in the school photo.

a) themselves b) ourselves c) yourselves d) yourself

22. Did a famous person draw that, or did you draw it ....?

a) myself b) herself c) himself d) yourself

23. I'd .... play chess.

a) prefer b) rather c) got d) refer

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We enjoyed .... (themselves) when we went sailing.
2. Sami came out of the sea and dried .... (herself) with a towel.
3. I made .... (meself) some salad for lunch.
4. Maya taught .... (itself) to speak French.
5. Would you like to make .... (himself) a cup of tea?

Unit 10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. A car door is made of ....
   a) wood b) metal c) leather d) cotton
2. Car windows are made of ....
   a) plastic b) sand c) stone d) glass
3. Expensive car seats are made of ....
   a) leather b) wood c) metal d) plastic
4. You can turn on the .... to get water.
   a) tap b) tip c) tape d) tube
5. The .... is on top of a house.
   a) wall b) tap c) oven d) roof
6. You use .... to build a wall.
   a) breaks b) bricks c) ovens d) taps
7. You use a/an .... to cook food or bread.
   a) roof b) oven c) brick d) tap
8. We put .... panels on a roof. They produce electricity using the sun.
   a) space b) robot c) drone d) solar
9. We can use the sun or the wind to produce ....
   a) electricity b) wind c) sign d) rocket
10. .... can do many things for us. Some of them can talk.
    a) Rockets b) Robots c) Turbines d) Winds
11. My aunt made us some bread and when we ate it, it was still ....
    a) warm b) cold c) rainy d) windy
12. Some houses fell to the ground after the ....
    a) wind b) snow c) igloo d) earthquake
13. This is a .... shape. It is a triangle.
    a) triangular b) circular c) rectangle d) rectangular
14. This is a .... shape. It is a circle.
    a) circle b) round c) rectangular d) triangular

Language

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. There .... (wouldn't) be any ordinary cars in the future.
2. I think we .... (would) live on other planets; it is my dream.
3. Will there .... (are) electric cars in the future?
4. We will .... (going) to the moon.

Unit 11

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. A .... can sting you.
   a) turtle b) shark c) stingray d) whale
2. A/An .... has eight legs.
   a) snake b) octopus c) coral reef d) turtle
3. A .... has a hard shell to protect it.
   a) coral b) whale c) shark d) turtle
4. Trees are very good for our .... because they give us clean air.
   a) environment b) moon c) space d) stars
5. Earth is one of the eight .... that go around the sun.
   a) planes b) plans c) plants d) planets
6. We don't need that dirty piece of paper. You can put it with the ....
   a) plant b) rubbish c) plastic d) space
7. The .... is the top part of the Earth, where we stand.
   a) ground b) roof c) wall d) attic
8. Plants grow in the ....
   a) hole b) dust c) air d) soil
9. A .... is an empty space in something.
   a) whole b) hull c) hole d) hall
10. To .... is to put something over something else to protect or hide it.
    a) build b) cover c) cycle d) recycle
11. A .... is a small, hard thing made by plants, which grows into new plants.
    a) sand b) seed c) soil d) sail
12. A lot of .... catch fish from the Red Sea. It's their job.
    a) women b) businessmen c) policemen d) fishermen
13. My grandmother is 65 and knows a lot! We all .... what she says.
    a) respect b) hate c) cover d) water

14. Judy felt very .... after she was ill, but she is better now.

a) friendly b) strong c) weak d) kind

15. In the museum, we saw a .... of a very old animal. Its bones were very big!

a) sand b) skeleton c) soil d) star

Language

16. You .... play games on the road.

a) must b) mustn't c) would d) wouldn't

17. When you cross a road, you .... look left and right.

a) must b) shouldn't c) can't d) mustn't

18. .... I see rubbish on the ground, I throw it in the bin.

a) Because b) If c) Although d) So

19. .... a seed gets water and light, it grows into a healthy plant.

a) However b) When c) Unless d) That's why

20. You .... take water when you go to the desert.

a) must b) mustn't c) have d) has

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You mustn't .... (forgot) why you are doing the activity.
2. You .... (mustn't) listen to other students' ideas.
3. You .... (shouldn't) share your ideas with others.
4. You shouldn't .... (made) all the decisions or rules yourself.
5. You .... (must to) take turns.
6. When a turtle is in danger, it .... (go) into its shell.
7. The octopus .... (swimming) away fast when it's in danger.
8. When I'm hungry, I .... (had) something to eat.
9. When I'm tired, I usually .... (am going) to bed.
10. I always .... (laughed) when I watch that film.
11. Leila feels ill if she .... (travel) on a boat.
12. If water is 100°C, it .... (boiling).

Unit 12

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. A/An .... designs machines and engines.
   a) teacher b) accountant c) engineer d) sailor
2. Mariam got the .... of her test. She did very well!
   a) book b) cause c) reason d) result
3. I love learning about sea life. I want to be a marine ....
   a) architect b) biologist c) engineer d) teacher
4. A/An .... (for example, the Atlantic) is bigger than a sea.
   a) ocean b) sea c) river d) lake
5. To .... is to get money by working.
   a) do b) win c) earn d) make
6. "...................." is something that you wear such as rings and necklaces.
   a) Jewellery b) Paper c) Wood d) Glass
7. A/An .... is a fully grown person.
   a) child b) adult c) baby d) toddler
8. A .... is a room or small building where people make or repair things.
   a) laboratory b) store c) workshop d) grocery
9. "...................." is something made from clay such as pots, dishes, etc.
   a) Jewellery b) Pottery c) Wood d) Glass
10. You need a lot of .... to make a beautiful basket.
    a) skull b) jewellery c) scales d) skills
11. Tourists learn a lot about ancient Egyptian .... when they visit Egypt.
    a) culture b) book c) science d) maths
12. I love the red, blue and green pottery in this workshop. It is very ....
    a) hopeful b) terrible c) helpful d) colourful
13. My father has got a camera, but he doesn't often .... it. He prefers his phone.
    a) useful b) use c) hope d) hopeful
14. The black and white maps you gave me are very ....
    a) useful b) use c) hope d) hopeful

Language

15. A scientist is a person .... studies science.
    a) where b) which c) who d) what
16. Your grandmother doesn't like fish, ... she?
    a) does b) doesn't c) don't d) do
17. You did your homework last night, didn't ....?
    a) she b) he c) I d) you
18. Nasser will write to me when he gets there, ...?
    a) won't Nasser b) won't he c) will he d) will Nasser
19. There weren't many people at the match, were ....?
    a) she b) they c) there d) it
20. A lot of people prefer living in Cairo, ...?
    a) they don't b) don't they c) they do d) do they
21. Your grandfather .... in a big city, did he?
    a) lived b) didn't live c) lives d) doesn't live
22. She never speaks French, ...?
    a) she doesn't b) she does c) does she d) doesn't she
23. Lara doesn't learn to drive. If she .... in the city, she'll use the bus.
    a) stay b) stays c) staying d) stayed
24. If I go to university, I'll .... to be an engineer.
    a) to study b) to studying c) study d) studying
25. We won't go to university .... we don't pass our exams.
    a) so b) and c) but d) if

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Mohamed Salah is a footballer .... (where) scores a lot of goals.
2. My cousins are the people .... (whose) call me every week on the phone.
3. You want to be a nurse, ... (do) you?
4. It .... (is) hot today, is it?
5. You won't forget to phone me, will .... (I)?
6. If we water the tree every day, it will .... (grew) more fruit.
7. Your mum will be very angry if you .... (breaks) your phone.
8. If you .... (doesn't) run, you won't catch the bus.





End of Term Practice

WB pages 118 & 119



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. What does the woman want to buy?
   a) A newspaper. b) A new bag.
   c) A new phone. d) Some photographs.
2. The thing she decides to buy is ....
   a) large and expensive b) small and expensive
   c) small and cheap d) large and cheap
3. What does the assistant ask the woman about?
   a) Her name. b) Her job.
   c) Her hobbies. d) The price.
4. The woman is a ....
   a) photographer b) painter
   c) journalist d) doctor

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ali wants to improve his English.

Tarek : You're going to go to university in September, aren't you?

Ali : Yes, but before I (1)...................................., I want to improve my English.

Tarek : How are you going to do that?

Ali : I'm going to travel to (2).................................... in the summer holidays. Then, I'm going to a language school.

Tarek : England! (3).................................... don't you go to the USA to learn English? In my (4)...................................., American English is easier.

Ali : I'm not ready. It's expensive to go there. I'd rather go to London.

Tarek : You went there before, didn't you? (5).................................... was it there?

Ali : It was great. It was really interesting.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

There are many beautiful mosques, but perhaps the most unusual is the Great Mosque in Mali, Africa. It is not made of bricks like most mosques. It is made of something called mud. This is the brown soil you often find at the bottom of a river. It is very soft in water. If you dry it, it becomes very hard. The building is usually very strong, but there is a problem. People must put new mud on the building every year. If they don't, it will **collapse** when it rains! There are always enough people to do this because the people who help get respect for their work.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage? ....
2. Do you think we should keep ancient buildings? Why? Why not? ....
3. What is unusual about the Great Mosque in Mali? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. When it is dry, mud becomes ....
   a) soft b) hard and strong
   c) difficult to use d) very old
5. What do you think the word **collapse** means?
   a) Fall down. b) Get bigger. c) Disappear. d) Turn to water.
6. The underlined word "It" refers to ....
   a) mud b) Africa
   c) Mali d) The Great Mosque in Mali

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Most windows are made of ....
   a) wool b) glass c) cotton d) paper
2. You can usually .... paper, so don't throw it away.
   a) recycle b) cycle c) heat d) hit
3. We are going to go .... across Sinai.
   a) trekking b) tricking c) fishing d) swimming
4. We decided to play basketball at the sports ....
   a) match b) wheel c) funfair d) centre

5. The teacher asked the students to work in pairs and .... a quiz.

a) throw b) do c) make d) let

6. The story is interesting, ... it?

a) does b) doesn't c) isn't d) is

7. I hope we .... to the moon in the future.

a) will go b) are going to go c) went d) going

8. The old car is .... than the new car.

a) noise b) more noise c) noisier d) noisiest

9. Children usually enjoy .... when they play on the beach.

a) themselves b) herself c) ourselves d) himself

10. Khalid went to the park ten minutes ....

a) since b) then c) ago d) next

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If I feel tired, I usually .... (will go) to bed.
2. My uncle is a .... (seller); he works on a big ship.
3. A doctor is someone .... (which) looks after sick people.
4. Which animals have a .... (shall) or a tail?

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of seventy-eighty (70-80) words on:

"How to keep a beach clean"

....

....

....

....

....

....

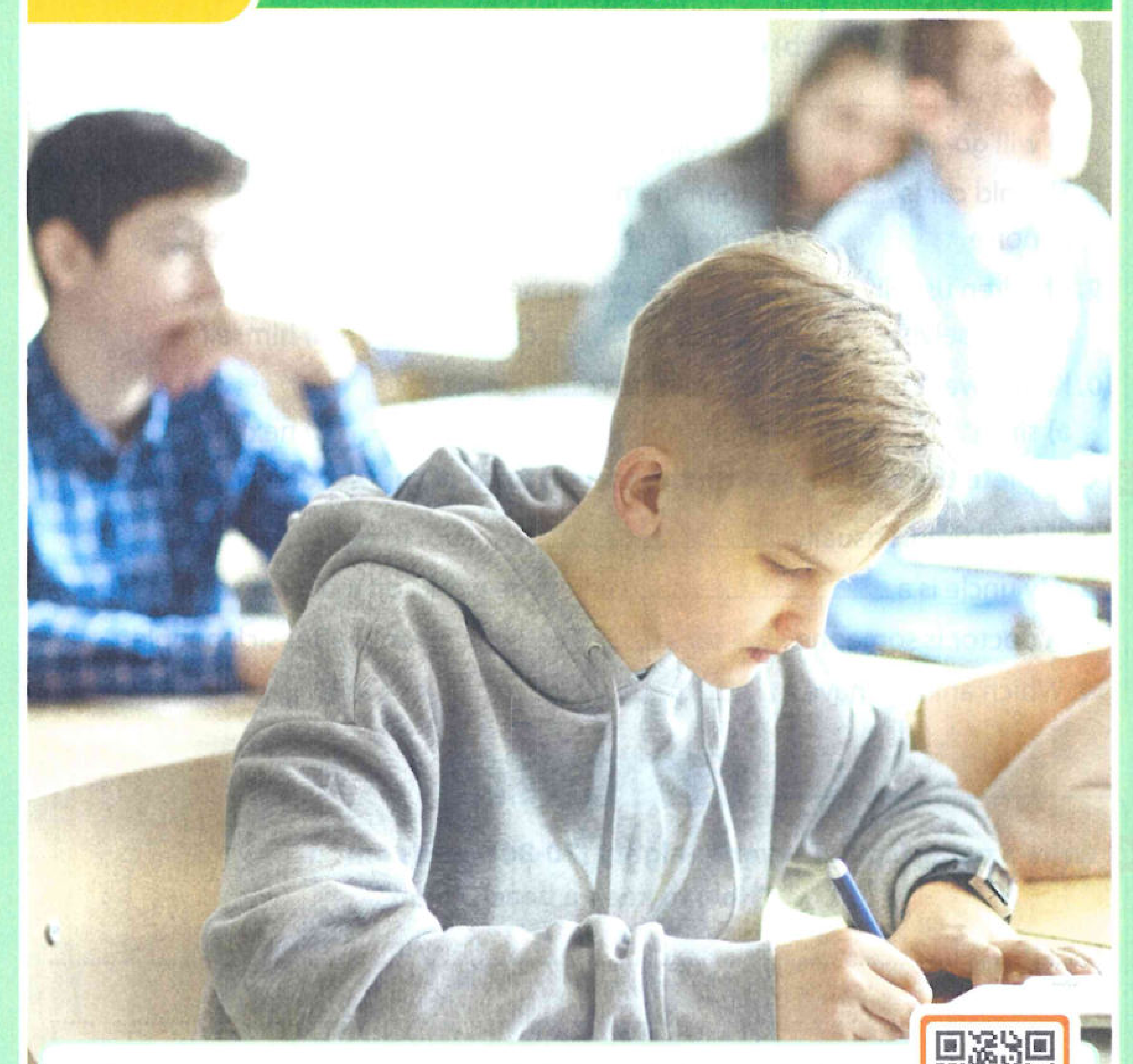
....

....

....

Part 4 Final Exams & Listening Texts

معدلة حسب أحدث المواصفات الامتحانية



Tapescripts

1 Cairo Governorate (Dar El Salam Educational Directorate)




1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. Dad likes ....
   a) films b) sports c) books d) plays
2. Dad is very good at ....
   a) football b) cooking c) running d) swimming
3. Mum loves ....
   a) swimming b) running c) football d) cooking
4. My brother doesn't like the ....
   a) countryside b) city c) school d) cinema




2 Complete the following dialogue:

Sameh is talking to Tamer about a party.

Sameh : Why didn't you come to the party yesterday?

Tamer : (1).. .

Sameh : (2)..?

Tamer : Yes, I went to the doctor.

Sameh : (3)..?

Tamer : He gave me some medicine.

Sameh : Will you go to school tomorrow?

Tamer : (4).. .

Sameh : I hope you get well soon.

Tamer : (5).. .

C Reading Comprehension



3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

It was my mother's birthday. My sister and I went to buy presents for our mother. I bought her a dress and my sister bought her a pair of shoes. At home, we made a party. We invited our three cousins and many of our friends. The girls sang **beautiful** songs. We gave the presents to our mother who thanked us. All the guests ate cakes and drank tea. My mother was happy because all people loved her. At ten p.m, our guests left our house. They were very happy.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to this passage. ....
2. What did the writer buy for her mother? ....
3. What do you think about the two daughters? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to the ....

   a) girls b) cousins c) guests d) daughters

5. The guests left the house ....

   a) in the morning b) in the afternoon
   c) at 9 o'clock d) at 10 o'clock

6. The opposite of the word "**beautiful**" is ....

   a) surprising b) nice c) terrible d) friendly

D Vocabulary and Structure

5

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I like ...., but it is difficult to open them.

   a) bananas b) apples c) coconuts d) oranges

2. I think .... climbing is the most dangerous sport.

   a) tree b) mountain c) wall d) cave

3. The .... has got eight legs to help it swim fast.

   a) turtle b) octopus c) jellyfish d) whale

4. .... are used to cook food and bread.

   a) Fridges b) Ovens c) Taps d) TVs

5. The .... is made of metal.

   a) shoe b) dress c) jumper d) knife

6. A/An .... is the person who travels on ships or boats for a job.

a) vet b) sailor c) nurse d) engineer

7. We had lunch together in the school ....

a) laboratory b) library c) canteen d) uniform

8. .... you got a new school bag? - No, I haven't.

a) Did b) Do c) Have d) Has

9. A lion is .... than a horse.

a) stronger b) strong c) strongest d) the strongest

10. I think we will .... under the sea.

a) lived b) live c) living d) lives

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. The wall .... (are) made of stone.
2. Mona drew .... (himself) a picture.
3. You went to the beach .... (next) week.
4. Why must we .... (cleaned) the beaches?

E Writing

6

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A sport you like"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



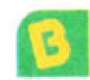


A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. Robinson Crusoe is a/an .... story.
   a) adventure b) scientific c) historical d) romantic
2. Robinson Crusoe is a story written by ....
   a) Dickens b) Defoe c) Orwell d) Shakespeare
3. Robinson Crusoe was a/an ....
   a) doctor b) sailor c) engineer d) teacher
4. His ship sank because there was a really terrible ....
   a) storm b) earthquake c) volcano d) battle



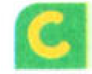
B Language Functions



2 Complete the following dialogue:

Mona is asking Nada about her visit to Hurghada last month.

Mona : When did you go to Hurghada?
Nada : (1).. .
Mona : (2)..?
Nada : I went there by bus.
Mona : Who did you go with?
Nada : (3).. .
Mona : (4)..?
Nada : I enjoyed swimming in the sea.
Mona : Will you go there next year?
Nada : (5).. .



C Reading Comprehension



3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Mohamed Salah is an Egyptian footballer. He was born in 1992 in Gharbia. He **started** playing football for El Mokawloon. He then moved to Switzerland to

play for Basel in 2012. In 2014, he went to London to play for Chelsea. Three years later, in 2017, he went to play for Liverpool. Mohamed Salah was also the African footballer of the year in 2017. In 2019, he won the European Champions League with Liverpool. He also came third in the 2018 Best Fifa Men's Player Award.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to the passage. ....
2. Why do you think Mohamed Salah is a popular man? ....
3. Where was Mohamed Salah born? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The opposite of the word "**started**" is ....

   a) began b) ended c) restarted d) happened

5. The underlined pronoun "He" refers to ....

   a) Liverpool b) Mohamed Ali c) Mohamed Salah d) the writer

6. Mohamed Salah played for .... in 2014.

   a) Basel b) El Mokawloon c) Liverpool d) Chelsea

D Vocabulary and Structure

5

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I watched a football match at the ....

   a) funfair b) museum c) aquarium d) stadium

2. Rock climbing is a/an .... sport.

   a) dangerous b) safe c) easy d) water

3. .... are made of glass.

   a) Windows b) Wallets c) Sofas d) Bags

4. When the sun shines, the weather is ....

   a) foggy b) windy c) sunny d) rainy

5. He is good .... basketball.

   a) in b) at c) by d) of

6. Don't be .... You will find good friends in your new school.

   a) nervous b) pleased c) relaxed d) helpful

7. I like jazz, ... I don't like opera.

a) because b) and c) but d) or

8. I .... go to the museum tomorrow.

a) will b) went c) going to d) am going

9. There .... any taps in ancient Egypt.

a) were b) aren't c) weren't d) isn't

10. You mustn't .... games in the roads.

a) playing b) play c) plays d) played

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. Cairo Tower is the .... (tall) building in Egypt.
2. I drew .... (himself) a picture.
3. Ahmed is going to .... (played) football.
4. .... (Do) you visit your grandparents yesterday?

E Writing

6

6 Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words on your visit to the zoo. Your name is Nouran and your email address is nour@hotmail.com. Your friend's name is Sandy and her email address is sandy@yahoo.com.

To : ....

From : ....

Subject : ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

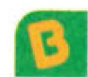




1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1. Ziad has got a lot of .... for the future.
   a) plants b) exams c) plans d) designs
2. Ziad wants to be a/an ....
   a) teacher b) doctor c) dentist d) accountant
3. Ziad is visiting his uncle to get some ....
   a) advice b) jewellery c) food d) stones
4. In the future, Ziad is going to get some work at hospital for ....
   a) games b) adventure c) money d) free

 Language Functions



2 Complete the following dialogue:

Mostafa asks Yassin about his week in Alexandria.

Mostafa : Good morning, where did you spend your weekend?
Yassin : (1).. .
Mostafa : Who did you go with?
Yassin : (2).. .
Mostafa : (3)..?
Yassin : Yes, we enjoyed very much.
Mostafa : How was the weather there?
Yassin : (4).. .
Mostafa : (5)..?
Yassin : We ate delicious fish.





3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Although Karim and Ramzy are twins, they are different in some ways. For example, Karim's favourite hobby is playing football. He plays it with his friends at school and in a club near their school. He also watches football matches on TV at home after

finishing his homework. On the other side, Ramzy is very interested in music. He plays it in a **band** at school. At home, he likes listening to music on the radio or plays the guitar. Their parents help them study hard for school and also let them enjoy their hobbies.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of this passage? ....
2. Where does Karim play football? ....
3. What do you think of Karim and Ramzy? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. How are Karim and Ramzy different?
   a) In their hobbies. b) They have different classes.
   c) In their schools. d) With their Friends.
5. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to ....
   a) school b) their parents c) hobbies d) the twins
6. A **"band"** is ....
   a) some people who play music together
   b) some people who play a sport together
   c) some people who have the same sport
   d) some people who cook together

D Vocabulary and Structure

5

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In ancient Egypt, the walls of the houses were made of ....
   a) taps b) plastic c) bricks d) carts
2. .... is a mountain sport.
   a) Diving b) Sailing c) Wind surfing d) Trekking
3. Don't throw away those glass bottles, we can .... them.
   a) recycle b) cook c) cycle d) bake
4. Metals .... when we throw them into water.
   a) think b) sink c) float d) swim
5. You can sleep in a .... in the desert.
   a) hotel b) house c) tent d) flat
6. What is your .... of doing a sport every week?
   a) price b) space c) opinion d) igloo

7. A .... is someone who works on a boat or a ship.

a) vet b) sailor c) nurse d) scientist

8. The birds sleep in caves to protect .... from eagles.

a) themselves b) yourselves c) itself d) ourselves

9. Ahmed had lunch with his family ....

a) tomorrow b) yesterday c) now d) next month

10. What are you going .... tomorrow?

a) wear b) to wear c) wears d) wearing

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. The children made these toys .... (itself).
2. I don't like this car .... (but) it is very old.
3. When a turtle is in danger, it .... (go) into its shell.
4. Will there .... (being) driverless cars in the future?

E Writing

6

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"My last weekend"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



A Listening



24

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. What's your uncle's job?
   a) A teacher. b) An engineer.
   c) A doctor. d) A businessman.
2. What kind of engines does your uncle design? - Engines for ....
   a) ships b) buses c) cars d) planes
3. Your aunt's job is ....
   a) a nurse b) a pilot c) a doctor d) a teacher
4. Where does your aunt work? - She works in a/an ....
   a) school b) hospital c) office d) bank



B Language Functions



2.5

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Heba and Hala are talking about music.

Heba : I like music very much. And you?

Hala : (1).. .

Heba : (2)..?

Hala : I prefer jazz.

Heba : (3)..?

Hala : Hakim is my favourite singer.

Heba : Do you want to play music in a band?

Hala : A band! (4).. .

Heba : I will help you.

Hala : Really! (5).. .

C Reading Comprehension



3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Ann is from England. She is now in Egypt on holiday. She has spent two days in Aswan. She enjoys seeing the High Dam. She thinks that people of Aswan are so friendly. She still has five more days in her holiday. Her friend, Salma invited her to visit her village. Ann is going there tomorrow morning. She has decided to spend two days with her friend and her family. Salma will show her how Egyptian **villagers** live and spend their day. Then, she will go to Alexandria for a day. She intends to visit the place where the Lighthouse was one day. She is going to stay the rest of her holiday in Cairo. She wants to visit the Egyptian Museum. She'd like to visit the Pyramids of Giza.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage? ....
2. How long is Ann going to spend in Cairo? ....
3. Why do you think Ann enjoyed her visit to Aswan? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "her" refers to ....

   a) Ann　b) Salma　c) people　d) holiday

5. The word "**villagers**" can have the same meaning as ....

   a) carpenters　b) farmers　c) engineers　d) engineers

6. Ann is going to visit the place of the Lighthouse in ....

   a) Aswan　b) Cairo　c) Giza　d) Alexandria

D Vocabulary and Structure

5

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Cars are made of ....

   a) paper　b) metal　c) leather　d) cotton

2. A/An .... is someone who designs machines for us.

   a) sailor　b) accountant　c) engineer　d) teacher

3. The Cairo .... is very amazing with its lights in the evening.

   a) Bridge　b) Tower　c) Tour　d) Tunnel

4. You can turn on the .... to get water.
   a) tap   b) tip   c) tape   d) tube
5. When you put a stone in water, it ....
   a) thinks   b) sinks   c) floats   d) thanks
6. I usually .... my homework after school.
   a) do   b) make   c) take   d) give
7. On his way down, Tamer .... over and hurt himself.
   a) took   b) fell   c) made   d) gave
8. We .... play games on roads.
   a) must   b) should   c) mustn't   d) have to
9. Reem is .... than Rana.
   a) older   b) old   c) oldest   d) the oldest
10. I am going to .... Sinai.
   a) visits   b) visiting   c) visited   d) visit

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. Yesterday, it .... (were) my friend Dalia's birthday.
2. .... (Do) you go to the park yesterday?
3. Ahmed .... (are) going to go trekking next year.
4. What's your pencil case .... (make) of?

E Writing

6

6 Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words on your dream job. Your name is Sherif and your email address is sherif@hotmail.com. Your friend's name is Omar and his email address is omar@gmail.com.

To : ....
From : ....
Subject : ....

....
....
....
....

24



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

4

1. I go to the beach in ....
   a) summer b) winter c) spring d) fall
2. I go there with ....
   a) my friends b) my school c) my parents d) my family
3. When a wave comes, I .... up.
   a) jump b) throw c) run d) fill
4. On the beach, his brother likes to play with his beach ....
   a) bag b) ball c) bike d) car

B Language Functions



2.5

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Asmaa asks Eman about the story she is reading.

Asmaa : What are you reading?

Eman : (1).. .

Asmaa : (2)..?

Eman : It's called "The Old Man and the Sea".

Asmaa : (3)..?

Eman : The main character is an old man called Santiago.

Asmaa : What's his job?

Eman : (4).. .

Asmaa : Is it a good story?

Eman : (5).. .

C Reading Comprehension





4.5

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Egypt is a very beautiful country. Many tourists come to visit Egypt all year round. Egypt has very nice weather. In summer, tourists can go to Alexandria. There, they can see the Lighthouse and enjoy the sea. In winter, they can go to

Aswan. They enjoy the warm weather there. There are many interesting things which tourists can see in Egypt. They can see the pyramids, the zoo and many museums in Cairo. Last Friday, my pen-friend Robert came from England to visit Egypt. He went to Aswan by train. He stayed at a **nice** hotel. He saw many temples and beautiful places.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to the passage. ....

2. What did Robert see in Aswan?..

3. Why do you think tourists like to visit Egypt?..

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The opposite of the adjective "**nice**" is ....

a) terrible b) horrible c) bad d) all of these

5. Robert is ....

a) Japanese b) French c) Egyptian d) English

6. The underlined word "There" refers to ....

a) England b) Cairo c) Aswan d) Alexandria

D Vocabulary and Structure

5

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The .... is everything around us. We must keep it clean.

a) environment b) sea c) planet d) plant

2. When I was a young child, I really .... like chocolate.

a) am not b) won't c) didn't d) don't

3. The museum has a lot of valuable ....

a) competitions b) numbers c) centres d) treasures

4. I .... with your opinion. I have another one.

a) dislike b) agree c) disagree d) think

5. The lion is .... dangerous than the dog.

a) the most b) the more c) most d) more

6. People sleep in .... when they go camping.

a) tents b) pools c) holes d) palaces

7. Ali and I enjoyed .... when we went sailing.
   a) himself   b) ourselves   c) themselves   d) myself
8. In winter, people wear heavy clothes to .... warm.
   a) have   b) take   c) keep   d) make
9. He is a famous writer because he has .... ideas.
   a) busy   b) fast   c) expensive   d) creative
10. Some people like listening to music on their ....
   a) gloves   b) posters   c) headphones   d) leaflets

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. You .... (mustn't) listen to your teacher's advice.
2. .... (Because) I am hungry, I don't want to eat.
3. .... (Ahmed is) going to fly to London?
4. A doctor is someone .... (which) helps sick people.

E Writing

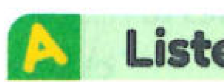
6

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A trip to a famous place"

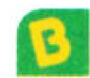
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....





1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1. **A:** When was the Grand Egyptian Museum opened? **B:** In ....
   a) 2000 b) 2009 c) 2019 d) 2002
2. How far is the museum from the Pyramids at Giza?
   a) Two kilometres. b) Ten kilometres.
   c) Twenty kilometres. d) Twelve kilometres.
3. What is the most beautiful part of the museum?
   a) The hall. b) The main room.
   c) The entrance. d) The second floor.
4. How long is the biggest statue in the museum?
   a) Two metres. b) Twelve metres.
   c) Twenty metres. d) Twenty two metres.



B Language Functions



2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ayman and Soha are talking about the weekend.

Ayman : What did you do at the last weekend?
Soha : (1)... .
Ayman : Funfair! (2)...?
Soha : I loved the big wheel most.
Ayman : How did you go there?
Soha : (3)... .
Ayman : (4)...?
Soha : The ticket is 20 pounds.
Ayman : Fantastic! What else did you do there?
Soha : (5)... .
Ayman : That is wonderful.





3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I'm Nader. I'm a tour guide. I take small groups of tourists around Egypt. When I meet the group, I check names and make sure that everyone is on the bus. I tell them what we are going to see and do. It is not a boring job. Each tour takes

eight hours. I answer all the questions they asked. Sometimes, I have problems. Somebody gets lost or leaves a camera behind. I like my job. It is an enjoyable job. I am proud to be an Egyptian tour guide.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the passage about? ....
2. How does the tour guide help tourists? ....
3. What other problems do you think a tour guide faces? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "they" refers to ....
   a) children b) tourists c) books d) tour guides
5. The tour takes .... hours.
   a) one b) seven c) eight d) ten
6. The writer finds his job ....
   a) tiring b) boring c) dangerous d) interesting

D Vocabulary and Structure

5

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I visit the .... to see the planets and stars.
   a) bowling alley b) aquarium c) planetarium d) stadium
2. Making .... of clay is an ancient Egyptian craft.
   a) books b) jewellery c) pottery d) boots
3. A train is .... than a bus.
   a) faster b) fast c) as fast d) fastest
4. I love .... because I am good at swimming under water.
   a) sailing b) zip lining c) trekking d) diving
5. We use .... to make jumpers.
   a) plastic b) wood c) metal d) wool
6. I think we .... more robots in our school in 2050.
   a) using b) will use c) used d) use

7. A shell on the back of a/an .... is to protect it.

a) turtle b) octopus c) shark d) whale

8. The Cairo Metro goes through a long .... under the Nile.

a) tunnel b) tower

c) hall d) bridge

9. Be careful when you drive a car in a .... road.

a) safe b) quiet c) narrow d) low

10. My brother arrived home ten minutes ....

a) ago b) since c) lost d) yesterday

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. I think he is still ill. He looks even .... (bad) than last week.
2. The computer was very expensive .... (because) I bought it.
3. Ahmed is going to .... (sleeping) in a tent.
4. The lamp is .... (making) of glass.

E Writing

6

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A famous place in Egypt"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....





1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4 نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. The walls of the houses were made of ....
   a) wood b) glass c) iron d) bricks
2. Which colour did people paint their houses with?
   a) Red. b) White. c) Black. d) Orange.
3. Where did they sleep?
   a) On the roof. b) In the kitchen.
   c) In living rooms. d) On the wall.
4. What weren't at their house?
   a) Doors. b) Kitchens.
   c) Living rooms. d) Bedrooms.





2 Complete the following dialogue:

Hamza and Waleed are talking about Mohamed Salah.

Hamza : Do you know Mohamed Salah?

Waleed : (1).. .

Hamza : (2)..?

Waleed : He was born in 1992.

Hamza : (3)..?

Waleed : He plays in England for Liverpool.

Hamza : Is he good at scoring goals?

Waleed : (4).. .

Hamza : What do you think about his character?

Waleed : (5).. .

C Reading Comprehension



3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Marwan is a very **smart** boy in the third grade. He always remembers his homework and does well in all of his tests. Last Sunday, he woke up late and quickly left his house. When he arrived at school, he noticed that his homework was not in his school bag. Marwan was upset because his teacher, Mrs Maha, gets angry when students don't do their homework. He started to get worried but he decided to be brave and apologise to his teacher and tell her he won't do that again. Mrs Maha wasn't angry as she knows that Marwan is a good student.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why did Marwan leave his house quickly? ....
2. What is the main idea of the passage? ....
3. Why do you think Mrs Maha wasn't angry with Marwan? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "he" refers to ....
   a) Marwan's brother b) Marwan's cousin
   c) Marwan d) Marwan's friend
5. Mrs Maha becomes .... when her students forget their homework.
   a) bored b) proud c) excited d) angry
6. The word "**smart**" means ....
   a) happy b) proud c) clever d) polite

D Vocabulary and Structure

5

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A jellyfish .... you when you touch it.
   a) hides b) stings c) covers d) protects
2. My work is .... my home. So, I walk to work every day.
   a) far b) near c) empty d) big
3. People have different .... about music.
   a) classes b) rocks c) opinions d) mountains

4. We have a/an .... to cook food in.

a) seat b) oven

c) fridge d) knife

5. .... is the art, ideas, beliefs, etc. of a group of people.

a) Reading b) Science c) Culture d) Art

6. The .... is a machine that can fly, but it doesn't have a pilot.

a) robot b) panel c) charger d) drone

7. He .... to buy a new car after he had had money.

a) divided b) decided c) explained d) kept

8. There weren't .... books here.

a) no b) some c) any d) one

9. I wear my jacket .... it is cold.

a) without b) to c) if d) but

10. You .... look left and right when you cross the road.

a) must b) mustn't c) shall d) can't

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. The Nile is .... (longest) than the Amazon.
2. What are you .... (go) to do next Friday?
3. Don't .... (threw) rubbish in the ground.
4. There will .... (been) modern houses in the future.

E Writing

6

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your favourite sport"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....







1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. The Tahya Masr Bridge opened in .... in May, 2019.
   a) Cairo b) Alex c) Aswan d) Luxor
2. More than 4,000 people helped to .... it.
   a) write b) read c) build d) sleep
3. The Tahya Masr Bridge has a .... floor.
   a) cotton b) plastic c) leather d) glass
4. Many people enjoy .... across the bridge.
   a) sleeping b) walking c) listening d) eating







2 Complete the following dialogue:

Aser and Rayan are talking about music.

Aser : Do you like classical music, Rayan?
Rayan: Yes, I do. (1)... .
Aser : (2)...?
Rayan: I last went to a concert last year. It was fantastic.
Aser : Have you got a ticket to the concert on Saturday?
Rayan: (3)... .
Aser : (4)...?
Rayan: Yes, you can. I'll be happy to be with you.
Aser : I hope we enjoy it.
Rayan: (5)... .





3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

In different parts of the world, people build their houses of different materials. In areas where there is a lot of wood like North America, houses are usually made of wood. That's because these areas have large forests and so wood is easy to get

and it is also cheap. In other areas of Europe, with few forests and where **stone** and bricks are cheaper, most houses are built of these materials. In the coldest areas near the North Pole, people build their houses with the material they can find. The amazing thing is building houses in Rwanda. They are made of mud, grass and banana leaves.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage? ....
2. What are houses made of in North America? ....
3. Do you think that building houses in coldest areas is difficult? Why? Why not?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "They" refers to .... in Rwanda.

a) houses b) people c) children d) meals

5. The word "**stone**" means a hard and natural material that is made from ....

a) grass b) forests c) rocks d) ice

6. In Europe, houses are built of stone and bricks because they are ....

a) small b) cheap c) big d) cold

D Vocabulary and Structure

5

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Let's go on the big wheel at the .... this weekend.

a) aquarium b) stadium c) funfair d) planetarium

2. My mother wants to buy a new sofa, but I don't think we have .... in our living room.

a) space b) light c) shape d) air

3. My grandmother is 65 and knows a lot! We all .... what she says.

a) laugh b) respect c) hate d) leave

4. When a .... is in danger, it goes into its shell.

a) seed b) skeleton c) turtle d) stingray

5. Scientists do lots of tests in the ....

a) office b) playground c) laboratory d) bank

6. Earth is one of eight .... that go around the sun.

a) rubbish b) planets c) environment d) plants

7. Next year, we're going to go .... across Sinai.

a) tricking b) sailing c) trekking d) swimming

8. Mount Everest is .... than Mount Kilimanjaro.

a) high b) the highest c) higher d) as high

9. I don't like this hotel .... it is not very modern.

a) so b) because c) and d) but

10. Ahmed .... to paint his house in October.

a) is going b) was going c) go d) going

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. You mustn't .... (played) games on roads.
2. The cushions are .... (make) of cotton.
3. If it rains, we .... (got) water.
4. You want to be a nurse, ... (do) you?

E Writing

6

6 Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words on a day in your life. Your name is Maher and your email address is maher@gmail.com. Your friend's name is Hossam and his email address is hossam@hotmail.com.

To : ....

From : ....

Subject : ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....




1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. My birthday was last ....
   a) Saturday b) Friday c) Monday d) Sunday
2. On my birthday, I went to the ....
   a) Pyramids b) museum c) funfair d) zoo
3. In the evening, my brother took us to his favourite ....
   a) restaurant b) library c) stadium d) park
4. We ate fish with ....
   a) bread b) pasta c) pizza d) rice




2 Complete the following dialogue:

Naglaa is asking Samar about her future job.

Naglaa : Which job would you like to do?
Samar : (1).. .
Naglaa : A teacher! Why do you like this job?
Samar : (2).. .
Naglaa : Are there any teachers in your family?
Samar : (3).. . My father is a teacher of English.
Naglaa : (4)..?
Samar : My mother is a nurse.
Naglaa : (5)..?
Samar : Yes, she likes her job very much.




3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Sara is thirteen years old. She is in prep one. She lives in Giza. Her teachers love her because she is clever and does her homework. Her friends love her because she helps them. Her favourite hobby is reading so she often goes to the school library

to borrow books. She likes reading books about science. She hopes to be a doctor like her father. Her mum is a teacher of English. Her brother, Hany, is three years **older** than her. When Sara finishes her homework, she helps her mum at home.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage? ....
2. What does Sara want to be when she grows up? ....
3. Do you want to be like Sara? Why? Why not? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to ....
   a) Sara's parents b) Sara's teachers c) Sara's brother d) Sara's friends
5. Hany is .... years old.
   a) ten b) thirteen c) sixteen d) twenty
6. The opposite of the word "**older**" is ....
   a) smaller b) thinner c) larger d) younger

D Vocabulary and Structure

5

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There are fantastic paintings at the ....
   a) aquarium b) sports centre c) exhibition d) funfair
2. I'm .... of being Egyptian.
   a) useful b) careless c) ashamed d) proud
3. My uncle is a famous .... He has many projects in different cities.
   a) businessman b) architect c) pilot d) scientist
4. My uncle lives .... the beach. He can go swimming every day.
   a) in b) by c) with d) of
5. A/An .... happens when the ground suddenly moves.
   a) temperature b) volcano c) earthquake d) flood
6. Winning the final match was a great .... for our team.
   a) transport b) challenge c) check d) chip
7. Do you think this glass bottle will .... in the water?
   a) swim b) run c) smell d) sink
8. This is the .... day in my life.
   a) happy b) happier c) happiest d) hobby

9. Hany drinks milk, ... he?

a) is b) isn't c) does d) doesn't

10. If Ali goes to bed early, he .... up early.

a) get b) would get c) got d) gets

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. .... (What) often do you go to school?
2. He was poor .... (and) he was happy.
3. Here are all the toys, Salma. Enjoy .... (himself)!
4. There isn't .... (some) water in the bottle.

E Writing

6

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"The Tahya Masr Bridge"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....





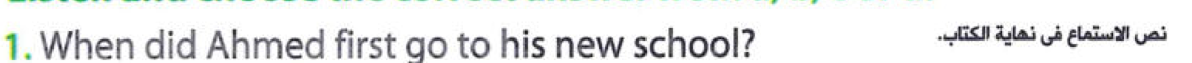
A Listening

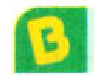


1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. When did Ahmed first go to his new school?
   a) Sunday. b) Monday. c) Tuesday. d) Thursday.
2. Ahmed was quite ....
   a) nervous b) pleased c) happy d) sad
3. Who did Ahmed sit by?
   a) Sameh. b) Sara. c) Seif. d) Sayed.
4. What meal did Ahmed have with Seif?
   a) Breakfast. b) Dinner. c) Lunch. d) Snack.





B Language Functions



2 Complete the following dialogue:

Logy and Sama are talking about what Sama did yesterday.

Logy : Hi, Sama. How are you?
Sama : Hi, Logy. (1).. .
Logy : (2)..?
Sama : I went to the funfair.
Logy : (3)..?
Sama : I rode on the big wheel.
Logy : Were you frightened of it?
Sama : (4).. .
Logy : I know you are brave.
Sama : (5).. .



C Reading Comprehension



3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I love using technology. My family members love using technology, too. My brother Ali is playing chess **online**. He is winning at the moment. I am doing my

computer studies homework. After finishing my homework, I will play video games. It is my favourite hobby. Usually, I play them on my laptop. My mother is looking at a website for information about 3D printers. My sisters, Hala and Sama are taking selfies. They are sending one of their photos to my grandmother on her mobile phone. My dad is sending an e-mail to my uncle who lives in England.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to the passage. ....
2. Why is the writer's mother looking at a website? ....
3. What do you think about technology? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to ....
   a) family members b) Ali and his mother
   c) Hala and Sama d) Ali's parents
5. The writer's uncle lives in ....
   a) Egypt b) England c) Canada d) France
6. The opposite of the word "**online**" is ....
   a) offline b) line c) inline d) internet

D Vocabulary and Structure

5

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Which is ...., the Great Pyramid or the Red Pyramid?
   a) taller b) tall c) tallest d) the tallest
2. The .... was full of people watching the final match.
   a) school b) stadium c) funfair d) theatre
3. I have lost my mobile. It is a .... day.
   a) funny b) nice c) terrible d) useful
4. Retaj taught .... to speak French.
   a) herself b) himself c) myself d) themselves
5. Some houses fell to the ground after the ....
   a) earthquake b) cloud c) fog d) igloo

6. The person who studies the ocean, the plants and animals in it is called a/an ....

a) doctor
b) writer
c) engineer
d) marine biologist

7. We .... going to go diving.

a) am
b) do
c) are
d) is

8. The .... is one of the most dangerous sea animals.

a) jellyfish
b) turtle
c) shark
d) octopus

9. How .... is Abraj Al-Bait Clock Tower? - It's about 601 m.

a) deep
b) high
c) old
d) many

10. Cotton, glass, wood and wool are ....

a) subjects
b) colours
c) materials
d) sports

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. .... (Do) you go to the park yesterday?
2. If I .... (felt) ill, I always go to a doctor.
3. What .... (do) an engineer do?
4. It is .... (making) of wood.

E Writing

6

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Sea animals"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....





1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. Mum doesn't like ....
   a) watching sports b) playing chess c) eating pizza d) driving cars
2. Dad likes ....
   a) English b) science c) history d) France
3. Nadia is .... years old.
   a) 15 b) 50 c) 5 d) 51
4. Dad is always ....
   a) sad b) happy c) angry d) busy



B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Omar and Ali are talking about famous places.

Omar : Can I ask you some questions ?
Ali : (1).. .
Omar : (2)..?
Ali : The Great Pyramid is 146 m high.
Omar : (3)..?
Ali : About 37,500,000 people live in Tokyo.
Omar : What is the longest river in the world?
Ali : (4).. .
Omar : Good! I think you are very clever.
Ali : (5).. .





3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Every summer, Nada goes to the countryside for a month. She stays at her uncle's farm and helps him. She works very **hard** but she likes it. She loves to spend time with her cousins. Every morning, she has breakfast at 6:30. After breakfast, she helps her uncle's wife with the housework. Nada and her cousins always spend a great

time together. They climb trees and pick fruits and flowers. They are always very tired at the end of the day. Nada and her cousins always watch TV before they go to bed.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to this passage. ....
2. Why do you think Nada likes to go to her uncle's farm? ....
3. What do Nada and her cousins do before they go to bed? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Nada stays at her uncle's farm for .... days.

   a) 15 b) 7 c) 60 d) 30

5. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to ....

   a) Nada and her father b) Nada and her cousins
   c) Nada and her friends d) Nada and her classmates

6. The opposite of the word "**hard**" is ....

   a) easy b) carefully c) carelessly d) locally

D Vocabulary and Structure

5

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A .... is a hole inside the mountain.

   a) road b) valley c) hill d) cave

2. A .... is all the bones inside an animal or a person.

   a) skeleton b) head c) skin d) face

3. Many people enjoy the beautiful .... of the Nile.

   a) opinion b) view c) show d) cave

4. Some people like to go .... in the mountains.

   a) sailing b) diving c) trekking d) zip lining

5. The world's .... suspension bridge opened in Cairo.

   a) wide b) wider c) widest d) the widest

6. If I feel hungry, I always .... healthy snacks.

   a) will eat b) eats c) ate d) eat

7. An architect is a person who .... buildings.

a) designs b) flies c) writes d) builds

8. My brother is good at .... He likes English, French and Spanish.

a) subjects b) projects c) objects d) languages

9. A .... is an area of land in which animals and plants are protected.

a) nature reserve b) rubbish bin c) ground d) soil

10. Did you take the photo by ...., Marwa?

a) itself b) himself c) herself d) yourself

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. I went to Alex two days .... (past).
2. Will there .... (are) rockets to travel into space in the future?
3. Travelling by car is .... (good) than travelling by bus.
4. Windows are made .... (from) glass.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on: 6

"Your plans for the next holiday"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....





A Listening

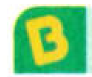


1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

4

1. What kind of music does Nabil like?
   a) Jazz. b) Pop. c) Classical. d) Rock.
2. Which musical instrument does he play?
   a) The guitar. b) The piano. c) The drum. d) The trumpet.
3. Nabil started to play music at the age of ....
   a) ten b) five c) seven d) eleven
4. Who helped Nabil to be good at music?
   a) His mother. b) His uncle. c) His brother. d) His father.





B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Mariam and Amira are talking about how to spend their weekend.

Mariam : Why don't we go swimming at the weekend?

Amira : (1).. .

Mariam : (2)..?

Amira : Yes, I am very good at it.

Mariam : When did you start swimming?

Amira : (3).. .

Mariam : When will we meet to go to the club?

Amira : (4).. .

Mariam : (5)..?

Amira : We can go by bus.





C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Egypt is one of the most wonderful countries in the world. There are many places in Cairo and Giza which tourists can visit when they come to Egypt. They can visit the Pyramids which were built thousands of years ago. Tourists also can

visit the Grand Egyptian Museum. It was opened in 2019. It has many **valuable** objects and statues. In Cairo, there is the Tahya Masr Bridge which is the widest suspension bridge. It is about 67 metres wide and 540 metres long. People enjoy walking across it and seeing the river under their feet. The Cairo Tower is a famous place in Egypt. It is one of the tallest buildings. People visit it to enjoy watching the city from a high place.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to the passage. ....
2. Why do you think people visit the Cairo Tower? ....
3. When were the Pyramids in Giza built? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to ....
   a) the Cairo Tower b) the Pyramids
   c) the bridge d) Giza
5. The Tahya Masr Bridge is .... metres long.
   a) 67 b) 540 c) 670 d) 230
6. "**Valuable**" means ....
   a) ugly b) low c) important d) difficult

D Vocabulary and Structure

5

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We learn about the Earth and the moon at the ....
   a) planetarium b) football stadium
   c) funfair d) bowling alley
2. There are many people in the shop. It is very ....
   a) quiet b) short c) deep d) crowded
3. Scientists try to find new .... for dangerous illnesses.
   a) coals b) cores c) cures d) cares
4. We use a/an .... to make bread and food.
   a) tap b) roof c) oven d) bricks
5. Yesterday, the ground suddenly moved because there was a/an ....
   a) earthquake b) storm c) rain d) sun
6. The Earth is one of the eight .... that go around the sun.
   a) plans b) planets c) plants d) planes

7. My school bag is made of ....

a) wood b) glass c) stone d) leather

8. Are you .... to visit Aswan?

a) go b) goes c) going d) went

9. He .... to America if he earns a lot of money.

a) fly b) flying c) will fly d) flies

10. There .... any trains in ancient Egypt.

a) won't be b) wasn't c) don't d) weren't

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. The train is .... (fast) than the bus.
2. We .... (must) throw away plastic bags in rivers.
3. Has he got a mobile? - Yes, he .... (did).
4. I made .... (herself) a cup of tea.

E Writing

6

6 Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words on the sport you like to do. Your name is Suzy and your email address is suzy@student.com. Your friend's name is Mariam and her email address is mariam@student.com.

To : ....

From : ....

Subject : ....

....

....

....

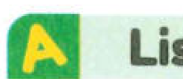
....

....

....

....





A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

4

1. Who likes jazz music?
   a) Manar. b) Her mother. c) Her sister. d) a and c.
2. What type of music does her father like?
   a) Opera. b) Traditional. c) Jazz. d) Rock.
3. Who likes classical music?
   a) Her brother. b) Her mother. c) a and b. d) Not a or b.
4. Who likes music?
   a) Manar. b) Father. c) Mother. d) All the family.



B Language Functions



2 Complete the following dialogue:

Amged is asking Ahmed about his dream job.

Amged : What would you like to be in the future?

Ahmed : (1).. .

Amged : (2)..?

Ahmed : Because he looks after people's teeth.

Amged : What will you do to be a dentist?

Ahmed : (3).. .

Amged : (4)..?

Ahmed : Yes, I will help poor people.

Amged : I wish you best of luck.

Ahmed : (5).. .

C Reading Comprehension



3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I usually go to the park on Fridays. Last week, I went there with my friends Kareem and Ayman. They are very **kind**. While we were waiting for the bus, there was an old lady. When the bus arrived, Ayman carried the lady's bags and Kareem held her arm to help her to get on the bus. On the bus, I hurried to give her a seat.

At the next stop, she wanted to get off and we helped her. To my surprise, I found that Kareem's leg hurt, but he was happy to help the old woman.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to this passage. ....
2. What does Ayman do to help the old lady? ....
3. If you were the old lady, what would you do?..

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "there" refers to ....
   a) the park b) the bus stop c) the zoo d) the cinema
5. I was surprised about Kareem because ...., but he helped the old woman.
   a) he was kind b) he hurried
   c) his leg was hurt d) he carried the bags
6. The word "**kind**" is similar in meaning to ....
   a) friendly b) unkind c) unfriendly d) careless

D Vocabulary and Structure

5

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... is a water sport.
   a) Trekking b) Rock climbing c) Diving d) Zip lining
2. There are many trees in the ....
   a) cave b) jungle c) desert d) sea
3. When I wash my face, I use my own .... to dry it.
   a) tap b) map c) rope d) towel
4. It's .... to respect older people.
   a) difficult b) important c) ugly d) unimportant
5. She uses a/an .... after the accident. She can't walk.
   a) armchair b) bike c) sofa d) wheelchair
6. Maher and Karim can .... windsurfing or diving.
   a) make b) play c) do d) go
7. It wasn't always very hot .... the island.
   a) of b) with c) for d) on

8. Our son .... three years old next January.

a) will b) will be c) is d) was

9. Mountain climbing is .... dangerous sport.

a) more b) most c) the most d) the more

10. You .... play games on the road.

a) must b) mustn't c) would d) should

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. Are you going to .... (trying) rock climbing?
2. That's the girl .... (which) works in a restaurant.
3. You .... (mustn't) listen to other students' ideas.
4. How .... (did) your last birthday?

E Writing

6

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A trip with my friends"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....





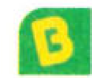
Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



4

1. Jack is from ....
   a) Egypt b) the UK c) France d) the USA
2. Jack likes ....
   a) music b) adventure c) books d) history
3. In Sinai, Jack went ....
   a) trekking b) diving c) kayaking d) sailing
4. Jack travels ....
   a) alone b) with family c) with friends d) with guides



Language Functions



2 Complete the following dialogue:

Omar is asking Ahmed about the sport he likes.

Omar : Do you like sports, Ahmed?
Ahmed : (1).. .
Omar : What sport do you like?
Ahmed : (2).. .
Omar : When did you last go to a football stadium?
Ahmed : (3).. .
Omar : (4)..?
Ahmed : The match was amazing.
Omar : (5)..?
Ahmed : Yes, I enjoyed my time a lot.





3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

One day, a hungry fox went to a farmhouse. There was a dog outside it. The dog was tied with a rope to a tree. A woman came out of the farmhouse and put a plate of meat on the ground. She put it near the dog to **reach** it. The dog wasn't

hungry so it didn't eat the meat. The fox wanted the meat, but it was afraid of the dog. The fox began to walk slowly around the tree and the dog walked after it. The rope was also going around the tree and it became shorter. At last, the rope was too short and the dog couldn't reach the plate. The fox ate the meat and ran away.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Where was the dog?..
2. What did the fox want?..
3. Why do you think the fox was afraid of the dog?...

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the ....

a) tree b) fox c) rope d) plate

5. The word "**reach**" means ....

a) get b) break c) throw d) clean

6. Which of the following is the best title for the passage? ....

a) A hungry dog b) A big farmhouse
c) A clever fox d) Delicious meat

D Vocabulary and Structure

5

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We saw a big whale at the ....

a) planetarium b) aquarium c) bowling alley d) museum

2. I'm not .... try rock climbing. It's dangerous.

a) going b) go c) going to d) go to

3. The streets of Cairo have too many cars. They are ....

a) low b) noisy c) tall d) empty

4. We can get electricity from ....

a) electric cars b) solar panels c) robots d) drones

5. He started his journey around the world two days ....

a) ago b) now c) tomorrow d) today

6. You .... talk on the phone loudly. People will hear what you are saying.

a) shouldn't b) aren't c) hasn't d) isn't

7. She arrived home, but she didn't find her family. She was ....

a) alone b) dead c) terrible d) amazing

8. The temple walls are made of ....

a) leather b) wood c) wool d) stone

9. When it's windy, it's a good time to go ....

a) windsurfing b) diving c) swimming d) trekking

10. Alexandria is an Egyptian ....

a) tower b) library c) tunnel d) city

5 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:** 2

1. Ali got the full mark in the exam, didn't .... (Ali)?
2. Mount Catherine is the .... (most high) mountain in Egypt.
3. Salma hurt .... (myself) in the kitchen.
4. You .... (must) make noise in class.

E Writing

6

6 **Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words on a famous place you visited. Your name is Kady and your email address is kady@yahoo.com. Your friend's name is Anas and his email address is anas@hotmail.com.**

To : ....

From : ....

Subject : ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

24



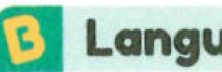
A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1. My .... was last Monday.
   a) holiday b) wedding c) birthday d) weekend
2. Last Monday, we went to the ....
   a) zoo b) museum c) Pyramids d) park
3. I went there with my ....
   a) father b) uncle c) brother d) mum and sister
4. We saw different .... there.
   a) statues b) animals c) planes d) cars



B Language Functions



2.5

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed and Ali are talking about Ali's birthday party.

Ahmed : How was your birthday?

Ali : (1).. .

Ahmed : Did you have a party?

Ali : (2).. .

Ahmed : (3)..?

Ali : The party started at seven.

Ahmed : (4)..?

Ali : I felt really happy because most of my friends came to the party.

Ahmed : Did our friend Omar come to the party?

Ali : (5).. .

C Reading Comprehension



4.5

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Cairo is a big city. It is the capital of Egypt. About twenty million people live here. There are a lot of gardens where families can go and spend nice time. There are also a lot of restaurants where you can have delicious meals and different dishes.

It is always visited by tourists from all over the world. They enjoy visiting **ancient** places. They visit the Egyptian Museum to see the ancient treasures and statues. They also visit the Cairo Tower where they can have a look on the whole city.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage? ....
2. Why do you think Cairo is a crowded city? ....
3. Where can tourists have a look on the city of Cairo? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. About .... million people live in Cairo.

   a) twenty b) thirty c) forty d) fifty

5. The opposite of the word "**ancient**" is ....

   a) modern b) old
   c) traditional d) classical

6. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to ....

   a) places b) tourists c) gardens d) meals

D Vocabulary and Structure

5

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We wear .... to protect our hands.

   a) helmets b) gloves c) trousers d) jackets

2. We need to buy some water. This bottle is ....

   a) crowded b) fast c) empty d) low

3. A .... is a person who shows a place to tourists.

   a) farmer b) guide c) doctor d) student

4. The teacher was angry because all the students were very ....

   a) happy b) safe c) quiet d) noisy

5. The Tahya Masr .... goes over the Nile in Cairo.

   a) City b) Tower c) Bridge d) Tunnel

6. A businesswoman is the person who works in a/an ....

   a) clinic b) office c) laboratory d) class

7. The best T-shirts in the world are made of Egyptian ....

   a) metal b) cotton c) glass d) wood

8. **A:** .... you go to the park yesterday? **B:** Yes, I did.

a) Are b) Did c) Have d) Does

9. His ship sank .... there was a terrible storm.

a) so b) although c) to d) because

10. We enjoyed .... when we went sailing.

a) yourself b) yourselves c) ourselves d) themselves

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. An elephant is .... (big) than a camel.
2. **A:** What time is it? **B:** It .... (was) quarter past ten.
3. I .... (go) to the museum four days ago.
4. Technology will make our lives more interesting, won't .... (she)?

E Writing

6

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"How your weekend was"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....





A Listening



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1. They went to the museum by ....
   a) car b) train c) plane d) bus
2. Basant is .... years old.
   a) ten b) twenty c) twelve d) twenty-two
3. They saw .... in the museum.
   a) stairs b) statues c) tips d) studies
4. In the evening, they went to the ....
   a) restaurant b) funfair c) museum d) aquarium

B Language Functions

2.5

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Maha and Dalia are talking about Dalia's last weekend.

Maha : Did you enjoy your last weekend?
Dalia : (1).. .
Maha : Where did you spend it?
Dalia : (2).. .
Maha : (3)..?
Dalia : I went to the club with my friends.
Maha : What did you enjoy doing there?
Dalia : (4).. .
Maha : (5)..?
Dalia : Yes, there is a swimming pool.

C Reading Comprehension



3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The world's widest suspension bridge is the Tahya Masr Bridge. It opened in Cairo in May 2019. It is 67.36 m wide and 540 m long. More than 4,000 people helped to build it. They started building it in 2016. They finished it in 32 months.

The bridge crosses the Nile's Warraq Island. More than 100,000 people live on the island. Many people enjoy walking across the bridge. It has a glass floor, so you can see the river under your feet. The **best** time to cross the bridge is at sunset, for a beautiful view of the city.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to this passage. ....
2. How many people live on Warraq Island? ....
3. Do you think the bridge is useful? Why? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....
   a) Warraq Island b) the Tahya Masr Bridge
   c) a glass floor d) city
5. The word "**best**" is opposite of ....
   a) worst b) good c) happy d) angry
6. The bridge is 67.36 m ....
   a) high b) tall c) deep d) wide

D Vocabulary and Structure

5

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This .... serves fish with rice.
   a) restaurant b) cinema c) station d) stadium
2. **A:** Have you got a new jacket? **B:** No, I ....
   a) have b) hasn't c) didn't d) haven't
3. You .... take water when you go to the desert.
   a) must b) mustn't c) have d) has
4. A/An .... is something on your phone that helps you use maps, book tickets, etc.
   a) file b) click c) icon d) app
5. Whales are .... animals in the world.
   a) big b) biggest c) bigger d) the biggest
6. We can't sail because there is no ....
   a) wind b) fog c) rain d) sun

7. Sara has a jacket to keep .... warm.

a) herself   b) itself   c) yourself   d) myself

8. Car .... are made of metal.

a) windows   b) doors   c) seats   d) bags

9. When something ...., it goes down into water.

a) sinks   b) floats   c) flies   d) thanks

10. There is .... at the top of the mountain. Look! It's white.

a) air   b) sun   c) storm   d) snow

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. Trains are .... (fast) than cars.
2. What year .... (is) it four years ago?
3. He is going to .... (sleeping) in a tent.
4. If I .... (got) up late, I won't catch the bus.

E Writing

6

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A wonderful holiday"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

17 Aswan Governorate (Aswan Educational Zone)

24



A Listening

4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1. It was Ali's ....
   a) wedding b) birthday c) holiday d) school
2. The weekend was ....
   a) fantastic b) boring c) tiring d) terrible
3. They visited a/an .... before they visited the funfair.
   a) cinema b) theatre c) aquarium d) museum
4. They came home in the ....
   a) morning b) evening c) afternoon d) night

B Language Functions



2 Complete the following dialogue:

Adel and Mohsen are talking about an important achievement.

Adel : What do you think of the Tahya Masr Bridge?

Mohsen : (1).. .

Adel : (2)..?

Mohsen : Yes, it's very long.

Adel : (3)..?

Mohsen : They started building it in 2016.

Adel : Do people walk across it?

Mohsen : (4).. .

Adel : Let's go and see it.

Mohsen : (5).. .



C Reading Comprehension



3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The ancient Egyptians were very **powerful**. They built tombs to be buried in. They thought that the king was a god. They didn't wear many clothes. Most men wore a kind of a short skirt, but women used to wear long dresses.

Women didn't go out to work. They stayed at home. Most men were farmers. Their children did the same jobs as their parents. Girls stayed at home with their mothers. They learned to look after their families. Boys worked with their fathers. They only went to school if they wanted to learn to do new jobs. Children used to run, jump and play games. Their toys were made of wood.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the best title for this passage? ....
2. Why did the girls stay at home? ....
3. Do you like life in Ancient Egypt? Why/ Why not? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The ancient Egyptians thought that their king was a ....

   a) father b) god c) prince d) leader

5. The underlined word "They" refers to ....

   a) sons b) children c) men d) women

6. The word "**powerful**" means ....

   a) weak b) strong c) bad d) lazy

D Vocabulary and Structure



4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Let's go on the big wheel at the .... this weekend.

   a) aquarium b) museum c) planetarium d) funfair

2. A/An .... travels on ships or boats for a job.

   a) dentist b) musician c) sailor d) player

3. The Cairo .... is the tallest building in Egypt.

   a) Tower b) city c) tunnel d) bridge

4. Egypt is a great ....

   a) star b) country c) city d) building

5. The Egyptian Museum has a big ....

   a) pyramid b) picnic c) entrance d) forest

6. This jumper is made of ....; it keeps me warm.

   a) plastic b) metal c) wood d) wool

7. My father wrote a/an .... about sports in Al Ahram newspaper.

   a) article b) office c) book d) photograph

8. What did you do .... weekend?

a) last b) ago c) next d) now

9. Mount Everest is .... than Mount Kilimanjaro.

a) highest b) high c) as high d) higher

10. .... Reem going to try rock climbing?

a) Are b) Is c) Am d) Will

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: 2

1. The man .... (whom) won the prize, is my neighbour.
2. Fatma is .... (more beautiful) girl in our group.
3. My brother .... (lives) in London in 2015.
4. Did you draw this picture .... (myself)?

E Writing

6

6 Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words on the most famous place you know. Your name is Khaled and your email address is khaled@gmail.com. Your friend's name is Marwan and his email address is marwan@hotmail.com.

To : ....

From : ....

Subject : ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

18 Port Said Governorate (Port Said Educational Directorate)



Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1. Julia is a/an .... girl.
   a) rude   b) bad   c) noisy   d) kind
2. Julia is a .... -year- old girl.
   a) 14   b) 10   c) 15   d) 12
3. She wears her .... uniform.
   a) army   b) school   c) university   d) home
4. Julia's jacket is ....
   a) grey   b) green   c) red   d) blue

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Tom and Sam are talking about what they have bought lately.

Tom : Good morning, Sam.
Sam : Good morning, Tom.
Tom : Did you go shopping yesterday?
Sam : (1).. .
   a) Yes, I go   b) Yes, I did   c) No, I did not   d) Yes, I do
Tom : (2)..?
   a) Where did you buy it   b) When did you buy it
   c) What did you buy   d) How did you buy
Sam : I bought a new bag.
Tom : (3)..?
   a) What colour is it   b) How much does it cost
   c) Who bought it   d) What is it made of
Sam : It is made of leather.
Tom : Wow! Is it good leather?
Sam : (4).. .
   a) No, it does not   b) Yes, it is   c) No, it has not   d) Yes, it has
Tom : Great! How much did it cost?
Sam : (5).. .
   a) 200 pounds   b) 200 kilometers   c) 200 kilograms   d) 200 meters

C Vocabulary and Structure

3 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. She bought .... a new jacket.
   a) herself b) myself c) yourself d) himself
2. A "............................" is a long trip from one place to another.
   a) garden b) journey c) picnic d) park
3. You ...., swim here! It is dangerous!
   a) should b) haven't c) mustn't d) may
4. My head is not comfortable! Will you please bring me some ....?
   a) curtains b) cushions c) blankets d) glasses
5. We want to swim in the river, but how .... is it?
   a) high b) tall c) deep d) low
6. **A:** .... you go to the park? **B:** Yes, I did.
   a) Have b) Did c) Do d) Were
7. Jazz is a type of ....
   a) music b) subject c) material d) metal
8. The archaeologists found the .... of some dinosaurs.
   a) fishermen b) skeletons c) museum d) opera
9. Most houses are built from ....
   a) rubber b) wool c) bricks d) plastic
10. .... and seeds are good for your health.
   a) Notebooks b) Glasses c) Pots d) Nuts

4 **Choose the correct form of the underlined word(s) from a, b, c or d:**

11. The journey is <u>gone</u> to take 43 days .
   a) go b) going c) went d) goes
12. Most animals run away quickly <u>what</u> they face danger.
   a) who b) where c) when d) why
13. Do you think this glass bottle will <u>floats</u>?
   a) floating b) float c) floated d) to float
14. The table is <u>make</u> of wood.
   a) to make b) made c) making d) makes



D Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Have you heard about the seven wonders of the **ancient** world? They were the most fantastic and amazing buildings in the world. Time and earthquakes destroyed most of these ancient wonders. Two of these wonders were in Egypt. One of them was the Lighthouse of Alexandria which was the tallest building ever made for many centuries. It was built to help sailors on the boats sail safely away from rocks. The Great Pyramid of Giza is the only one that remains from all the ancient seven wonders. Every year, millions of tourists come to see the Pyramids of Egypt. For many people, the Great Pyramid of Giza is also a wonder of the modern world.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to the ....
   a) earthquakes b) wonders c) boats d) sailors
2. There were .... wonders for the ancient world.
   a) three b) one c) two d) seven
3. The opposite of the word "**ancient**" is ".............................. ".
   a) modern b) old c) amazing d) safe

B) Answer the following questions:

4. How were the ancient wonders destroyed?..............................
5. Why was the Lighthouse of Alexandria built?..............................
6. Do you think that the Great Pyramid of Giza is a wonder of the modern world? Why? / Why not? ....

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A sport you like to do"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Al-Adwaa Monthly Tests & Final Exams Listening Texts

1. Al-Adwaa Monthly Tests

Units 7 & 8 Al-Adwaa February Test

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Last month, I wanted to go to the funfair, but my brother wanted the restaurant. I love my brother, so we went to the restaurant for his birthday.

Units 9 & 10 Al-Adwaa March Test

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

We're going on a trip to the zoo next weekend. It will be a great trip and we will enjoy it. We are going by bus. It'll be a bright day.

Units 11 & 12 Al-Adwaa April Test

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Plastic stays in the environment for a long time. We can recycle some plastic, but most of it goes into the ocean. Plastic is poisonous when animals eat it.

End of Term Practice

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Woman : Hello. I'd like to buy a new phone.
Assistant : Certainly. Which phone would you like?
Woman : I like this one. It's small enough to go in my bag, too. I hope it's not too expensive!
Assistant : No, it is a good price. Excuse me, could you tell me what job you do?
Woman : Well, I'm a person who takes photographs for a newspaper.
Assistant : Ah, you're a photographer, aren't you?
Woman : That's right!

2. Final Exams

1. Cairo Governorate

(Dar El Salam Educational Directorate)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name's Anas. I live with my family. We have different hobbies. My father and I like sports. I like playing football, but my dad likes swimming. My mum loves cooking. My brother likes watching films on TV, but he doesn't like going to the cinema.

2. Cairo Governorate

(New Cairo Administration)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Robinson Crusoe is an adventure story. It's written by Daniel Defoe. Crusoe was a sailor. His ship sank because there was a really terrible storm. He lived alone on the island for a long time.

3. Giza Governorate

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name is Ziad. I have a lot of plans for the future. I want to be a doctor so I am visiting my uncle to get some advice. I also want to help poor people so I will work in a hospital for free.

4. Alexandria Governorate

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My uncle and aunt live in Canada. My uncle works as an engineer. He designs engines for planes. My aunt is a nurse. She works in a big hospital.

5. Qalubiya Governorate

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

In summer, my family and I go to Alexandria. We spend all the morning on the beach. I like swimming so when a wave comes, I always jump up. My brother likes playing with a ball.

6. Monofia Governorate

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

The Grand Egyptian Museum welcomed its first visitors in 2019. It is farther from the city centre than the old museum, but only two kilometres from the Pyramids at Giza. One of the most beautiful parts of the museum is the entrance, with its big plants and statues. The biggest is that of Ramses II, which is 12-metres high.

7. Gharbia Governorate

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

In ancient Egypt, there was a village called Deir el-Medina. There were 68 houses in this village. The walls of the houses were made of bricks and the doors were made of wood. The people painted their houses white, with red doors. There weren't any bedrooms in their houses, so they slept on the roof.

8. Damiette Governorate

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

The Tahya Masr Bridge is one of the greatest projects in Egypt. It opened in Cairo in May, 2019. More than 4,000 people helped to build it. It has a glass floor so people enjoy walking across the bridge.

9. Sharkia Governorate

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Last Friday was my birthday. My mum and brother decided to take me to the zoo. We saw a lot of animals and birds. In the evening, my brother took us to his favourite restaurant. We ate fish with rice. It was a nice day.

10. Suez Governorate

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Ahmed moved house last month, so he changed his school. He went to his new school last Monday. He was quite nervous. He sat by Seif and they had lunch together.

11. Fayoum Governorate

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name is Nadia. I am 15 years old. I live in Luxor with my mum and dad. My father is a teacher of English. He likes English very much and he's always busy working. I like playing chess, but my mum doesn't.

12. Beni Suef Governorate

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Nabil likes rock music. When he was seven, he started playing the drums. His uncle helped him to be good at music.

13. Minya Governorate

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name is Manar. Me and my family like music very much. I like jazz music. My dad likes rock music. My mum likes classical music.

14. Qena Governorate

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Jack is from the USA. He likes adventures. He likes travelling and always travels with his friends. When he came to Egypt, he went to Sinai. In Sinai, he went trekking.

15. Sohag Governorate

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Last Monday was my birthday. My mum and sister decided to take me to the museum. We saw a lot of statues there. I enjoyed my time there.

16. Luxor Governorate

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name is Basant. I am twenty two years old. Yesterday, I took my little brothers to the museums. We went by bus. They were amazed to see the big statues. In the evening, we went to the funfair.

17. Aswan Governorate

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Ali's birthday was last weekend. He and his friends went to the aquarium in the afternoon. After that, they went to the funfair. They came home late in the evening. It was a fantastic weekend.

18. Port Said Governorate

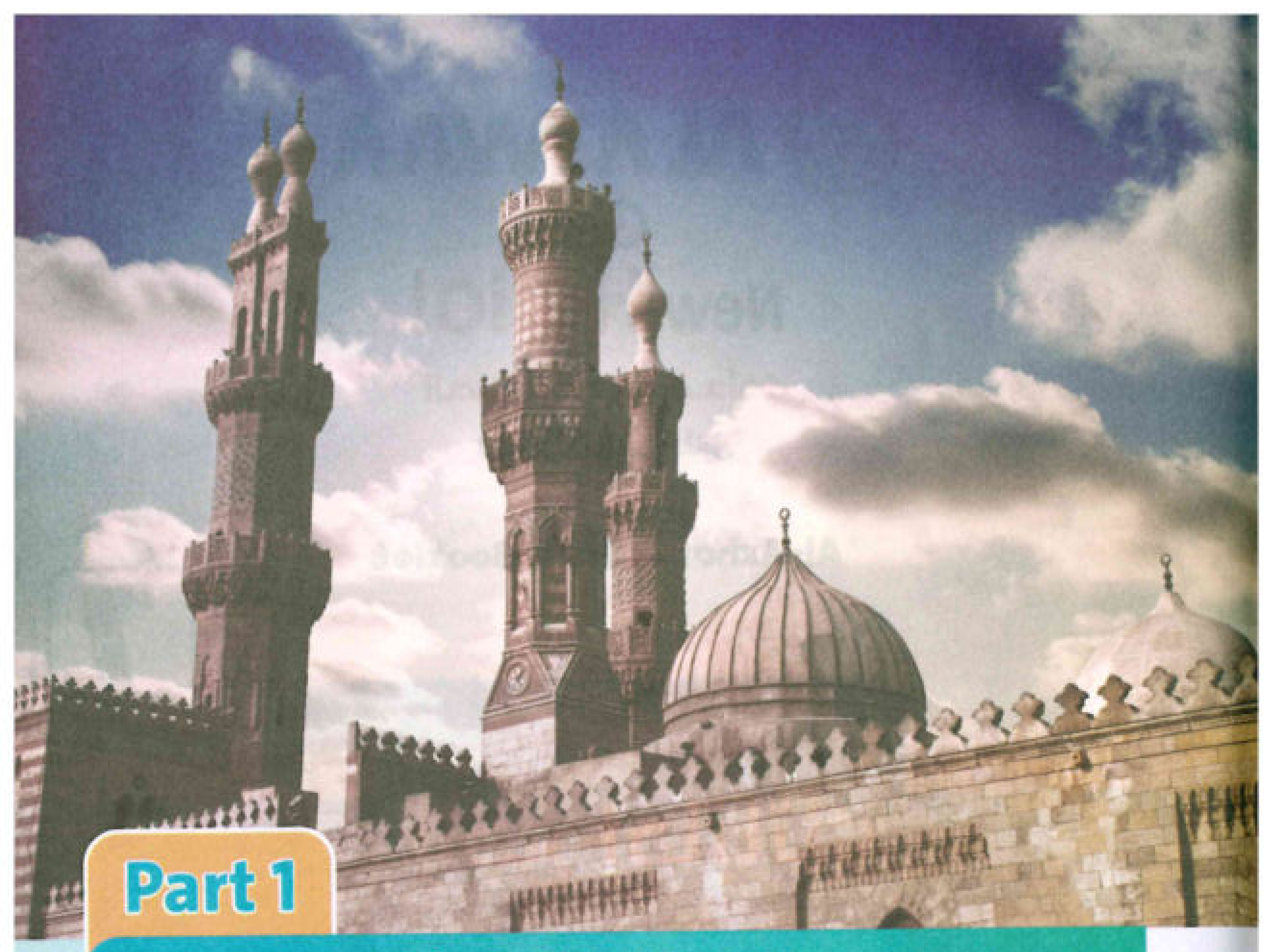
Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My best friend is called Julia. She is 15 years old. She is very kind. She goes to secondary school. Her uniform is a pink shirt, blue jacket and blue skirt.



رقم الإيداع: ٢٠٢٣/٢٠٤٧٩
ترخيص وزارة التربية والتعليم رقم:
١٣٧/٢/٩/١٠٣
طبعة: 2024
خدمة العملاء: 16766


st
PREP
SECOND TERM
AL ADWAA
Gem
2024
NEW
HELLO!
Al-Azhar & Skills Booklet



Part 1

Al-Azhar Corner

- Test Yourself on Each 2 Lessons
- Test on Each Unit
- February/March Models
- Final Exams

- اختبر نفسك على كل درسين
- اختبار خاص بكل وحدة
- نماذج فبراير ومارس الشهرية
- الاختبارات النهائية

Take a test

TEST YOURSELF Unit 7 Lessons (1&2)

11

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Waleed : Hi Batoul, I had a fantastic weekend!

Batoul : Really? (1)..?

Waleed : I went to the funfair.

Batoul : What did you do?

Waleed : (2).. .

Batoul : (3)..?

Waleed : Yes, I enjoyed there.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My school .... is a blue shirt and black trousers.
   a) canteen b) statue c) aquarium d) uniform
2. We went to the .... to buy some sandwiches.
   a) canteen b) stadium c) museum d) aquarium
3. We can see many statues in a ....
   a) funfair b) drama c) museum d) planetarium
4. Maria didn't .... anything from the market yesterday.
   a) buying b) bought c) buys d) buy
5. How .... your weekend?
   a) did b) do c) was d) were

3 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"A fantastic weekend"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The food was .... I didn't like it.
   a) terrible b) fantastic c) wonderful d) tired
2. My father likes old songs. He likes .... music best.
   a) pop b) jazz c) rock d) classical
3. We .... shopping to buy new clothes.
   a) kept b) made c) took d) went
4. What .... I do to get high marks in the exams?
   a) have b) was c) does d) should
5. What .... you learn at school yesterday?
   a) do b) are c) did d) will

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

One day, there was a kind farmer called Ahmed who lived in a small village. While Ahmed was working in his field, he found a bird with a broken leg on the ground. He carefully picked it up and took it to his home. Ahmed looked after the bird, feeding it until it became well.

As days passed, the bird became stronger and healthier. One day, when Ahmed was about to take the bird back into the wild, the bird looked at him. It thanked Ahmed for his kindness. Ahmed was happy and went home!

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?

   ....

2. How did Ahmed take care of the bird?

   ....

3. If you were Ahmed, would you do the same? Why/ Why not?

   ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. After the bird became strong, Ahmed took it to the ....
   a) wild b) village c) ground d) house
5. Ahmed was .... when he found the bird.
   a) reading b) sitting c) sleeping d) working

TEST YOURSELF





1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع فى نهاية التدريب

1. When did the writer get up?
   a) 6:30. b) 7:30. c) 8:30. d) 9:30.
2. What did he miss?
   a) The train. b) The break. c) The lesson. d) The school bus.

2 Reorder the following words to make correct sentences:

1. on Saturday - us - father - My - to - the park - drove.

   ....

2. went - yesterday - a - restaurant - We - pizza - to.

   ....

3. was - pizza - The - good - really.

   ....

4. baby - My - woke - 5 a.m. - brother - at - up - me.

   ....

3 Write an email of FIVE sentences to your friend Tamer to tell him about a nice place you visited. Your name is Ali. Your email address is ali@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is tamer@gmail.com.

From: **To:**

....

....

....

....

....

....

Listening text

Unit 7 Test Yourself on Lessons (5 & 6)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Yesterday was Sunday. I had a terrible day. I got up at seven thirty in the morning. I got dressed and packed my school bag. I missed the school bus because I was late.



Unit 7 Al Azhar Test

20

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
نص الاستماع فى نهاية الاختبار

1. They went to Siwa by ....
   a) taxi b) car c) train d) bus
2. Sally had her breakfast with her ....
   a) friends b) family c) teachers d) team

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Nada : Hello, Salma! What type of music do you like?
Salma : (1).. .
Nada : That's cool! Which musical instrument do you play?
Salma : I play the violin.
Nada : (2)..?
Salma : I started playing the violin when I was eight years old.
Nada : (3)..?
Salma : I practise it every day for at least 30 minutes.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Soliman has two children, ... eleven and nine.
   a) aged b) aging c) ages d) age
2. Could you tell me what happened .... your little sister?
   a) in b) at c) by d) to
3. I did not .... to Alexandria last week.
   a) travelled b) travel c) travels d) travelling
4. .... you like eating healthy food?
   a) Have b) Were c) Do d) Are
5. Can you .... the guitar?
   a) plays b) playing c) played d) play

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last weekend was very enjoyable for me. On Saturday, I woke up early and went for a walk in the park. The weather was sunny and I enjoyed seeing all the flowers and trees. After my walk, I met some friends and we went to a restaurant for lunch. We had some delicious food and spent a few hours talking.

On Sunday, I decided to stay home and relax. I spent the morning reading a book and then watched a film in the afternoon. I also did some cleaning around the house and prepared some meals for the week ahead.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What did the writer do on Saturday morning?
2. What did the writer do to prepare for the week ahead?
3. Do you think the writer had a good time in the park? Why/ Why not?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The weather on Saturday was ....
   a) horrible b) bad c) sunny d) terrible
5. The writer .... on Sunday.
   a) stayed home b) went out
   c) walked d) met some friends

5 Reorder the following words to make correct sentences

1. place - a - want - sleep - to - I - warm.
....
2. to - Last - funfair - weekend, - went - I - the.
....
3. some - statues - We - old - saw.
....
4. kind - of - What - you - stories - do - like?
....

6 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"A story you have read"

....
....
....
....

Listening text

Unit 7 Test
Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
My name's Sally. Yesterday was a fantastic day. First, I got up at 5 a.m. and had breakfast with my family. Then, we went to the bus station and took the bus to Siwa. We spent a nice day there.

1 **Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:**

Ali : Did you know that Mount Everest is the tallest mountain in the world?
Nadi : Really? (1)..?
Ali : It's about 29,032 feet high!
Nadi : What is the longest river in the world?
Ali : (2).. .
Nadi : That's amazing! (3)..?
Ali : The Qasr El Nil Bridge is about 1,243 feet long.

2 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. We always use a .... to learn the meaning of new words.
   a) dictionary b) bridge c) tower d) tunnel
2. **A:** How .... is the pool? **B:** It's three metres deep.
   a) deep b) wide c) long d) tall
3. My new phone is more expensive .... the old one.
   a) then b) that c) than d) this
4. Aswan is .... Alexandria.
   a) hot b) hottest c) hotter d) hotter than
5. Football is .... than basketball.
   a) more popular b) most popular
   c) much popular d) popular

3 **Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:**

"A historic place"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Can you .... the man who stole your wallet?
   a) pass b) do c) describe d) achieve
2. The hotel room has a beautiful .... of the sea.
   a) size b) view c) health d) price
3. Which language do you think is .... to learn?
   a) the easiest b) easiest
   c) easier than d) the easy
4. Of all the players, Mohamed Salah is the ....
   a) great b) greatest c) greater d) more great
5. The Great Pyramid is .... pyramid in the world.
   a) famous b) more famous c) least famous d) the most famous

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The world's widest suspension bridge is the Tahya Masr Bridge. It opened in Cairo in 2019. It is 67.36 m wide and 540 m long. More than 4000 people helped to build it. They started building it in 2016. They finished it in 32 months. The bridge crosses the Nile's Warraq Island. More than 100,000 people live on the island. Many people enjoy walking across the bridge. It has a glass floor, so you can see the river under your feet! The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset for a beautiful view of the city.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. How many people helped to build the bridge? ....
2. When did people start building the bridge? ....
3. Do you think the bridge is useful? Why? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to ....
   a) Warraq Island b) the Tahya Masr Bridge
   c) a glass d) the city
5. The bridge is 67.36 m ....
   a) wide b) high c) tall d) deep

TEST YOURSELF

Take a test



Unit 8 Lessons (5 & 6)

7

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع فى نهاية التدريب

1. The British Museum in London opened in ....
   a) 1597 b) 1579 c) 1759 d) 1795
2. About .... visitors go there every year.
   a) 6,000 b) 13,000 c) 13,000,000 d) 6,000,000

2 Reorder the following words to make correct sentences:

1. trees - That - a few - and - plants - has - park.
   ....
2. Egypt - We - in - a - holiday - wonderful - had.
   ....
3. the - Egypt - most - What's - place - in - interesting?
   ....
4. Cairo - the - Al Azhar Park - largest - in - park - is.
   ....

3 Write an email of FIVE sentences to your friend Salah to tell him about your visit to the Egyptian Museum. Your name is Nour. Your email address is nour@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is salah@gmail.com.

From: To:

....
....
....
....
....
....

Listening text

Unit 8 Test Yourself on Lessons (5 & 6)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

The British Museum in London opened in 1759 and now has more than 13 million objects. About six million visitors go there every year.

February Models



Model 1

10

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Ahmed : I had a fantastic weekend!
Said : Really, (1)..?
Ahmed : On Saturday, I went to the beach.
Said : (2)...?
Ahmed : I played in the sand. It was so much fun!
Said : How was the weather there?
Ahmed : (3).. .

2 Reorder the following words to make correct sentences:

1. did - have - your - When - maths - you - test?

....

2. is - a - good - This - school - really.

....

3. the - whales - We - aquarium - didn't - any - at - see.

....

4. city - busier - the - village - The - is - than.

....

3 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"A wonderful holiday"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Model 2

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I didn't like this film. I thought it was really ....
   a) exciting b) amazing c) bored d) terrible
2. He decided to .... bowling next week.
   a) have b) spend c) go d) see
3. The plane can fly .... 900 km/h.
   a) to b) by c) in d) at
4. I .... attend the last session because I was sick.
   a) didn't b) don't c) won't d) can't
5. This is the .... interesting book I know. I don't like it at all.
   a) most b) least c) more d) less

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Music is an important part of our lives and can be found in every country around the world. There are many different types of music. For example, classical music is often played by an orchestra and many instruments like the piano, violin, and cello. Pop music is popular with young people. Rock music is famous for its electric guitars and drums. There are many other types of music such as jazz.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What types of instruments are often used in classical music?
   ....
2. Which type of music is popular among young people?
   ....
3. What's your favourite type of music?
   ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The most famous musical instruments in rock music are the ....
   a) electric guitars and drums
   b) violin and piano
   c) electric guitars and cello
   d) cello and piano
5. There are .... types of music in the passage.
   a) three b) four c) five d) six

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Hytham : Do you like adventure sports, Wael?

Wael : (1).. .

Hytham : (2)..?

Wael : I really like rock climbing.

Hytham : Did you try any other adventure sports?

Wael : (3).. .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A .... is a person who shows a place to tourists.
   a) tourist b) guide c) pilot d) mechanic

2. I read a/an .... about adventure sports in the newspaper.
   a) article b) equipment c) skill d) turn

3. I'm going to sleep in a .... when I go trekking.
   a) hotel b) mountain c) class d) tent

4. We .... going to the beach next Sunday. It's cold nowadays.
   a) don't b) weren't c) aren't d) haven't

5. They are going .... a movie tonight.
   a) to watch b) to watching c) watch d) watching

3 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Your plans for the weekend"

....

....

....

....

....

....



10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The journey is going to .... 43 days.
   a) have b) do c) make d) take
2. I put on a hat and sunglasses to .... myself from the sun.
   a) protect b) dry c) support d) stop
3. We're really enjoying .... on holiday in South Africa.
   a) ourselves b) yourselves c) themselves d) yourself
4. Tamer fell over and hurt ....
   a) itself b) herself c) myself d) himself
5. The dog washed .... in the rain.
   a) herself b) itself c) himself d) yourself

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My favourite adventure sport is diving. I love seeing the underwater world and seeing all the beautiful sea life. It's an exciting experience to swim besides lots of fish and come face to face with turtles and dolphins. Diving also needs a lot of skills and training, which make it easy to practise. I always follow the rules and dive with a good swimmer. Diving is an awesome adventure sport that I highly recommend trying!

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the writer's favourite adventure sport?
   ....
2. What kind of sea life does the writer see while diving?
   ....
3. Would you like to try scuba diving? Why/Why not?
   ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The writer always .... while diving.
   a) eats well b) stops talking
   c) dives alone d) follows the rules
5. Diving requires a lot of ....
   a) skills b) training c) a and b d) Not a or b

TEST YOURSELF



Unit 9 Lessons (5 & 6)



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع فى نهاية التدريب

1. Who is going to visit Anas' family next week?

   a) His aunt. b) His uncle. c) His friend. d) His cousin.

2. Where will he meet him/her?

   a) At airport. b) At café. c) At station. d) At club.

2 Reorder the following words to make correct sentences:

1. I - sea - by - love - the - being.

   ....

2. to - again - looking - you - forward - meeting - I'm.

   ....

3. climbing - don't - we - Why - rock - go?

   ....

4. shall - do - this - What - afternoon - we?

   ....

3 Write an email of FIVE sentences to your friend Hady to tell him about your trip to the desert. Your name is Amr. Your email address is amr@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is hady@gmail.com.

From: To:

....

....

....

....

....

....

Listening text

Unit 9 Test Yourself on Lessons (5 & 6)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name's Anas. I live in Alexandria. I'm really excited that my aunt is going to come and stay with us next week. We will meet her at the station.

Unit 9 Al Azhar Test

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الاختبار

1. Where is Rania?
   a) In Aswan. b) In Dahab. c) In Siwa. d) In Cairo.
2. What are they going to do?
   a) Sail. b) Swim. c) Go trekking. d) Go diving.

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Yara : I feel bored! What shall we do this afternoon?
Kady : (1)..?
Yara : I'd rather do something more exciting.
Kady : OK. How about going windsurfing?
Yara : (2).. .
Kady : (3)..?
Yara : We will go tomorrow morning.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A .... is something you sleep in when you go camping.
   a) camel b) guide c) tent d) journey
2. The teacher was angry because the students .... a lot of mistakes.
   a) took b) made c) did d) helped
3. We're going to meet my granddad .... the station.
   a) of b) to c) with d) at
4. Is Ahmed going to .... this afternoon?
   a) snorkel b) snorkels c) snorkelling d) snorkelled
5. We enjoyed .... when we went sailing.
   a) himself b) ourselves c) themselves d) myself

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last summer, I went on a trekking adventure with my friends. We trekked through the mountains and enjoyed the beautiful scenery. We saw waterfalls, hills and lots of wildlife. We had to carry our bags with all the necessary equipment and food. It was a challenging experience, but also very exciting. We reached the top and had a wonderful view of the valley below. Trekking is a great way to stay active and explore nature.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What did the writer do last summer?..
2. What kind of scenery did they see during their adventure?
   ....
3. Would you like to try trekking? Why/ Why not? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. They have to carry .... during the trekking adventure.
   a) bags b) equipment c) food d) all of these
5. Trekking is a great activity because we can learn new things about ....
   a) nature b) people c) equipment d) all of these

5 Reorder the following words to make correct sentences

1. not - do - scary - I'm - to - anything - going.
....
2. are - next - Where - you - weekend - going?
....
1. over - wet - fell - Tamer - and - got.
....
2. and - myself - I - to - protect - put on - sunglasses - a hat.
....

6 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"An adventure sport"

....
....
....
....

Listening text

Unit 9 Test

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Hello, I'm Rania. I'm in Dahab with my family. There's so much to do here! This afternoon, we're going to go trekking.

Take a test

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 10 Lessons (1& 2)

11

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Samira : Do you know what chairs are made of?

Samir : (1).. .

Samira : That's right! (2)..?

Samir : Some clothes are made of cotton.

Samira : What are our toys made of?

Samir : (3).. .

Samira : Oh, I see! So many things are made of different materials.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The train to Aswan has very comfortable ....

a) seats b) tickets c) chairs d) glasses

2. The girl has a .... around her neck.

a) cushion b) scarf c) wallet d) sock

3. There weren't .... books here.

a) much b) any c) some d) no

4. I read .... interesting book last Friday.

a) a b) an c) any d) some

5. .... your socks made of cotton?

a) Is b) Are c) Was d) Do

3 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Houses in ancient Egypt"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Scientists use .... to travel into space.
   a) plans b) drones c) buses d) rockets
2. My .... is to be a pilot when I grow up.
   a) drone b) dream c) robot d) guest
3. We had a party last week and we had lots of ....
   a) guides b) pilots c) guests d) parcels
4. People will .... flying cars in the future.
   a) to having b) having c) to have d) have
5. Suzan will .... to her husband's house next year.
   a) move b) moves c) moved d) moving

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Life in the future will be different. Houses will be a bit different to our houses today. We'll need more gardens in the future, but there won't be much space, so the gardens will be on the roofs. Ordinary cars won't be found. People will use electric cars in the future, so there'll be chargers for electric cars next to all houses. Ways to get electricity will be good for the environment. There'll be lots of solar panels and wind turbines. They'll produce the electricity. There will be robots to do all the housework. People will use drones to bring food and parcels to the house.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. How will people get electricity in the future? ....
2. What will drones do in the future? ....
3. Where will gardens be? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. There won't be .... cars in the future.
   a) drone b) driverless c) ordinary d) electric
5. .... will help at home.
   a) Drones b) Panels c) Parcels d) Robots

TEST YOURSELF

Take a test

Unit 10 Lessons (5 & 6)

7

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع فى نهاية التدريب

1. Mohamed Salah started playing football for ....
   a) Liverpool   b) Chelsea   c) Basel   d) El Mokawloon
2. Salah moved to Europe in ....
   a) 2011   b) 2012   c) 2015   d) 2020

2 Reorder the following words to make correct sentences:

1. are - important - in - life - There - my - events.
   ....
2. new - In - moved - 2018, - a - to - we - house.
   ....
3. was - in - Mohamed Salah - 1992 - born.
   ....
4. in - to - learned - ride - 2013 - a - I - bike.
   ....

3 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"A famous sports star"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Listening Text

Unit 10 Test Yourself on Lessons (5 & 6)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Mohamed Salah was born in Cairo in 1992. He started playing football for El Mokawloon in 2010. He then moved to Europe in 2012.

March Models on Units 9&10

Model 



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Munir : Do you know Mohamed Salah?
Saber : (1).. .
Munir : Where is he from?
Saber : He is from Egypt.
Munir : (2)..?
Saber : He was born in 1992.
Munir : (3)..?
Saber : He plays for Liverpool in England.

2 Reorder the following words to make correct sentences:

1. of - door - made - A - metal - is - car.

....

2. really - ourselves - enjoying - on - We're - holidays.

....

3. you - designing - moment - the - What - at - are?

....

4. solar - will - lots - be - panels - There - of.

....

3 Write an email of FIVE sentences to your friend Dalia to tell her about your future house. Your name is Haidy. Your email address is haidy@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is dalia@gmail.com.

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Model 2

10

1 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. We are going .... in the mountains.
   a) trekking b) diving c) skiing d) snorkelling
2. Put the bread and bake it in a hot .... for ten minutes.
   a) tap b) oven c) stone d) wool
3. A .... can fly, but it doesn't have a pilot.
   a) space b) plane c) drone d) car
4. .... going to study for your maths test?
   a) You have b) Have you c) You are d) Are you
5. He's so ill. He can't look after ....
   a) himself b) herself c) itself d) yourself

2 **Read the following, then answer the questions:**

In ancient Egypt, there was a village called Deir el-Medina. The people from that village worked in the Valley of the Kings. There were 68 houses. The walls of the houses were made of bricks, and the doors were made of wood. The people painted their houses white with red doors. The houses had a kitchen and a living room, but there were not any bedrooms. People usually slept on the roof because it was very hot at night. There was usually an oven for bread in the kitchen, but there weren't any taps. People got their water from the Nile, about two kilometres away.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title to this passage.
   ....
2. What do you think about life in that village?
   ....
3. What does the underlined word "there" refer to?
   ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Ovens are used to ....
   a) get water b) bake bread c) sleep d) buy bread
5. People in Deir el-Medina used to sleep ....
   a) in tents b) on roofs c) in bedrooms d) in kitchens

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Hadir : Ghada, we have a test tomorrow. What should we do?

Ghada: (1).. .

Hadir : You're right. But should we stay up late to study?

Ghada: (2).. . It's not healthy.

Hadir : (3)..?

Ghada: We should eat healthy food and sleep well.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We should .... our rubbish to help the planet.
   a) recycle b) sting c) bite d) save
2. A sea turtle has a hard .... to protect itself.
   a) shell b) ship c) shelf d) shore
3. Children .... stay up too late. They need enough sleep.
   a) shouldn't b) should c) will d) must
4. You .... take things that don't belong to you.
   a) must to b) mustn't to c) must d) mustn't
5. If I .... water the plants in my garden, they die.
   a) didn't b) don't c) won't d) weren't

3 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Sea animals"

....

....

....

....

....

....



TEST YOURSELF Unit 11 Lessons (3 & 4)

10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. How much money did you .... for the tickets?
   a) pay b) buy c) save d) dry
2. Some dogs .... a little boy as they ran after him.
   a) forgot b) stood c) frightened d) hid
3. You .... talk during a test.
   a) must b) mustn't c) have d) haven't
4. You .... say please and thank you when you ask for something.
   a) should to b) shouldn't to c) shouldn't d) should
5. If you put water in the freezer, it .... ice.
   a) become b) became c) becomes d) becoming

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Ras Mohammed nature reserve is famous for its birds and animals. Many people go diving in the coral reefs to see the beautiful fish and turtles. If you want to dive there, first you must pay around L.E.100. When you dive, you mustn't touch or give food to any of the fish. You must only use knives to cut fishing lines and you must never take any fish from the water. Finally, sharks also live here, so you must be careful! Sharks are very dangerous. It's really a good place to visit.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the text about?

   ....

2. How much money must you pay to dive?

   ....

3. What must you use knives for?

   ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. You mustn't .... any of the fish.
   a) touch b) feed c) see d) a & b
5. .... can kill you.
   a) Coral reefs b) Sharks c) Turtles d) Birds



TEST YOURSELF Unit 11 Lessons (5 & 6)

7

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع فى نهاية التدريب

1. When did they go to the beach?

a) Last season. b) Last year. c) Last weekend. d) Last month.

2. What did they see on the sand?

a) Chairs. b) Rubbish. c) Sails. d) Sharks.

2 Reorder the following words to make correct sentences:

1. than - fish - stronger - The - Santiago - was.

....

2. do - should - rubbish - we - with - What - the?

....

3. beach - We - clean - our - must.

....

4. respected - The other - Santiago - fishermen.

....

3 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"How to protect our beaches"

....

....

....

....

....

....

Listening text

Unit 11 Test Yourself on Lessons (5 & 6)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Last weekend, some of my friends went to the beach for fun. When they arrived, they saw that there was a lot of rubbish on the sand. They decided to clean it.



Unit 11 Al Azhar Test

20

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع في نهاية الاختبار

1. Where is plastic found?
   a) Beaches. b) Somewhere. c) Everywhere. d) Nowhere.
2. How long does plastic stay in the environment?
   a) No time. b) Not much time. c) A little time. d) A long time.

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Said : I want to make a paper airplane.
Sayed : First, cut the paper in half.
Said : Okay. (1)..?
Sayed : Next, put the top down to the bottom.
Said : (2)..?
Sayed : Now, make the wings down from the middle.
Said : Should I do that right away?
Sayed : (3).. .

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Jellyfish .... people if they touch them.
   a) eat b) fall c) bite d) sting
2. I need to .... the water for 10 minutes.
   a) boil b) save c) pull d) fill
3. Some people feel .... when they don't check their phones.
   a) clear b) brave c) calm d) worried
4. You .... study hard for the test.
   a) mustn't b) must c) shouldn't d) can't
5. If I see rubbish on the ground, I always .... it in the bin.
   a) would throw b) throw c) threw d) throwing

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

A nature reserve is an area of land in which animals and plants are protected. Nature reserves may be built by the government in some countries, or by private landowners.

There are 30 nature reserves in Egypt which cover 12% of Egyptian land. Those nature reserves were built to protect the Egyptian nature. Egypt announced a plan to build 40 nature reserves from 1997 to 2017, to help protect the natural resources and the culture and history of those areas. The largest nature reserve in Egypt is Gebel Elba (35,600 square kilometres) in the southeast, on the Red Sea coast.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the passage about? ....
2. What is a nature reserve? ....
3. Why do you think Egypt planned to build more nature reserves?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The largest nature reserve in Egypt is on the ....
   a) Nile b) Red Sea coast
   c) ocean d) Mediterranean coast
5. Nature reserves cover about .... of Egyptian land.
   a) 10% b) 20% c) 25% d) 12%

5 Reorder the following words to make correct sentences

1. visit - going - this - today - nature - to - We're - reserve.
....
2. has - to - The turtle - shell - protect - itself - a hard.
....
3. many - plastic - for - things - We - use.
....
4. turns - we - ice, it - heat - into - When - water.
....

6 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Recycling"

....
....
....

Listening text

Unit 11 Test

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Plastic is everywhere! We use it for many different things. The problem is that plastic stays in the environment for a very long time.

TEST YOURSELF

Take a test



Unit 12 Lessons (1 & 2)

11

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Hend : Hello, I'm Hend. What's your name?
Huda : Hi Hend, nice to meet you. I'm Huda.
Hend : (1)..?
Huda : I like to draw and colour.
Hend : What is your favourite thing to draw?
Huda : (2)..
Hend : (3)..?
Huda : I want to be an artist when I grow up.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A computer .... is a person who writes programmes.
   a) writer b) programmer c) photographer d) businesswoman
2. My family .... to help clean up litter at the park.
   a) scored b) volunteered c) made d) collected
3. We're going to visit Grandma, ... we?
   a) are b) aren't c) do d) don't
4. She showed me the photograph of her son, ... is a policeman.
   a) when b) where c) whose d) who
5. You like to draw, ... you?
   a) don't b) aren't c) won't d) didn't

3 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Your dream job"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

TEST YOURSELF

Take a test



Unit 12 Lessons (3 & 4)



10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I think that good .... helps people to get a good job.
   a) invitation b) education c) collection d) introduction
2. It is .... to make jewellery in Kenya. You can see jewellery in markets all over the country.
   a) international b) hopeful c) tradition d) traditional
3. I hope I'll .... my exams to go to university.
   a) pass b) change c) catch d) break
4. If you finish your dinner, I .... you an apple.
   a) will give b) give c) gave d) am giving
5. What clothes will I wear if it .... cold?
   a) were b) is c) are d) was

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I don't know which job I want to do when I'm older, but I think that education is very important. I hope that I pass my exams so that I can go to university. I'm going to work hard. If I go to university, I'll study maths. It's my favourite subject.

I don't like flying, so I don't want to travel around the world. I want to get a good job in Egypt. I want to teach maths. If I have enough money, I'll buy an apartment near the Red Sea. I'll get married, but how many children will I have? I don't know!

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the best title for this passage?
   ....
2. What is the writer going to study at university?
   ....
3. Where will he buy the apartment?
   ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. How many children will the writer have?
   a) Two. b) Three. c) Four. d) We don't know.
5. He thinks he will travel to .... countries.
   a) no b) two c) three d) many



TEST YOURSELF Unit 12 Lessons (5 & 6)



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع فى نهاية التدريب

1. Maths lessons help the pupils to learn about ....
   a) pictures b) history c) languages d) numbers
2. Pupils can paint and draw in .... lessons.
   a) maths b) art c) English d) science

2 Reorder the following words to make correct sentences:

1. a lot of - the future - I - there - exciting - changes in - will be - think.

   ....

2. next - married - I'll - think - year- get - I.

   ....

3. Technology - lives - make - easier - our - will.

   ....

4. interesting - jobs - There - a lot of - will be.

   ....

3 Write an email of FIVE sentences to your friend Sara to tell her about your plans for the future. Your name is Dina. Your email address is dina@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is sara@gmail.com.

From: To:

....

....

....

....

....

....

Listening text

Unit 12 Test Yourself on Lessons (5 & 6)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Pupils paint and draw pictures in art lessons. They learn English which is the language of England. They learn about numbers in maths lessons.

Final Exams Al-Azhar - Cairo Zone





معدلة حسب أحدث المواصفات الامتحانية





20

A Language Functions

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع فى نهاية الامتحان

1. *Robinson Crusoe* is an adventure story by ....
   a) Daniel Defoe b) George Orwell c) Mark Twain d) Charles Dickens
2. Crusoe swam to a nearby ....
   a) city b) country c) town d) island

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Asmaa : What are you reading?
Eman : (1).. .
Asmaa : (2)..?
Eman : It's called "*Dinosaur World Adventure*".
Asmaa : Wow, that sounds so cool! (3)..?
Eman : Yes, you can borrow it.

B Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Great Pyramid is 146 metres ....
   a) wide b) high c) long d) heavy
2. Is Amira going to .... trekking this afternoon?
   a) go a) goes c) went d) going
3. The .... are made of cotton.
   a) televisions b) tables c) lamps d) cushions
4. Mariam .... take a taxi. She is very late.
   a) shouldn't b) must c) can't d) mustn't
5. An engineer is the person who .... machines and engines.
   a) plays b) acts c) designs d) cooks

C Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Many traditional houses in the past were round. Today, many modern houses are also round. Why is this? There are lots of reasons! A round shape means the building is very strong. This is important when there is an earthquake or strong

winds. Also, heavy snow or rain will fall from the **roof.** A round house is also easier to keep warm or cool. It is also quieter inside a round building than a building that is a rectangle or square. Finally, a round building uses fewer materials, so it is cheaper to make. It also has more space inside. How fantastic!

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What was the shape of many traditional houses in the past?

....

2. What does a round shape mean?

....

3. What happens to round buildings when there's heavy snow or rain?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The "**roof**" is the place .... of a building.
   a) at the bottom b) at the top c) outside d) inside
5. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to a .... building.
   a) round b) space c) square d) rectangle

5 Reorder the following words to make correct sentences:

1. high - very - was - It - and - scary.

....

2. about - going - to - How - cinema - the?

....

3. leave - going - December - We- to - Aswan - in - are.

....

4. island - live - people - many - How - the - on?

....

D Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"A sport you like to do"

....

....

....

....

Listening text

(Cairo Zone)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Robinson Crusoe is an adventure story by Daniel Defoe. He was a sailor. One day, his ship sank. Crusoe swam to a nearby island, but there were no other people there.

Al-Azhar - Menoufia Zone



A Language Functions

20

نص الاستماع فى نهاية الامتحان

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I go to the beach with my ....
   a) team b) friends c) family d) group
2. My .... and I play with the ball.
   a) brother b) sister c) father d) mother

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Naglaa : Which job would you like to do in the future?
Samar : (1).. .
Naglaa : A doctor! Why do you want to be a doctor?
Samar : Because I want to help sick people and make them feel better.
Naglaa : (2)..?
Samar : Yes, my father is a doctor.
Naglaa : Does he enjoy being a doctor?
Samar : (3).. .

B Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Shady .... ready for the last exam.
   a) didn't b) weren't c) isn't d) wasn't
2. The Tahya Masr Bridge is the world's widest .... bridge.
   a) suspension b) suspicion c) expression d) invention
3. My sister and I always clean the house by ....
   a) themselves b) ourselves c) myself d) yourselves
4. A .... car is the car which is driven by a computer.
   a) powerless b) careless c) illness d) driverless
5. If it ...., plants don't grow.
   a) don't rain b) doesn't rain c) rains d) rain

C Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

This is Nelly. She is a nurse. She is tall and thin. She works at a hospital. She looks after sick people. She gets up at six o'clock in the morning. She takes a shower and puts on her clothes. She has breakfast at half past six. At seven o'clock, she drives her car to the hospital. Nelly starts work at eight o'clock. She

cleans the rooms and helps the doctors. She has lunch at twelve o'clock. At five, she goes home. At home, she cleans and cooks. She has dinner at seven o'clock then she watches TV. At ten, she goes to bed.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. When does Nelly have her breakfast?

....

2. What does Nelly look like?

....

3. What does Nelly do at the hospital?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Nelly spends .... hours in the hospital.

a) eight b) five c) nine d) six

5. Nelly goes to work ....

a) by car b) by bus c) by metro d) on foot

5 Reorder the following words to make correct sentences:

1. The - opened - in - 2019 - bridge.

....

2. post - drones - our - carry - Will - future - the - in?

....

3. birthday - Saturday - last - was - my - It.

....

4. the - to - go - you - did - museum - with - Who?

....

D Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Houses in ancient Egypt"

....

....

....

....

Listening text

(Menoufia Zone)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Every holiday, me and my family travel to Alexandria. We go to the beach in the morning. I always play with the ball with my father.

Al-Azhar - Qena Zone





A Language Functions



20

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع فى نهاية الامتحان

1. The text is about things that will happen ....
   a) in the past b) now c) in the future d) today
2. .... will do the housework.
   a) Rabbits b) Ropes c) Bricks d) Robots

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Adel : What do you think of the new park?
Mohsen : I think it's great!
Adel : (1)..?
Mohsen : Yes, I went there last weekend.
Adel : (2)..?
Mohsen : They opened it two months ago.
Adel : Is there a basketball playground in the park?
Mohsen : (3).. .

B Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We learnt a lot about the earth and the moon at the ....
   a) funfair b) aquarium c) bowling alley d) planetarium
2. Mountain climbing is the .... sport of all.
   a) dangerous b) most dangerous
   c) less dangerous d) more dangerous
3. The bird slept in a cave to protect .... from eagles.
   a) itself b) yourselves c) themselves d) ourselves
4. When I .... ill, I go to bed.
   a) felt b) feels c) feel d) feeling
5. You .... follow traffic rules.
   a) has to b) mustn't c) shouldn't d) must

C Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Plastic is everywhere! We use it for many different things. The problem is, plastic stays in the environment for a very long time. Some of the plastic people find on beaches is about 100 years old! We can **recycle** some plastic but most of it goes into the ocean. Plastic is poisonous when animals eat it.

Every year, more than 100,000 sea animals and birds die from plastic. We must try to use other materials - paper and glass, for example - because these

are easier to recycle. When we use a plastic shopping bag, we mustn't throw away these bags in rivers. Although it will take a long time to clean all the plastic rubbish, we mustn't stop trying to help our planet.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why is there a lot of plastic in the environment? ....
2. Which two materials are easier to recycle than plastic? ....
3. How many sea animals and birds die from plastic every year? ....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The word "**recycle**" means ....

a) wash b) find out c) stay d) use again

5. The plastic people find on beaches is about .... years old!

a) thousand b) ten d) hundred c) million

5 Reorder the following words to make correct sentences:

1. usually - play - don't - I - football.

....

2. swimming - pool - big - a - is - There.

....

3. Bridge - wide - the - How - Tahya Masr - is ?

....

4. statues - old - any - see - you - Did?

....

D Writing

6 Write an email of FIVE sentences to your friend Salim to tell him about your plans for the summer holiday. Your name is Ramy. Your email address is ramy@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is salim@gmail.com.

From: To:

....

....

....

....

Listening text

(Qena Zone)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Life will be different in 2050. I think drones will bring food and parcels to houses. I also think that robots will do all the housework.

Al-Azhar - Assiut Zone





20



A Language Functions

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: نص الاستماع فى نهاية الامتحان

1. I go to the beach in ....
   a) summer b) winter c) spring d) fall
2. When a wave comes, I .... up.
   a) run b) throw c) jump d) fill

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Mohammed : Do you like sports, Mahmoud?
Mahmoud : Yes, I love playing sports.
Mohammed : (1)...?
Mahmoud : I like playing football.
Mohammed : (2)...?
Mahmoud : I went to the stadium last week.
Mohammed : How was the game?
Mahmoud : (3)... .

B Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I didn't buy this cake. I made it ....
   a) himself b) herself c) yourself d) myself
2. We need to buy some more water. This bottle is ....
   a) full b) crowded c) empty d) old
3. It's important to .... older people.
   a) hate b) think c) sting d) respect
4. .... going to travel home by bus after school?
   a) You are b) Are you c) Do you d) You do
5. If it ...., we get wet.
   a) rain b) rained c) rains d) will rain

C Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The ancient Egyptians were very powerful. They built tombs to be buried in. They thought that the king was a god. They didn't wear many clothes. Most men wore a kind of short skirt, but women used to wear long dresses. Women didn't go out to work. They stayed at home. Most men were farmers. Their children did the

same jobs as their parents. Girls stayed at home with their mothers. They learned to look after their families. Boys worked with their fathers. They only went to school if they wanted to learn to do new jobs. Children used to run, jump and play games. Their toys were made of wood.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Where were the kings of ancient Egypt buried?

....

2. What did most men in ancient Egypt wear?

....

3. What did girls learn to do?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The ancient Egyptians thought that their king was a ....
   a) prince   b) leader   c) god   d) father
5. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to ....
   a) sons   b) women   c) men   d) farmers

5 Reorder the following words to make correct sentences:

1. Nile's - the - crosses - island - Warraq - The bridge.

....

2. floor - has - a - glass - The - bridge.

....

3. space - more - museum - The - have - didn't.

....

4. from - the - Pyramids - kilometres - is - It- two.

....

D Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about FIVE (5) sentences on:

"How to save our planet"

....

....

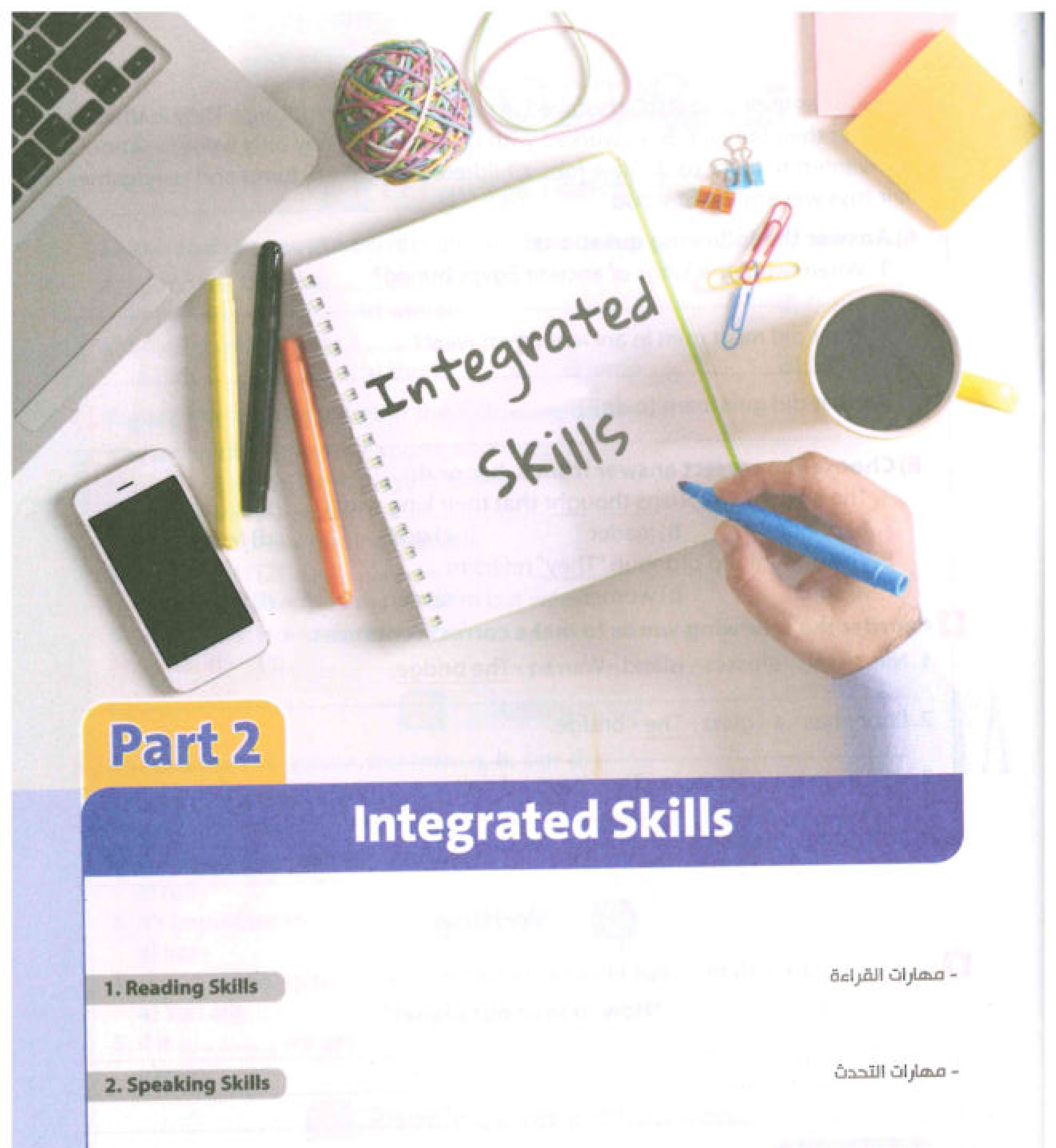
....

Listening text

(Assiut Zone)

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I always go to the beach in summer when it's sunny. I love swimming very much, so I spend much time in water. I always jump up when a wave comes.



Part 2

Integrated Skills

1. Reading Skills — مهارات القراءة -

2. Speaking Skills — مهارات التحدث -

3. Writing Skills — مهارات الكتابة -

UNIT 7 How was your weekend?

▲Remembering ▲Understanding ▲Applying ▲Analysing ▲Evaluating ▲Creating

1 Reading

Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Music is part of our life. We listen to music every day. Music is like a true friend in happy and difficult times. It has a very important role in human life. A person who listens to music with **joy** in his life knows the importance of music in the real world, if a person is interested in music, that person is always happy in his life, and is stress-free in every problem.

There are various types of music in the world, for instance, classical, pop, rock, traditional, jazz, opera and others. They say that music is a universal language, meaning that you don't necessarily need to understand the words in a song to enjoy the music. In this way, music connects people all over the world with its universal language.

for instance	على سبيل المثال
human	الإنسان
role	دور
stress-free	خال من التوتر
universal	عالمي

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of the passage?

....

2. What does listening to music do to a human?

....

3. How do you feel while listening to music?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....

a) music b) language c) problem d) life

5. Music is like a .... friend in happy and difficult times.

a) wrong b) false c) true d) fake

6. The word "**joy**" is similar in meaning to ....

a) happiness b) sadness c) kindness d) anger

2 Speaking

Complete the following dialogues:

1. **Naglaa :** (1)..?

Maher : My weekend was great.

Naglaa : Where did you go?

Maher : (2).. .

Naglaa : (3)..?

Maher : I watched Fast and Furious 9.

2. **Samir** : What did you do last weekend?

Rashad : (1).. .

Samir : (2)..?

Rashad : I saw many statues.

3. **Nelly** : What are you reading?

Kady : (1).. .

Nelly : (2)..?

Kady : This story is about a sailor whose ship sank.

3 Writing

- **Write about:**

A happy/terrible weekend you can't forget

- Where did you go?
- Who did you go with?
- How did you go there?
- What activities did you do there?
- Did you enjoy your time?
- Do you recommend this place for a friend to visit?

A happy/terrible weekend I can't forget

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

UNIT 8 The amazing world around us

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating



Reading

Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Mount Everest is one of the most difficult and exciting mountains to climb on Earth. It is not the coldest or the windiest place on Earth, but it comes close! These challenges make it one of the most attractive mountains for serious climbers. Since 1952, over 3500 climbers have reached the top. Unfortunately, most of them have left equipment and rubbish on the mountain.

In fact, rubbish is now one of the biggest threats to the environment on Mount Everest. Local organisations have brought tons of **trash** down from the mountain. A ton of tin cans, glass bottles and old climbing tools were handed over to artists in Nepal. The artists used the trash to create works of art. Then, they sold the art to collect money for local charities.

A) Answer the following questions:

challenges	تحديات
unfortunately	لسوء الحظ
threats	تهديدات
climbers	متسلقون
equipment	معدات
organisations	منظمات

1. What does this passage talk about?

....

2. What does the underlined pronoun "them" refer to?

....

3. Why do you think local organisations started to clean the mountain?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The word **"trash"** is similar in meaning to ....
   a) rubbish b) tons c) organizations d) environment
5. .... 3500 climbers have reached the top.
   a) Since b) About c) Just under d) More than
6. Artists used .... to do their projects.
   a) glass bottles b) tools c) tin cans d) all of these

2 Speaking

Complete the following dialogues:

1. **Haitham :** (1)..?
   Hamid : I think online shopping is great.
   Haitham : (2)..?
   Hamid : Because it saves a lot of time.

2. Nouran : (1)..?

Amany : In my opinion, your new dress is beautiful, but I think it's expensive.

Nouran : (2).. . It isn't expensive.

Amany : (3)..?

Nouran : It's only 200 pounds.

3. Nancy : I know that you visited a lot of countries. Which one do you like most?

Ola : (1).. .

Nancy : (2)..?

Ola : Paris is in France.

3 Writing

- **Write about:**

A fantastic place you visited

- Where is it?
- When did you visit it?
- Who did you go with?
- When did it open?
- How was your day there?

A fantastic place I visited

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Adventure!

▲Remembering ▲Understanding ▲Applying ▲Analysing ▲Evaluating ▲Creating

1 Reading



Read the following text, then answer the questions:

"Around the World in 80 Days" is a classic adventure novel by the French author Jules Verne in 1873. In the novel, a rich British man Phileas Fogg and his French servant Passepartout tried to travel around the world in 80 days to win £20,000. Fogg took the challenge. They left London by train at 8:45 pm on October 2nd. In order to win the wager, Fogg had to return to the club by this hour on December 21, 80 days later. In Egypt, Fogg was mistaken for a bank robber by Scotland detective Fix, and <u>he</u> followed Fogg in each step of the journey. Finally, he just arrived in time to meet his deadline and won the wager. He spent almost £19,000 of his travel money during the journey. He divided the remainder between Passepartout and Fix and married Aouda.

is mistaken	يخطئ
detective	محقق
wager	رهان
deadline	موعد نهائي
remainder	الباقي

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the passage about?

....

2. What does the underlined pronoun "<u>he</u>" refer to?

....

3. If you were Phileas Fogg, would you accept the challenge? Why/ Why not?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. "Fix" is a/an ....
   a) businessman b) detective c) author d) servant
5. Fogg made the journey because he liked ....
   a) women b) people c) money d) adventure
6. Fogg got .... money after the journey and its expenses.
   a) little b) much c) some d) no

2 Speaking

Complete the following dialogues:

1. **Wael** : What shall we do this afternoon?
   Hassan : (1)..?
   Wael : I'm not sure. I'd rather do something more exciting.
   Hassan : OK. (2)..?
   Wael : (3)..! I love windsurfing.

2. **Omar** : Where are you going to go next holiday?

Munir : (1).. .

Omar : (2)..?

Munir : We're going to stay for a week.

3. **Sister** : You look sad. What's the matter?

Brother: I'm bored! (1)..?

Sister : (2)..?

Brother: No, I am not good at basketball. What about playing tennis?

Sister : (3).. .

3 Writing

• **Write about:**

A plan for your journey

- When are you going?
- Where are you going?
- Who are you going with?
- How long are you going to stay there?
- What are you going to take with you?
- How are you going to spend your time there?

A plan for my journey

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

UNIT 10

Welcome to my home!

▲Remembering ▲Understanding ▲Applying ▲Analysing ▲Evaluating ▲Creating



Reading

Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Most Egyptian homes had a roofed-in central room and smaller rooms. The central room was the most used room of the house and the kitchen was usually nearby. The house of a nobleman had many rooms, but the central room was still almost important. For a rich person or nobleman, the furniture was more decorated and the flooring was made out of mud tiles. Roofs were usually used as living space as the **inside** rooms were not lighted much and stairs leading to the roof were also seen in most homes. Homes of the rich were bigger and contained at least 10 rooms.

roofed-in	مسقوف
nobleman	النبيل
mud tiles	بلاط الطين
lead to	يؤدى إلى
central	مركزى
contain	يحتوى

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of the passage?

....

2. How was the furniture of a nobleman's house?

....

3. Do you think the rich were happy? Why/ Why not?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. There were at least .... rooms in the houses of the rich.
   a) 10 b) 15 c) 20 d) 25
5. The .... room was almost important for the rich and the poor.
   a) bedroom b) bathroom c) kitchen d) central
6. The opposite of the word "**inside**" is ....
   a) within b) outside c) indoors d) indoor



Speaking

Complete the following dialogues:

1. **Waleed** : How do you think life will be like in the future?

Warda : (1)... .

Waleed : (2)...?

Warda : There'll be lots of solar panels and wind turbines.

2. **Bassem** : (1)..?

Basel : Yes, I have a piano, a guitar and drums.

Bassem : (2)..?

Basel : Most of them are made of wood.

3. **Ahmed** : (1)..?

Sayed : Mo Salah was born in 1992.

Ahmed : Which team did he play for at first?

Sayed : (2)..

3 Writing

- **Write about:**

Kinds of houses

- What shape are they?
- What are they made of?
- Which weather are they good for?
- How big are they?
- How tall are they?

Kinds of houses

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

UNIT 11

On land and sea

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating



1 Reading

Read the following text, then answer the questions:

This is a short story of an old Cuban fisherman, Santiago, who has not caught a fish for 84 days. The family of his apprentice, Manolin, told the boy to leave the old fisherman, though Manolin continues to support him with food and bait. Santiago is a mentor to the boy, who respects the old man and the life lessons he learns. Santiago wants to change his luck. He takes his boat far out into the deep water, where he soon catches a giant marlin. With all his great experience and strength, he struggles with the fish for three days. He admires its strength. Its destiny is as true as Santiago's. He finally pulls the marlin onto his boat.

However, Santiago's effort goes in vain. Sharks try to eat the marlin. Although Santiago manages to kill some of them, the sharks eat the fish, leaving behind only its skeleton. After returning home, he goes to sleep. In the meantime, the other fishermen see the skeleton tied to his boat. They respect Santiago.

Cuban	كوبي (من دولة كوبا)
apprentice	صبي (الحرفة)
struggle	يكافح/يصارع
strength	قوة
manage	يتمكن
mentor	مُعلم/مرشد

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of the passage?

....

2. Why do you think Manolin's parents told him to leave Santiago?

....

3. What happens to the marlin in the end?

....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Santiago takes his boat far out into the sea to change his ....
   a) apprentice b) house c) boat d) luck
5. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to ....
   a) fishermen b) days c) sharks d) lessons
6. Other fishermen .... Santiago.
   a) ignore b) dislike c) admire d) hate

2 Speaking

Complete the following dialogues:

1. **Omar** : (1)..?
   Ahmed: We should recycle it.
   Omar : What about making art with it?
   Ahmed: (2).. .

2. Amgad : I'd like to grow a tree. (1)..?

Khaled : First, find a sunny place.

Amgad : OK. (2)..?

Khaled : Then, make a small hole in the ground.

3. Ghada : Hello, Hadeer. Do you know our school rules?

Hadeer : (1).. .

Ghada : (2)..?

Hadeer : We must listen to our teachers.

3 Writing

• **Write about:**

Recycling rubbish

- Which places do you think need to be cleaned?
- What kind of rubbish can we find in these places?
- What can we do with different kinds of rubbish?
- Which materials are easier to be recycled?
- How can we convince people to recycle rubbish? إقناع
- How is recycling useful for the environment?

Recycling rubbish

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

UNIT 12 My future

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analysing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating



Reading

▶ **Read the following text, then answer the questions:**

Technology will allow homes in the future to be "smart." Appliances will communicate with each other—and with you. Your oven, for example, will tell you when your food is cooked and ready to eat. Refrigerators will suggest recipes based on food items you already have.

The technology is possible because of tiny information-storing devices called RFID chips. People already use them to keep track of pets and farm animals. Future RFID chips will store information about all the things in your cabinets. For example, they will record the date that you bought each thing. Other devices will "read" this information using radio waves. When you need more food, your cabinets will tell you to buy it.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's the best title for the passage?
....
2. What will refrigerators do in the future?
....
3. What do devices use to read information on chips?
....

devices	أجهزة
refrigerator	ثلاجة/مبرد
radio waves	موجات لاسلكية
appliances	أجهزة
keep track of	يتعقب
cabinets	خزائن

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The chips will .... the date that you bought each thing.
a) forget b) leave c) remember d) ignore
5. Homes in the future will be ....
a) old b) ancient c) traditional d) smart
6. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to the ....
a) chips b) cabinets c) pets d) animals



Speaking

▶ **Complete the following dialogues:**

1. **Mostafa** : What would you like to be in the future?
Mohammed : (1).. .
Mostafa : (2)..?
Mohammed : He looks after people's teeth.

2. **Fathi** : What are your plans for the future?
Omar : (1).. .
Fathi : (2)..?
Omar : Because I like science.

3. **Naglaa** : (1)..?
Samar : My aunt is a nurse.
Naglaa : Does she like her job?
Samar : (2).. . She likes helping people.

3 Writing

- **Write about:**

Life in the future

- What do you think life will be like in the future?
- How will people travel?
- How will our schools be?
- How will houses be?
- Who will do the housework?
- How will our hospitals be in the future?

Life in the future

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....



رقم الإيداع: ٢٠٢٢/٢٠٤٧٩
ترخيص وزارة التربية والتعليم رقم:
١٣٧/٢/٩/١٠٢
طبعة: 2024
خدمة العملاء: 16766